GemStone®

System Administration Guide
for GemStone/S 64 Bit

Version 2.4

September 2009

GEMSTONE S 64 ™

Preface

About This Manual

This manual tells how to perform day-to-day administration of your GemStone ⁄ S 64 Bit repository.

Installation instructions are included with your *GemStone/S 64 Bit Installation Guide,* which should be kept with this manual.

This manual is organized in three parts: initial configuration, day-to-day administration, and appendixes:

Part 1: System Configuration

- Chapter 1, "Configuring the GemStone Server," tells how to adapt the GemStone central repository server to the needs of your application. Three sample configuration files are provided as starting points.

- Chapter 2, "Configuring Gem Session Processes," tells how to configure the GemStone processes that provide the services to individual application clients.

- Chapter 3, "Connecting Distributed Systems," explains the additional steps necessary to run GemStone in a networked environment. It includes examples of how to set up common configurations.

Part 2: System Administration

- Chapter 4, "Running GemStone," tells how to start and stop the GemStone system, how to troubleshoot startup problems, how to deal with unexpected shutdowns, and how to bulk-load objects.

- Chapter 5, "User Accounts and Security," introduces the tools available for administration tasks and details how to log in to the repository, and how to create, modify, and remove GemStone user accounts. It also tells how to configure GemStone login security by restricting valid passwords, imposing password and account age limits, and monitoring intrusion attempts.

- Chapter 6, "Managing Repository Space," gives procedures for managing the repository itself: checking free space, adding space, and controlling its growth. It also how to recover from disk-full conditions.

- Chapter 7, "Managing Transaction Logs," gives procedures for setting up the optional full incremental logging, managing log space, and archiving the log files.

- Chapter 8, "Monitoring GemStone," explains where the system logs are located, how to audit the repository, and how to monitor the performance of the GemStone server and its clients using GemStone Smalltalk methods.

- Chapter 9, "Making and Restoring Backups," gives procedures for making a GemStone full backup while the repository is in use, and for using backups and transaction logs to restore the repository.

- Chapter 10, "Managing Growth," presents the main concepts underlying garbage collection in GemStone and tells when, how, and why to invoke the garbage collection mechanisms.

Part 3: Appendixes

- Appendix A, "GemStone Configuration Options," explains how GemStone uses configuration files and describes each configuration option.

- Appendix B, "GemStone Utility Commands," describes each of the GemStone-supplied commands defined for use by the GemStone system administrator.

- Appendix C, "Network Resource String Syntax," lists the syntax for network resource strings, which allow you to specify the host machine for a GemStone file or process.

- Appendix D, "GemStone Kernel Objects," lists the GemStone-supplied objects that are present in your repository after the GemStone system has been successfully installed.

- Appendix E, "Environment Variables," lists all environment variables used by GemStone, including those that are reserved.

- Appendix F, "Localization," explains how to use Locale to handle non-US decimal points, and Extended Character Sets to allow sort and collation on Characters beyond the ASCII range.

- Appendix G, "statmonitor and VSD Reference," describes how to use the performance-tuning tools statmonitor and VSD.

- Appendix H, "Object State Change Tracking," describes how to analyze tranlogs to track the history of object modifications.

Terminology Conventions

This document uses the following terminology:

- The term "GemStone" is used to refer both to the product, GemStone/S 64 Bit, or previous GemStone/S server products; and to the company, GemStone Systems, Inc.

Typographical Conventions

This document uses the following typographical conventions:

- Operating system and Topaz commands are shown in **bold** typeface. For example:

    copydbf

- Smalltalk methods, GemStone environment variables, operating system file names and paths, listings, and prompts are shown in `monospace` typeface. For example:

    ```
    markForCollection
    ```

- Interactive dialogue from GemStone is shown in an <u>`underlined`</u> <u>`monospace`</u> typeface. For example:

    <u>`successful login`</u>

- Lines you type are distinguished from system output by boldface type:

    ```
    topaz> set gemstone myStone
    ```

- Place holders that are meant to be replaced with real values are shown in *italic* typeface. For example:

  > *StoneName*.conf

In formal syntax listings, these additional conventions are used:

- Literals are shown in **bold** typeface. For example:

  > **tcp**

- Optional arguments and terms are enclosed in square brackets. For example:

  > [*dbfName*]

- Braces { } mean 0 or more modifiers. For example:

  > {*modifier*}

  In this example you may list as many modifiers as you wish, but they are not required.

- Alternative arguments and terms are separated by a vertical bar (pipe). For example:

  > *gemStoneName* | *netLdiName*

  In this example you must specify one name, but not both.

Technical Support

GemStone provides several sources for product information and support. The product-specific manuals provide extensive documentation, and should be your first source of information.

GemStone Web Site: http://support.gemstone.com

GemStone's Technical Support website provides a variety of resources to help you use GemStone products. Use of this site requires an account, but registration is free of charge. To get an account, just complete the Registration Form, found in the same location. You'll be able to access the site as soon as you submit the web form.

The following types of information are provided at this web site:

Documentation for GemStone/S 64 Bit is provided in PDF format. This is the same documentation that is included with your GemStone/S 64 Bit product.

Release Notes and **Install Guides** for your product software are provided in PDF format in the Documentation section.

Downloads and **Patches** provide code fixes and enhancements that have been developed after product release, and past and current versions of GemBuilder for Smalltalk.

Bugnotes, in the Learning Center section, identify performance issues or error conditions that you may encounter when using a GemStone product. A bugnote describes the cause of the condition, and, when possible, provides an alternative means of accomplishing the task. In addition, bugnotes identify whether or not a fix is available, either by upgrading to another version of the product, or by applying a patch. Bugnotes are updated regularly.

TechTips, also in the Learning Center section, provide information and instructions for topics that usually relate to more effective or efficient use of GemStone products.

Community Links provide customer forums for discussion of GemStone product issues.

Technical information on the GemStone Web site is reviewed and updated regularly. We recommend that you check this site on a regular basis to obtain the latest technical information for GemStone products.

Help Requests

You may need to contact Technical Support directly for the following reasons:

- Your technical question is not answered in the documentation.
- You receive an error message that directs you to contact GemStone Technical Support.
- You want to report a bug.
- You want to submit a feature request.

Questions concerning product availability, pricing, keyfiles, or future features should be directed to your GemStone account manager.

When contacting GemStone Technical Support, please be prepared to provide the following information:

- Your name, company name, and GemStone/S license number
- The GemStone product and version you are using

- The hardware platform and operating system you are using

- A description of the problem or request

- Exact error message(s) received, if any

Your GemStone support agreement may identify specific individuals who are responsible for submitting all support requests to GemStone. If so, please submit your information through those individuals. All responses will be sent to authorized contacts only.

For non-emergency requests, the support website is the preferred way to contact Technical Support. Only designated support contacts may submit help requests via the support website. If you are a designated support contact for your company, or the designated contacts have changed, please contact us to update the appropriate user accounts.

   Website: http://techsupport.gemstone.com

   Email: support@gemstone.com

   Telephone: (800) 243-4772 or (503) 533-3503

Requests for technical assistance may be submitted online, or by email or by telephone. We recommend you use telephone contact only for more serious requests that require immediate evaluation, such as a production system that is non-operational. In these cases, please also submit your request via the web or email, including pertinent details such error messages and relevant log files.

If you are reporting an emergency by telephone, select the option to transfer your call to the technical support administrator, who will take down your customer information and immediately contact an engineer.

Non-emergency requests received by telephone will be placed in the normal support queue for evaluation and response.

24x7 Emergency Technical Support

GemStone offers, at an additional charge, 24x7 emergency technical support. This support entitles customers to contact us 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year, if they encounter problems that cause their production application to go down, or that have the potential to bring their production application down. For more details, contact your GemStone account manager.

Training and Consulting

Consulting and training for all GemStone products is available through GemStone's Professional Services organization.

- Customized consulting services can help you make the best use of GemStone products in your business environment.

Contact your GemStone account representative for more details or to obtain consulting services.

Contents

Chapter 1. Configuring the GemStone Server   *1*

Chapter 2. Configuring Gem Session Processes   *51*

Chapter 3. Connecting Distributed Systems   *65*

Chapter 4. Running GemStone   *99*

Chapter 5. User Accounts and Security   *125*

Chapter 7. Managing Transaction Logs   *193*

Chapter 8. Monitoring GemStone   *207*

Chapter 9. Making and Restoring Backups   *277*

Chapter 10. Managing Growth   *319*

Appendix A. GemStone Configuration Options   *367*

Appendix B. GemStone Utility Commands   *409*

Appendix C. Network Resource String Syntax   *431*

Appendix D. GemStone Kernel Objects   *437*

Appendix E. Environment Variables   *447*

Appendix F. Localization   *453*

Appendix G. statmonitor and VSD Reference   *467*

Appendix H. Object State Change Tracking *485*

Index *505*

Chapter

1

Configuring the GemStone Server

Figure 1.1 shows the basic GemStone/S 64 Bit architecture as seen by its administrator. The object server can be thought of as having two active parts. The *server processes* consist of the Stone repository monitor and a set of subordinate processes. These processes provide resources to individual Gem *session processes*, which are servers to application clients.

This chapter tells you how to configure the GemStone server processes, repository, transaction logs, and shared page cache to meet the needs of a specific application. For information about configuring session processes for clients, refer to Chapter 2.

The elements shown in Figure 1.1 can be distributed across multiple nodes to meet your application's needs. For information about establishing distributed servers, refer to Chapter 3.

Figure 1.1   The GemStone Object Server

The Object Server

| Server Processes | Session Processes | Application Clients |

Stone
Repository Monitor

Gem ——— Application

AIO Page
Servers

Shared Page
Cache Monitor

Gem

Gem ——— Application

Admin
GcGem

Reclaim
GcGems

Symbol Gem

Page Manager

Free Frame
Page Servers

Transaction
Logs

Repository
Extents

Shared Page
Cache
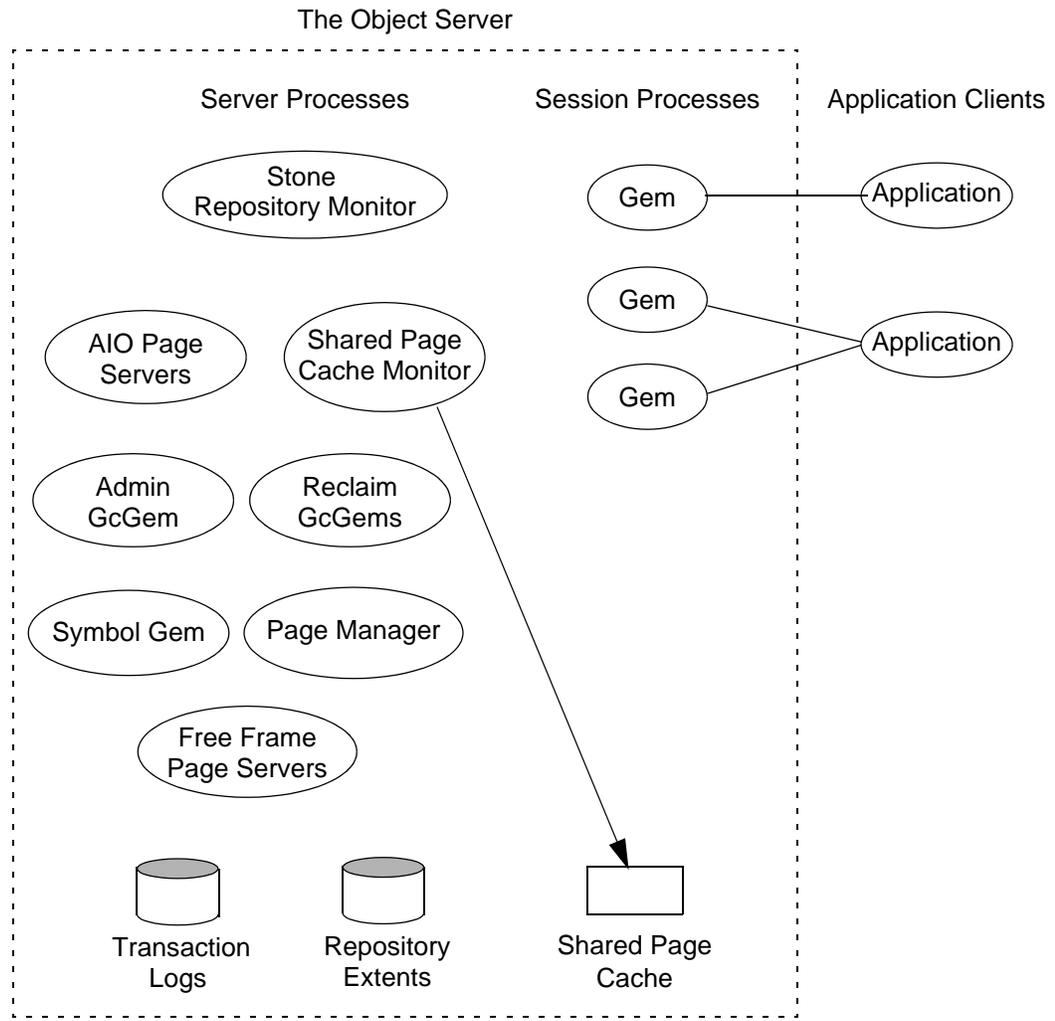
1.1 Configuration Overview

Figure 1.1 shows the key parts that define the server configuration:

- The *Stone repository monitor* process acts as a resource coordinator. It synchronizes critical repository activities and ensures repository consistency.

- The *shared page cache monitor* creates and maintains a *shared page cache* for the GemStone server. The monitor balances page allocation among processes, ensuring that a few users or large objects do not monopolize the cache. The size of the shared page cache is configurable and should be scaled to match the size of the repository and the number of concurrent sessions.

- The *AIO page servers* perform asynchronous I/O for the Stone repository monitor. Their primary tasks are to update the extents periodically and to pre-allocate (grow) the extents at startup when that feature is enabled. The default configuration uses one AIO page server, but additional ones can be specified for systems having several extents.

- The *Admin GcGem* is a Gem server process that is dedicated to performing the administrative garbage collection tasks under supervision of the Stone. Each repository can have up to one Admin GcGem process running.

- The *Reclaim GcGems* perform page reclaim operations on both shadow objects and dead objects. On a running GemStone system, there may be between 0 and *n* Reclaim GcGems present, where *n* is the number of extents in the repository.

- The *Symbol Gem* is a Gem server background process that is responsible for creating all new Symbols, based on session requests that are managed by the Stone.

- The *Page Manager* is a background process that assists the Stone with page disposal in coordination with the remote page caches.

- The *Free Frame Page Servers* are Gem server processes that are dedicated to the task of adding free frames to the free frame list, from which a Gem can take as needed. The default configuration uses one free frame page server, but you can configure as many as 30 free frame page server processes.

- Objects are stored on the disk in one or more *extents,* which can be files in the file system, data in raw partitions, or a mixture. The location of each extent is configurable.

- *Transaction logs* permit recovery of committed data if a system crash occurs. They also reduce disk activity by eliminating the need to flush to the extents all data pages written by each transaction. The optional *full logging mode* allows

transaction logs to be used with GemStone backups for full recovery of committed transactions in the event of media failure.

The transaction logs should reside on a different disk drive (spindle) from the extents, and neither should be on a drive that contains the operating system swap space (sometimes called page space).

The Server Configuration File

At start-up time, GemStone reads a system-wide configuration file. By default this file is `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf`, where GEMSTONE is an environment variable that points to the directory in which the GemStone software is installed.

Appendix A, "GemStone Configuration Options," tells how to specify an alternate configuration file and how to use supplementary files to adjust the system-wide configuration for a specific GemStone executable. The appendix also describes each of the configuration options.

Here is a brief summary of important facts about the configuration file:

- Lines that begin with # are comments. Settings supplied as comments are the same as the default values. You can easily change the configuration by altering the option value and moving the # symbol to the line previously in force.

- Options that begin with "GEM_" are read only by Gem session processes at the time they start. Chapter 2, "Configuring Gem Session Processes," describes their use.

- Options that begin with "SHR_" are read both by the Stone repository monitor and by the first Gem session process to start on a node remote from the Stone. These options configure the local shared page cache.

- Most other options (those not beginning with "GEM_" or "SHR_") are read by the Stone repository monitor. If another GemStone process needs that information, it is exchanged through a TCP/IP connection with the Stone.

- If an option is defined more than once, only the last definition is used. Certain run-time configuration changes, such as the addition of an extent, cause the repository monitor to append new configuration statements to the file. Be sure to check the end of a configuration file for possible entries that override earlier ones.

Sample Configurations

This section describes three sample configurations that you can use as a starting point. Although the configurations differ in a number of ways, the primary difference is in the size of application they accommodate.

All three sample configurations are derived from the initial configuration file that is installed, `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf.` The initial configuration provides a convenient way to begin evaluation or development with a minimum of system resources.

> *NOTE*
> *The sample configuration files contain only the modifications that define*
> *a particular sample configuration. These modifications override the*
> *default settings. For a complete list of options, see*
> `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf.`

Small | Handles I/O more efficiently than the initial configuration by using separate drives (spindles) for the extents and transaction logs. A larger page cache supports more users. Full transaction logging provides real-time incremental backup.

Edit the sample configuration file `$GEMSTONE/examples/admin/small.conf` to specify the filename of your extent and the directory names for transaction logs.

Medium | Uses raw disk partitions for possibly increased throughput. It accommodates more users and a larger repository.

Edit the sample configuration file `$GEMSTONE/examples/admin/medium.conf` to show the raw partition name and size for your extent, and the partition names and sizes for transaction logs.

Large | Uses multiple extents to accommodate a repository of 100 GB.

Edit the sample configuration file `$GEMSTONE/examples/admin/large.conf` to show the raw partition names and sizes for your extents, and the partition names and sizes for transaction logs. Each extent should be on a separate spindle.

To choose a sample configuration, select a column in Table 1.1 by matching the characteristics of your application to those shown. The table shows the corresponding changes to be made to the default configuration file, $GEMSTONE/data/system.conf. (Sample changes have already been made to the three configuration files in $GEMSTONE/examples/admin.)

NOTE
The contents of the sample configuration files may vary from the information in Table 1.1.

Table 1.1 also gives recommended configurations for repository extents and transaction logs. Some of these, such as the use of raw disk partitions, depend on the size of the application.

NOTE
Large systems will almost certainly require additional tuning. Very large systems will probably need to be distributed across several powerful servers. If you lack the necessary expertise, consider consulting GemStone Professional Services.

If you want more information about any of these settings, see the detailed instructions for establishing your own configuration beginning on page 11.

Very Large Configurations

On UNIX machines, there is an upper limit to the number of processes that you can run before performance becomes unacceptable. For very large configurations, we recommend a separate Gem server machine with a remote shared page cache set up specifically to run Gem sessions, with a high bandwidth connection between the repository server and the Gem server.

Table 1.1   Settings for Selected Configurations

Characteristic or Configuration Option	Server Configuration		
	Small	**Medium**	**Large**
Application Characteristics			
Maximum number of user sessions	12	250	1500
Repository size	100 MB	10 GB	100 GB
System Requirements			
Typical number of CPUs	1–2	2-4	8+
RAM	512 MB	8000 MB	128000 MB
Kernel shared memory	26 MB	1600 MB	64500 MB
Number of disk drives	3	13	35
Configuration Settings			
STN_MAX_SESSIONS	40	280	1658
SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB	75000	1500000	64000000
STN_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB	(default)	16384	32768
STN_CHECKPOINT_INTERVAL	300	600	900
STN_CR_BACKLOG_THRESHOLD	(default)	500	3000
STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG	20	400	2800
STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD	10	100	100
STN_NUM_LOCAL_AIO_SERVERS	1	4	10
SHR_NUM_FREE_FRAME_SERVERS	1	2	5

Table 1.1   Settings for Selected Configurations (Continued)

Characteristic or Configuration Option	Server Configuration		
	Small	**Medium**	**Large**
Approximate Memory Usage			
Stone repository monitor (MB)	20	40	100
Each Gem session process[a] (MB)	20	20	25
Extents			
DBF_EXTENT_NAMES	(1 file)	(8 files)	(25 files)
DBF_EXTENT_SIZES	(Unlimited)	(1995 each)[b]	(3995 each)[b]
DBF_PRE_GROW	False	True	True
DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE	(Not used)	10,10,10,...	10,10,10,...
Transaction Logs			
STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING	True	True	True
STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES	(2 directories)	(5 raw partitions)	(10 raw partitions)
STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES	50,50	499[b] each	1995[b] each
Stone Response to Gem Fatal Errors			
STN_HALT_ON_FATAL_ERROR	False[c]	False[c]	False[c]
Garbage Collection			
STN_NUM_GC_RECLAIM_SESSIONS	1	2	5
STN_ADMIN_GC_SESSION_ENABLED	True	True	True

[a] Depends on the value of GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE (default=10 MB).

[b] For best performance, set DBF_EXTENT_NAMES and STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES to slightly less than the actual size of the partition. The values given for extents are based on 2 GB partitions in the Medium configuration and 4 GB partitions in the Large configuration.

[c] For development and testing, a setting of True is recommended.
  For deployed systems, a setting of False is recommended.

Recommendations About Disk Usage

You can enhance server performance by distributing the repository files on multiple disk drives. Under certain circumstances and for certain operating systems, placing the data in raw disk partitions rather than in a file system can enhance performance.

Why Use Multiple Drives?

Efficient access to GemStone repository files requires that the server node have at least three disk drives (that is, three separate spindles or physical volumes) to reduce I/O contention. For instance:

- One spindle for swap space and UNIX (GemStone executables can also reside here).

- One spindle for the repository extent, perhaps with a lightly accessed file system sharing the drive.

- One spindle for transaction logs (with least two raw partitions or directories) and possibly user file systems if they are only lightly used for non-GemStone purposes.

When developing your own configuration, bear in mind the following guidelines:

1. Keep extents and transaction logs separate from operating system swap space. Don't place either extents or logs on any spindle that contains a swap partition; doing so drastically reduces performance.

2. Place the transaction logs on a spindle that does not contain extents. Placing logs on a different spindle from extents increases the transaction rate for updates while reducing the impact of updates on query performance. It's OK to place multiple logs on the same spindle because only one log file is active at a time.

NOTE
Under operating systems that use volume managers, you need to be aware of how logical volume groups are assigned to disk drives (physical volumes). You should try to assign each of the above (swap, extents, and transaction logs) to a different disk drive.

3. To benefit from multiple extents on multiple spindles, you must use weighted allocation mode. If you use sequential allocation, multiple extents provide no benefit. For details about weighted allocation, see "Allocating Data to Multiple Extents" on page 23.

4. In addition, if you decide to use more than one AIO page server, you'll need to keep extents on several different spindles. You'll derive no advantage from multiple page servers unless they can write different pages to different extents simultaneously, instead of contending for the same disk drive head.

When to Use Raw Partitions

Each raw partition (sometimes called a raw device or raw logical device) is like a single large sequential file, with one extent or one transaction log per partition. The use of raw disk partitions can yield better performance, depending on how they are used and the balancing of system resources:

*   Placing transaction logs on raw disk partitions almost certainly yields better performance.

*   Placing extents on raw disk partitions can yield better performance to the degree that doing so reduces swapping. However, if sufficient RAM is available for file system buffers and the shared page cache, better performance may be obtained by placing the extents in the file system.

The use of raw partitions for transaction logs is essential for achieving the highest transaction rates in an update-intensive application because such applications primarily are writing sequentially to the active transaction log. Using raw partitions can as much as double the maximum achievable rate by avoiding the extra file system operations necessary to ensure that each log entry is recorded on the disk.

Because each partition holds a single log or extent, if you place transaction logs in raw partitions, you must provide at least two such partitions so that GemStone can preserve one log when switching to the next. If your application has a high transaction volume, you are likely to find that increasing the number log partitions makes the task of archiving the logs easier.

For information about using raw partitions, see "How to Set Up a Raw Partition" on page 34.

Developing a Failover Strategy

In choosing a failover strategy, consider the following needs:

- Applications that cannot tolerate the loss of committed transactions should mirror the transaction logs (using OS-level tools) and use full transaction logging. A mirrored transaction log on another device allows GemStone to recover from a read failure when it starts up after an unexpected shutdown. The optional full logging mode allows transactions to be rolled forward from a GemStone full backup to recover from the loss of an extent.

- Applications that require rapid recovery from the loss of an extent (that is, without the delay of restoring from a backup) should replicate all extents on other devices, preferably through hardware means, in addition to mirroring transaction logs. Restoring a large repository (many GB) from a backup may take hours.

Hardware replication may provide the best solution if the following points are kept in mind while designing the system:

- Extents benefit from efficiency of both random access (16 KB repository pages) and sequential access. Don't optimize one by compromising the other. Sequential access is important for such operations as garbage collection and making or restoring backups. Use of RAID devices (redundant array of inexpensive drives) or striped file systems that cannot efficiently support both random and sequential access may reduce overall performance. Simple disk mirroring may be give better results.

- Transaction logs use sequential access exclusively, so the devices can be optimized for that access.

- Avoid volume managers that combine space on multiple physical drives. For GemStone, such configurations may result in *less* efficient access to the repository. The use of raw devices is preferred for transaction logs.

1.2 How to Establish Your Configuration

Configuring the GemStone object server involves the following steps:

1. Gather application specifics about the size of the repository and the number of sessions that will be logged in simultaneously.

2. Plan the operating system resources that will be needed: memory and swap (page) space.

3. Set the size of the GemStone shared page cache and the number of sessions to be supported.

4. Configure the repository extents.

5. Configure the transaction logs.

6. Set GemStone file permissions to allow necessary access while providing adequate security.

Gathering Application Information

When you begin configuring GemStone, be sure to have the following information at hand:

-   The number of simultaneous sessions that will be logged in to the repository (in some applications, each user can have more than one session logged in).

-   The approximate size of your repository. It's also helpful, but not essential, to know the approximate number of objects in the repository.

This information is central to the sizing decisions that you must make.

Planning Operating System Resources

GemStone needs adequate memory and swap space to run efficiently. It also needs adequate kernel resources—for instance, kernel parameters can limit the size of the shared page cache or the number of sessions that can connect to it.

Estimating Memory Needs

The amount of memory required to run your GemStone server depends mostly on the size of the repository and the number of users who will be logged in to active GemStone sessions at one time. These needs are in addition to the memory required for UNIX and other software.

-   The Stone and related processes need between 45 and 325 MB for the configurations shown in Table 1.1 (on page 7). That amount of memory is only for the server processes.

-   The shared page cache should be increased in proportion to the overall size of your repository. Typically it should be approximately 10% of the repository size to provide adequate performance. In Table 1.1, the size ranges from 10 MB to 10 GB.

    On a node that is dedicated to running GemStone, we recommend in general that you allocate approximately one-third to one-half of your total system

RAM to the shared page cache. If it is not a dedicated node, you may need to reduce the size to avoid excessive swapping.

- Each Gem session process needs at least 30 MB of memory on the node where it runs. (See the discussion of memory needs for session processes on page 54.) Each Gem process that runs on a remote (client) node also needs about 0.25 MB on the server node for a GemStone page server process that accesses the repository extents.

Estimating Swap Space Needs

To provide reasonable flexibility, the total swap space on your system (sometimes called page space) in general should be at least twice the system RAM. For example, a system with 256 MB of RAM should have at least 512 MB of swap space. The command to find out how much swap space is available (**swap**, **swapinfo**, **pstat**, or **lsvg**) depends on your operating system. Your *GemStone/S 64 Bit Installation Guide* contains an example for your platform.

Swap space should not be on a disk drive that contains any of the GemStone repository extent files. In particular, do not use operating system utilities like **swap** or **swapon** to place part of the swap space on a disk that also contains the GemStone extents or transaction logs.

If you want to determine the additional swap space needed just for GemStone, use the memory requirements derived in the preceding section, including space for the number of sessions you expect. These figures will approximate GemStone's needs beyond the swap requirement for UNIX and other software such as the X Window System.

Estimating File Descriptor Needs

When they start, most GemStone processes attempt to raise their file descriptor limit from the default (soft) limit to the hard limit set by the operating system. In the case of the Stone repository monitor, the processes that raise the limit this way are the Stone itself and two of its child processes, the AIO page server and the Admin GcGem. The Stone uses file descriptors this way:

9 for stdin, stdout, stderr, and internal communication
2 for each user session that logs in
1 for each local extent or transaction log within a file system
2 for each extent or transaction log that is a raw partition
1 for each extent or transaction log that is on a remote node

You can cause the above processes to set a limit less than the system hard limit by setting the GEMSTONE_MAX_FD environment variable to a positive integer. A value of 0 disables attempts to change the default limit.

The shared page cache monitor always attempts to raise its file descriptor limit to equal its maximum number of clients plus five for stdin, stdout, stderr, and internal communication. The maximum number of clients is set by the SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS configuration option (page 388).

Reviewing Kernel Tunable Parameters

UNIX kernel parameters limit the interprocess communication resources that GemStone can obtain. It's helpful to know what the existing limits are so that you can either stay within them or plan to raise the kernel limits. There are four parameters of primary interest:

- The maximum size of a shared memory segment (typically `shmmax` or a similar name) limits the size of the shared page cache for each repository monitor.

  For information about platform-specific limitations on the size of the shared page cache, refer to Chapter 1 of your *GemStone/S 64 Bit Installation Guide*.

- The maximum number of semaphores per semaphore id limits the number of sessions that can connect to the shared page cache, because each session uses one semaphore. (Typically this parameter is `semmsl` or a similar name, although it is not tunable under all operating systems.)

- The maximum number of users allowed on the system (typically `maxusers` or a similar name) can limit the number of logins and sometimes also is used as a variable in the allocation of other kernel resources by formula. In the latter case, you may need to set it somewhat larger than the actual number of users.

- The hard limit set for the number of file descriptors can limit the total number of logins and repository extents, as described previously.

How you determine the existing limits depends on your operating system. If the information is not readily available, proceed anyway. A later step shows how to verify that the shared memory and semaphore limits are adequate for the GemStone configuration you chose.

Checking the System Clock

The system clock should be set to the correct time. When GemStone opens the repository at startup, it compares the current system time with the recorded checkpoint times as part of a consistency check. A system time earlier than the time

at which the last checkpoint was written may be taken as an indication of corrupted data and prevent GemStone from starting. The time comparisons use GMT. It is not necessary to adjust GemStone for changes to and from daylight savings time in the United States.

To Set the Page Cache Options and the Number of Sessions

Configure the shared page cache and the Stone's private page cache according to the size of the repository and the number of sessions that will connect to it simultaneously. Then use a GemStone utility to verify that the UNIX kernel will support this configuration.

Shared Page Cache

The GemStone shared page cache system consists of two components, the shared page cache itself and a monitor process (`shrpcmonitor`). Figure 1.2 shows the connections between these two and the main GemStone components when GemStone runs on a single node. There is no direct connection between the shared page cache and the repository.

The shared page cache resides in a segment of the operating system's virtual memory that is available to any authorized process. When the Stone repository monitor or a Gem session process needs to access an object in the repository, it first checks to see whether the page containing that object is already in the cache. If the page is already present, the process reads the object directly from shared memory. If the page is not present, the process reads the page from the disk into the cache, where all of its objects also become available to other processes.

The name of the shared page cache monitor ordinarily is derived from the name of the Stone repository monitor and the hostid in "dot" format; for instance, `gs64stone@192.83.233.25`. Some utilities, such as **gslist**, translate the address to the node's name before displaying it.

Each shared page cache is associated with exactly one Stone process and repository, and a Stone may never have more than one shared page cache on the same node. The Stone spawns the shared page cache automatically during startup. If other Gem session processes on the same node need to access that repository, they must connect to the same shared page cache and monitor process to ensure cache coherency. Use of the shared page cache reduces disk I/O and improves performance.

Figure 1.2   Shared Page Cache Configuration
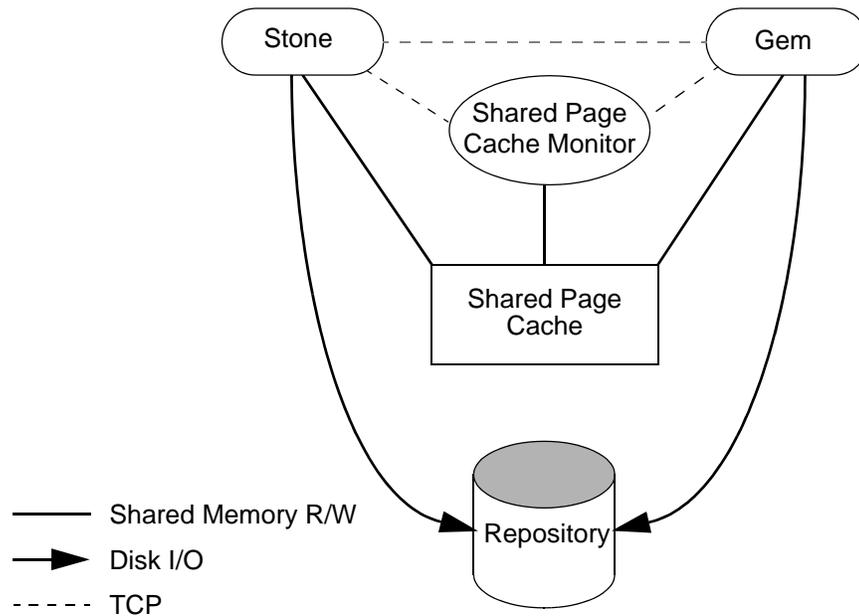
Estimating the Size of the Shared Page Cache

The goal in sizing the shared page cache is to make it large enough to hold the application's working set of objects, thereby reducing disk I/O, while not inducing excessive swapping at the operating system level. Three factors are important in estimating the size (the minimum cache size in all cases should be 20 MB):

1.   The number of objects in the repository.

     For best performance, the entire object table should be in shared memory. At a minimum, we recommend that you allow room for one-third to one-half of the object table in the cache. Each object uses five bytes in the table.

2.   The size of the repository. At a minimum, we recommend that you keep at least 25% of the repository in the cache. Although this factor is application-dependent, increasing the amount in the cache will improve performance.

3. The number of users and the size of their transactions. Again, this factor is specific to your application, depending (among other things) on how frequently users will be committing their transactions.

The cache size thus estimated is only a starting point for system configuration. It uses a percentage of the repository to estimate the size of the working set of objects, which can vary drastically depending on the application's design. In addition, the degree to which your application clusters objects that are likely to be accessed together can have a significant impact on space used in the cache.

Once your application is running, you can tune the cache size by monitoring the free space. See "To Monitor Page Reads and Writes by a Session" on page 225, especially the statistic NumberOfFreeFrames.

NOTE
For information about platform-specific limitations on the size of the shared page cache, see Chapter 1 of your GemStone/S 64 Bit Installation Guide.

Stone's Private Page Cache

As the Stone repository monitor allocates resources to each session, it stores the information in its private page cache. The size of this cache is set by the STN_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB configuration option (page 402). The default size of 2 MB is sufficient in almost all circumstances. If you think you might need to adjust this setting, please contact GemStone Technical Support.

Procedure

To configure the shared page cache, follow these steps:

Step 1. Set the SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB configuration option (page 389), using Table 1.1 (on page 7) or your own estimate derived above (remember to convert to KB). For instance, for the Medium configuration's 1.5 GB cache:

```
SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB = 1500000;
```

Step 2. If the number of sessions will be greater than 40, increase the STN_MAX_SESSIONS configuration option (page 400) accordingly.

Make sure the SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS option (page 388) is set to its default (–1), which causes GemStone to calculate a value based on STN_MAX_SESSIONS.

For instance:

```
STN_MAX_SESSIONS = 50;
SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS = -1;
```

Step 3. Use GemStone's **shmem** utility to verify that your UNIX kernel supports the chosen cache size and number of processes. The command line is

$GEMSTONE/install/shmem *existingFile cacheSizeKB numProcs*

where

- $GEMSTONE is the directory where the GemStone software is installed.
- *existingFile* is the name of any writable file, which is used to obtain an id (the file is not altered).
- *cacheSizeKB* is the SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB setting.
- *numProcs* is either the SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS setting or (if that option is set to –1) the greater of 15 or (number of extents + 3).

For instance, for the values used in Steps 1 and 2:

```
% touch /tmp/shmem
% $GEMSTONE/install/shmem /tmp/shmem 1500000 55
% rm /tmp/shmem
```

If **shmem** is successful in obtaining a shared memory segment of sufficient size, no message is printed. Otherwise, diagnostic output will help you identify the kernel parameter that needs tuning. The total shared memory requested includes cache overhead of about 20 bytes per KB of cache space plus about 20 KB per session in SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS. The actual shared memory segment in this example would be 104865792 bytes (your system might produce slightly different results).

Diagnostics

The shared page cache monitor creates or appends to a log file, *gem*S*toneNamePid*pcmon.log, in the same directory as the log for the Stone repository monitor. The *Pid* portion of the name is the monitor's process id. In case of difficulty, check for this log (the cache monitor removes the log if the cache shuts down normally).

The operating system kernel must be configured appropriately on each node running a shared page cache. If **startstone** or a remote login fails because the shared cache cannot be attached, check *gemStoneName*.log and *gemStoneNamePid*pcmon.log for detailed information.

The following configuration settings are checked at startup:

- The kernel shared memory resources must be enabled and sufficient to provide the page space specified by SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB plus the cache overhead.

  The kernel semaphore resources must also be sufficient to provide an array of size SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS + 1 semaphores.

  Use the **shmem** utility to test the settings (see Step 3 on page 18). If multiple Stones are being run concurrently on the same node, each Stone requires a separate set of semaphores and separate semaphore id.

- Sufficient file descriptors must be available at startup to provide one descriptor for each of the SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS processes plus an overhead of five. Compare your SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS configuration setting to the operating system file descriptor limit per process.

  On operating systems that permit it, the shared page cache monitor attempts to raise the descriptor soft limit to the number required. In some cases, raising the limit may require superuser action to raise the hard limit or to reconfigure the kernel.

To Configure the Repository Extents

Configuring the repository extents involves these primary considerations:

- Providing sufficient disk space
- Minimizing I/O contention
- Providing fault tolerance

Estimating Extent Size

When you estimate the size of the repository, allow 10 to 20% for fragmentation. Also allow 0.5 MB of free space for each session that will be logged in simultaneously—if necessary, the extent will be expanded to provide this much headroom.

Example 1.1 Extent Size Including Working Space

```
Size of repository           = 1 GB

Free-Space Allowance
  .5 MB * 20 sessions        = 10 MB

Fragmentation Allowance
  1 GB * 15%                 = 150 MB

Total with Working Space     = 1.16 GB
```

If the free space in extents falls below a level set by the STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD configuration option, the Stone takes a number of steps to avoid shutting down. For information, see "How to Recover from Disk-Full Conditions" on page 190. (The default setting for STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD is 1 MB; see page 395.)

For planning purposes, you should allow additional disk space for making Gem-Stone backups (if you do not use tape) and for duplicating the repository when upgrading to a new release. A GemStone backup typically occupies 75% to 90% of the total size of the extents, depending on how much space is free in the repository at the time.

Choosing the Extent Location

You should consider the following factors when deciding where to place the extents:

- Keep extents on a spindle different from operating system swap space.

- Where possible, keep the extents and transaction logs on separate spindles.

Specify the location of each extent in the configuration file. The following example uses two raw disk partitions (your partition names will be different):

```
DBF_EXTENT_NAMES = /dev/rdsk/c1t3d0s5, /dev/rdsk/c2t2d0s6;
```

Setting a Maximum Size for an Extent

You can specify a maximum size in MB for each extent through the DBF_EXTENT_SIZES configuration option (page 378). When the extent reaches that size, GemStone stops allocating space in it. If no size is specified, which is the

default, GemStone continues to allocate space for the extent until the file system or raw partition is full, or until 32 terabytes (32,000 GB) have been allocated.

> *NOTE*
> *For best performance using raw partitions, the maximum size should be slightly smaller than the size of the partition, so that GemStone can avoid having to handle system errors. For example, for a 2 GB partition, set the size to 1995 MB.*

Each size entry is for the corresponding entry in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES (page 378). Use a comma to mark the position of an extent for which you do not want to specify a limit. For example, the following settings are for two extents of 500 MB each in raw partitions.

```
DBF_EXTENT_NAMES = /dev/rdsk/c1t3d0s5, /dev/rdsk/c2t2d0s6;
DBF_EXTENT_SIZES = 498, 498;
```

The maximum size of an extent is limited by the operating system and platform, but under no circumstances can be larger than 16 GB. For specific information about system dependencies, see the comment in the configuration file for the parameter DBF_EXTENT_SIZES.

Pregrowing Extents to a Fixed Size

Allocating disk space requires a system call that introduces run time overhead. Each time an extent is expanded (Figure 1.3), your application must incur this overhead and then initialize the added extent pages.

Figure 1.3   Growing an Extent on Demand
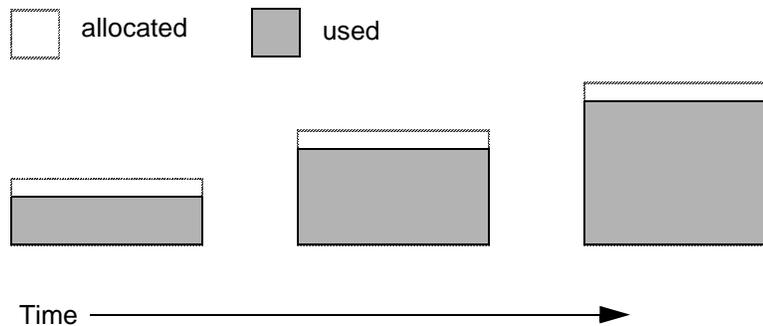
You can increase I/O efficiency while reducing file system fragmentation by instructing GemStone to allocate an extent to a predetermined size (called pregrowing it) at startup. When DBF_PRE_GROW is set to True, the Stone repository monitor obtains the necessary space when it creates a new extent or starts with an extent that is smaller than the specified size.

Pregrowing extents avoids repeated system calls to allocate and initialize additional space incrementally. This technique can be used with any number of extents, and with either raw disk partitions or extents in a file system. It is especially useful in performance benchmarking. Pregrowing extents also provides a simple way to reserve space on a disk for a GemStone extent.

Figure 1.4   Pregrowing an Extent
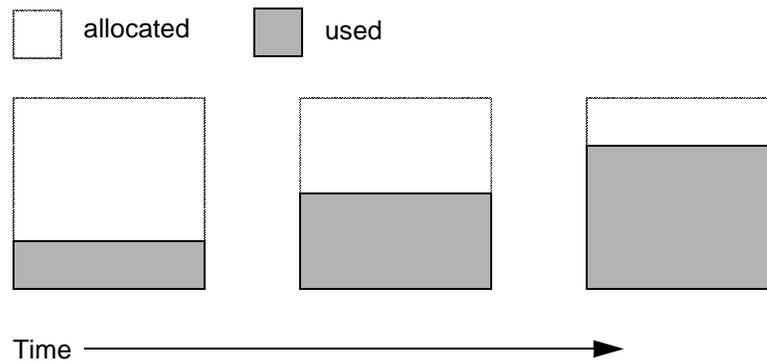
The disadvantages of pregrowing extents are that it takes longer to start GemStone the next time or to add an extent dynamically, and unused disk space allocated to pregrown extents is unavailable for other purposes.

Two configuration options work together to pregrow extents:

*   DBF_PRE_GROW (page 379) enables the operation. When DBF_PRE_GROW is set to True, the Stone repository monitor obtains the necessary space when it creates a new extent or starts with an extent that is smaller than the specified size.

*   DBF_EXTENT_SIZES (page 378) sets the size limit individually for each extent. For optimal performance, the size should be slightly smaller than the actual size of the disk partition.

To pregrow extents, set both of these configuration options (and remove the comment symbol from DBF_PRE_GROW line). For example:

```
DBF_EXTENT_SIZES = 498, 498;
DBF_PRE_GROW = TRUE;
```

Allocating Data to Multiple Extents

If your application is query-intensive, you should consider dividing the repository into multiple extents and placing each extent on a separate spindle so that accesses can overlap. When GemStone schedules disk writes, it assumes that you have done so. Because several extents can be active at once, putting them on the same spindle limits the maximum update rate and causes updating transactions to have unexpected impact on the response time for queries.

The DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE configuration option (page 378) determines whether GemStone allocates new disk pages to multiple extents by filling each extent sequentially or by balancing the extents using a set of weights you specify. If you have placed each extent on a separate disk drive as recommended, the weighted allocation yields better performance because it distributes disk accesses.

Sequential Allocation

By default, the Stone repository monitor allocates disk resources sequentially by filling one extent to capacity before opening the next extent. (See Figure 1.5 on page 24.) For example, if a logical repository consists of three extents named A, B, and C, then all of the disk resources in A will be allocated before any disk resources from B are used, and so forth. Sequential allocation is used when the DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE configuration option is set to SEQUENTIAL.

Weighted Allocation

For weighted allocation, you use DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE to specify the number of extent pages to be allocated from each extent on each allocation request. The allocations are positive integers in the range 1..40 (inclusive), with each element corresponding to an extent of DBF_EXTENT_NAMES. For example:

```
DBF_EXTENT_NAMES = a.dbf, b.dbf, c.dbf;
DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE = 12, 20, 8;
```

You can think of the total weight of a repository as the sum of the weights of its extents. When the Stone allocates space from the repository, each extent contributes an allocation proportional to its weight.

NOTE
We suggest that you avoid using very small values for weights, such as

"1,1,1". It's more efficient to allocate a group of pages at once, such as "10,10,10", than to allocate single pages repeatedly.

One reason for specifying weighted allocation is to share the I/O load among a repository's extents. For example, you can create three extents with equal weights, as shown in Figure 1.6 (on page 25).

Figure 1.5   Sequential Allocation

c.dbf   c.dbf   c.dbf

b.dbf   b.dbf   b.dbf

a.dbf   a.dbf   a.dbf
(primary)   (primary)   (primary)

Time
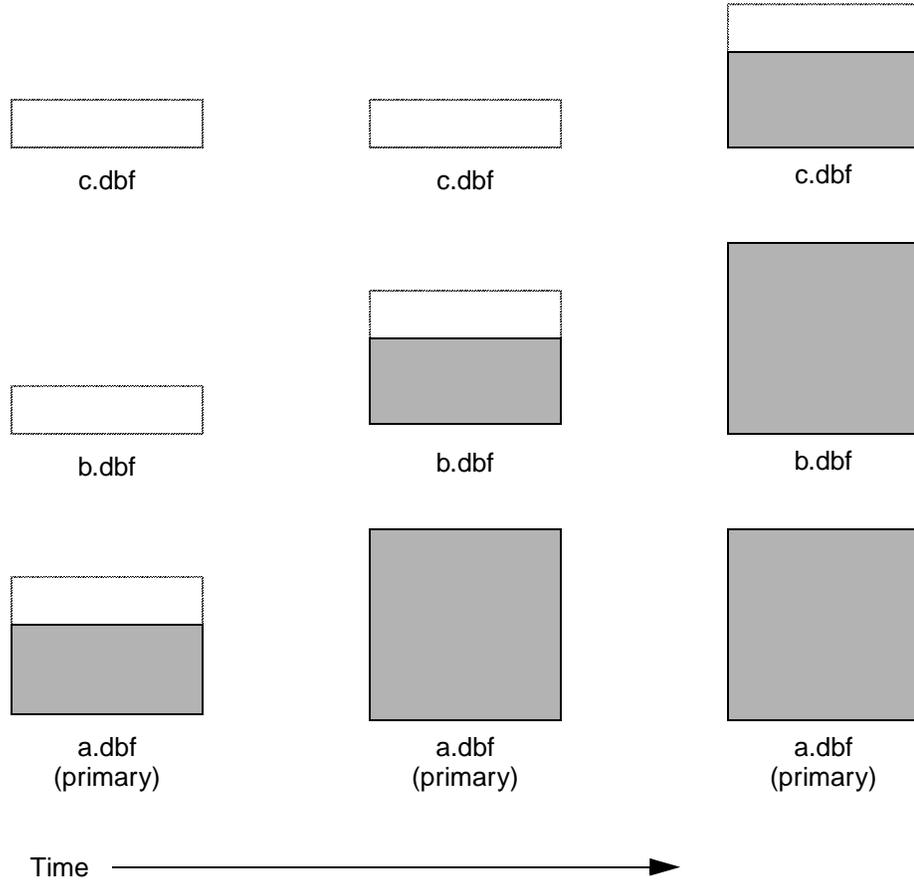
Figure 1.6 Equally Weighted Allocation

```
DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE = 10,10,10;
```


Time ➝
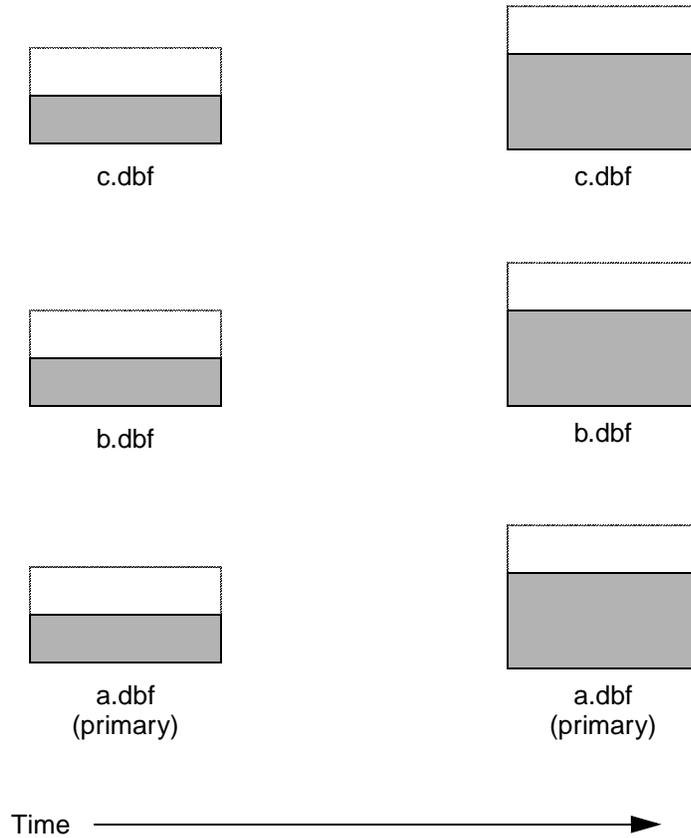
Although equal weights are most common, you can adjust the relative extent weights for other reasons, such as to favor a faster disk drive. For example, suppose we have defined three extents: A, B, and C. If we defined their weights to be 12, 20, and 8 respectively, then for every 40 disk units (pages) allocated, 12 would come from A, 20 from B, and 8 from C. Another way of stating this formula is that because B's weight is 50% of the total repository weight, 50% of all newly-allocated pages are taken from extent B. Figure 1.7 shows the result.

Figure 1.7 Proportionally Weighted Allocation

```
DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE = 12,20,8;
```


c.dbf   c.dbf

b.dbf   b.dbf

a.dbf   a.dbf
(primary)   (primary)

Time ⟶
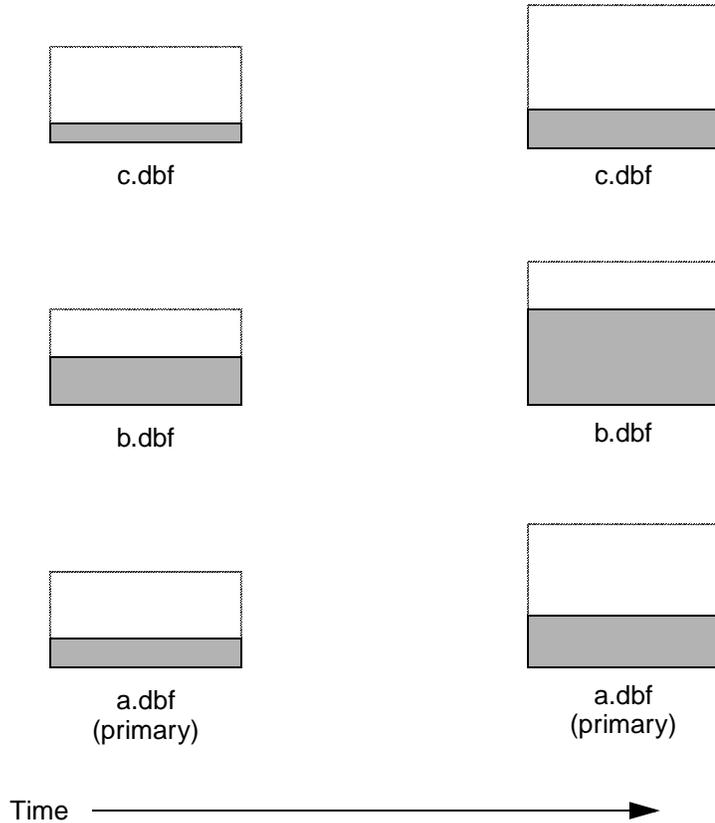
You can modify the relative extent weights by editing your GemStone
configuration file and modifying the values listed for DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE.
You can also change DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE to SEQUENTIAL without harming
the system. The new values you specify take effect the next time you start the
GemStone system.

Effect of Clustering on Allocation Mode

Explicit clustering of objects using instances of ClusterBucket that explicitly
specify an extentId takes precedence over DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE. For

information about clustering objects, refer to the *GemStone/S 64 Bit Programming Guide*.

Weighted Allocation for Extents Created at Run Time

Smalltalk methods for creating extents at run time (`Repository>>createExtent:` and `Repository>>createExtent:withMaxSize:`) do not provide a way to specify a weight for the newly-created extent. If your repository uses weighted allocation, the Stone repository monitor assigns the new extent a weight that is the simple average of the repository's existing extents. For instance, if the repository is composed of three extents with weights 6, 10, and 20, the default weight of a newly-created fourth extent would be 12 (36 divided by 3).

To Configure the Transaction Logs

Configuring the transaction logs involves considerations similar to those for extents:

- Choosing a logging mode

- Providing sufficient disk space

- Minimizing I/O contention

- Providing fault tolerance, through the choice of logging mode

Choosing a Logging Mode

GemStone provides two modes of transaction logging:

- *Full logging* provides real-time incremental backup of the repository. Deployed applications should use this mode. All transactions are logged regardless of their size, and the resulting logs can used in restoring the repository from a GemStone backup.

- *Partial logging* is the default mode, and is intended for use during evaluation or early stages of application development. Partial logging is also recommended during bulk loading of the repository. Partial logging allows a simple operation to run unattended for an extended period and permits automatic recovery from system crashes that do not corrupt the repository. Logs created in this mode cannot be used in restoring the repository from a backup.

To enable full transaction logging, change the configuration setting to True and restart the Stone repository monitor:

```
STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING = TRUE;
```

> *CAUTION*
> *The only backups to which you can apply transaction logs are those made while the repository is in full logging mode. If you change to full logging, be sure to make a GemStone backup as soon as circumstances permit.*

Changing the logging mode from full to partial logging requires special steps. See "To Change to Partial Logging" on page 204.

For general information about the logging mode and the administrative differences, see "Logging Modes" on page 195.

Estimating the Log Size

How much disk space does your application need for transaction logs? The answer depends on several factors:

- The logging mode that you choose

- Characteristics of your transactions

- How often you archive and remove the logs

If you have configured GemStone for full transaction logging (that is, STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING is set to True), you must allow sufficient space to log all transactions until you next archive the logs.

> *CAUTION*
> *If the Stone exhausts the log space, users will be unable to commit transactions until space is made available.*

You can estimate the space required from your transaction rate and the number of bytes modified in a typical transaction. Example 1.2 provides an estimate for an application that expects to generate 4500 transactions a day.

At any point, the method `Repository>>oldestLogFileIdForRecovery` identifies the oldest log file needed for recovery from the most recent checkpoint, if the Stone were to crash. Log files older than the most recent checkpoint (the default maximum interval is 5 minutes) are needed only if it becomes necessary to restore the repository from a backup. Although the older logs can be retrieved from archives, you may want to keep them online until the next GemStone full backup, if you have sufficient disk space.

Example 1.2   Space for Transaction Logs Under Full Logging

```
Average transaction rate              = 5 per minute

Duration of transaction processing    = 15 hours per day

Average transaction size              = 5 KB

Archiving interval                    = Daily

Transactions between archives
   5 per minute * 60 minutes * 15 hours   = 4500

Log space (minimum)
   4500 transactions * 5 KB           = 22 MB
```

If GemStone is configured for partial logging (the default), you need only provide enough space to maintain transaction logs since the last repository checkpoint. Ordinarily, two log files are sufficient: the current log and the immediately previous log. (In partial logging mode, transaction logs are used only after an unexpected shutdown to recover transactions since the last checkpoint.) If you use the default configuration, you should provide space for at least two logs of 2 MB each.

Choosing the Log Location and Size Limit

The considerations in choosing a location for transaction logs are similar to those for extents:

* Keep transaction logs on a different spindle than operating system swap space.

* Where possible, keep the extents and transaction logs on separate spindles—doing so reduces I/O contention while increasing fault tolerance.

* Because update-intensive applications primarily are writing to the transaction log, storing raw data in a disk partition (rather than in a file system) can yield somewhat better performance.

> *WARNING*
> *Because the transaction logs are needed to recover from a system crash,*
> *do NOT place them in directories such as /tmp that are automatically*
> *cleared during power-up.*

GemStone requires at least two log locations (directories or raw partitions) so it can switch to another when the current one is filled. When you set the log locations in the configuration file, you should also check their size limit.

Although the default size of 10 MB is adequate in some situations, update-intensive applications should consider a larger size (at least 25 to 50 MB) to limit the frequency with which logs are switched. Each switch causes a checkpoint to occur, which can impact performance.

> *NOTE*
> *For best performance using raw partitions, the size setting should be slightly smaller than the size of the partition so GemStone can avoid having to handle system errors. For example, for a 2 GB partition, set it to 1998 MB.*

The following example sets up a log in a 2 GB raw partition and a directory of 50 MB logs in the file system. This setup is a workable compromise when the number of raw partitions is limited. The file system logs give the administrator time to archive the primary log when it is full.

```
STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES = /dev/rdsk/c4d0s2,
/user3/tranlogs;
STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES = 1998, 50;
```

All of the transaction logs must reside on Stone's node.

To Configure Server Response to Gem Fatal Errors

The Stone repository monitor is configurable in its response to a fatal error detected by a Gem session process. By default, the Stone halts and dumps a core image if it receives notification from a Gem that the Gem process died with a fatal error that would cause the Gem to dump core. By stopping both the Gem and the Stone at this point, the possibility of repository corruption is minimized. During application development, it may be helpful to know exactly what the Stone was doing when the Gem went down.

For deployed production systems, we recommend that you change the default in the Stone's configuration file so that the Stone will attempt to keep running:

```
STN_HALT_ON_FATAL_ERROR = FALSE;
```

To Set File Permissions for the Server

The primary consideration in setting file permissions for the Server is to protect the repository extents. All reads and writes should be done through GemStone

repository executables: the Stone and its child processes (the shared page cache monitor, AIO page server, Admin and Reclaim GcGems, Symbol Gem, Page Manager, and Free Frame Page Server) and the Gem session processes. Chapter 3 describes the use of additional page servers to read and write extents in networked systems.

Recommended: Use the Setuid Bit

The tightest repository security is obtained by having the extents and the repository executables owned by a single UNIX account, using the UNIX setuid bit (S bit) on the executable files, and making the extents writable only by that account. The S bit causes a process to belong to the owner you specify for the file.

Table 1.2 shows the recommended file settings, where *gsadmin* and *gsgroup* can be any ordinary UNIX account and group (do NOT use the root account for this purpose). The person who starts the repository monitor (Stone) must be logged in as *gsadmin* or have execute permission. The Stone and shared page cache will belong to the owner you specify for the files.

Table 1.2   Recommended Resource and Process Permissions for the Server

Resource or Process[a]	Protection Mode	File Owner	File Group	Process Runs As	Comments
repository extents	-rw-------	gsadmin	gsgroup		Users read and write repository through Gem-Stone processes. The Stone sets up the page cache in shared memory.
shared memory	-rw-rw----	gsadmin	gsgroup		
stoned	-r-sr-xr-x	gsadmin	gsgroup	gsadmin	AIO page server and GC Gem are spawned by stoned and can access repository as the *gsadmin* account.
pgsvrmain	-r-sr-xr-x	gsadmin	gsgroup	gsadmin	
gem	-r-sr-xr-x	gsadmin	gsgroup	gsadmin	

[a] Ownership and permissions for the netldid executable depend on the authentication mode chosen and are discussed in Chapter 3.

If you are logged in as root when you run the GemStone installation program, it offers to set file protections in the manner described in Table 1.2. To set them manually, do the following as root:

```
# cd $GEMSTONE/sys
# chmod u+s gem pgsvr pgsvrmain stoned
# chown gsadmin gem pgsvr pgsvrmain stoned
# cd $GEMSTONE/data
# chmod 600 extent0.dbf
# chown gsadmin extent0.dbf
```

The protection mode for the shared memory segment is fixed in GemStone.

You must take similar steps to provide access for repository clients, which are presented in Chapter 2. See "To Set Ownership and Permissions for Session Processes" on page 56.

Alternative: Use Group Write Permission

For sites that prefer not to use the setuid bit, the alternative is to make the extents writable by a particular UNIX group and have all users belong to that group. That group must be the primary group of the person who starts the Stone (that is, the one listed in `/etc/passwd`). Do the following, where *gsgroup* is a group of your choice:

```
% cd $GEMSTONE/data
% chmod 660 extent0.dbf
% chgrp gsgroup extent0.dbf
```

Sites that run the linked version of GemBuilder may also prefer to use this protection so that fileouts and other I/O operations that do not read or write the repository will be done using the individual user's id instead of the single *gsadmin* account.

Access to Other Server Files

GemStone creates log files and other special files in several locations, which are described below. In a multi-user environment, the protection of these resources must be such that the appropriate file can be created or updated in response to actions by several users.

`/opt/gemstone`	All users should have read/write/execute access to the directories `/opt/gemstone/log` and `/opt/gemstone/locks` on each node. (On some systems, these directories may be located in `/usr/gemstone`.)
	By default, NetLDIs (Network Long Distance Information processes) create log files in the `log` directory.
	GemStone processes that have a name for each instance (currently the Stone, shared page cache monitor, and NetLDI) create lock files in the `locks` directory.
`system.conf`	The user who owns the Stone process must have write permission for the Stone configuration file, which by default is `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf`. If certain configuration changes are made while the Stone is running, the Stone updates that file. For instance, the Stone must record run-time changes such as those made by `Repository>>createExtent:` so that it can restart later in the correct configuration.

1.3 How to Set Up a Raw Partition

WARNING
*Using raw partitions requires extreme care. Overwriting the wrong
partition destroys existing information, which in certain cases can make
data on the entire disk inaccessible.*

The instructions in this section are incomplete intentionally. You will need to work
with your system administrator to locate a partition of suitable size for your extent
or transaction log. Consult the system documentation for guidance as necessary.

You can mix file system-based files and raw partitions in the same repository, and
you can add a raw partition to existing extents or transaction log locations. The
partition reference in /dev must be readable and writable by anyone using the
repository, so you should give the entry in /dev the same protection as you
would use for the corresponding type of file in the file system.

The first step is to find a partition (raw device) that is available for use. Depending
on your operating system, a raw partition may have a name like
/dev/rdsk/c1t3d0s5, /dev/rsd2e, or /dev/vg03/rlvol1. Most operating
systems have a utility or administrative interface that can assist you in identifying
existing partitions; some examples are **prtvtoc**, **dkinfo**, and **vgdisplay**. A partition
is available if all of the following are true:

- It does not contain the root (/) file system (on some systems, the root volume
  group).

- It is not on a device that contains swap space.

- Either it does not contain a file system or that file system can be left
  unmounted and its contents can be overwritten.

- It is not already being used for raw data.

When you select a partition, make sure that any file system tables, such as
/etc/vfstab, do not call for it to be mounted at system boot. If necessary, un-
mount a file system that is currently mounted and edit the system table . Use
chmod and **chown** to set read-write permissions and ownership of the special de-
vice file the same way you would protect a repository file in a file system. For ex-
ample, set the permissions to 600, and set the owner to the GemStone administra-
tor.

If the partition will contain the primary extent (the first or only one listed in
DBF_EXTENT_NAMES), initialize it by using the GemStone **copydbf** utility to copy
an existing repository extent to the device. The extent must not be in use when you

copy it. If the partition already contains a GemStone file, first use **removedbf** to mark the partition as being empty.

Partitions for transaction logs do not need to be initialized, nor do secondary extents into which the repository will expand later.

Sample Raw Partition Setup

The following example configures GemStone to use the raw partition /dev/rsd2d as the repository extent.

Step 1. If the raw partition already contains a GemStone file, mark it as being empty. (The **copydbf** utility will not overwrite an existing repository file.)

    % **removedbf /dev/rsd2d**

Step 2. Use **copydbf** to install a fresh extent on the raw partition. (If you copy an existing repository, first stop any Stone that is running on it.)

    % **copydbf $GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf /dev/rsd2d**

Step 3. As root, change the ownership and the permission of the partition special device file in /dev to what you ordinarily use for extents in a file system. For instance:

    # **chown** *gsAdmin* **/dev/rsd2d**
    # **chmod 600 /dev/rsd2d**

You should also consider restricting the execute permission for $GEMSTONE/bin/removedbf and $GEMSTONE/bin/removeextent to further protect your repository. In particular, these executable files should not have the setuid (S) bit set.

Step 4. Edit the Stone's configuration file to show where the extent is located:

    DBF_EXTENT_NAMES = /dev/rsd2d;

Step 5. Use **startstone** to start the Stone repository monitor in the usual manner.

Changing Between Files and Raw Partitions

This section tells you how to change your configuration by moving existing repository extent files to raw partitions or by moving existing extents in raw partitions to files in a file system. You can make similar changes for transaction logs.

Moving an Extent to a Raw Partition

To move an extent from the file system to a raw partition, do this:

Step 1. Define the raw disk partition device. Its size should be at least 1 to 2 MB larger than the existing extent file.

Step 2. Stop the Stone repository monitor.

Step 3. Edit the repository's configuration file, substituting the device name of the partition for the file name in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES (page 378).

Set DBF_EXTENT_SIZES for this extent to be 1 to 2 MB smaller than the size of the partition.

Step 4. Use **copydbf** to copy the extent file to the raw partition. (If the partition previously contained a GemStone file, first use **removedbf** to mark it as unused.)

Step 5. Restart the Stone.

Moving an Extent to the File System

The procedure to move an extent from a raw partition to the file system is similar:

Step 1. Stop the Stone repository monitor.

Step 2. Edit the repository's configuration file, substituting the file pathname for the name of the partition in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES.

Step 3. Use **copydbf** to copy the extent to a file in a file system, then set the file permissions to the ones you ordinarily use.

Step 4. Restart the Stone.

Moving Transaction Logging to a Raw Partition

To switch from transaction logging in the file system to logging in a raw partition, do this:

Step 1. Define the raw disk partition. If you plan to copy the current transaction log to the partition, its size should be at least 1 to 2 MB larger than current log file.

Step 2. Stop the Stone repository monitor.

Step 3. Edit the repository's configuration file, substituting the device name of the partition for the directory name in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES (page 404). Make sure that STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES for this location is 1 to 2 MB smaller than the size of the partition.

Step 4. Use **copydbf** to copy the current transaction log file to the raw partition. (If the partition previously contained a GemStone file, first use **removedbf** to mark it as unused.)

You can determine the current log from the last message "Creating a new transaction log" in the Stone's log. If you don't copy the current transaction log, the Stone will open a new one with the next sequential fileId, but it may be opened in another location specified by STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES.

Step 5. Restart the Stone.

Moving Transaction Logging to the File System

The procedure to move transaction logging from a raw partition to the file system is similar:

Step 1. Stop the Stone repository monitor.

Step 2. Edit the repository's configuration file, substituting a directory pathname for the name of the partition in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES.

Step 3. Use **copydbf** to copy the current transaction log to a file in the specified directory. The **copydbf** utility will generate a file name like tranlog*nnn*.dbf, where *nnn* is the internal fileId of that log.

Step 4. Restart the Stone.

1.4 How to Access the Server Configuration at Run Time

GemStone provides several methods in class System that let you examine, and in certain cases modify, the configuration parameters at run time from Smalltalk.

To Access Current Settings at Run Time

Class methods in category Configuration File Access let you examine the system-Stone configuration. The following access methods all provide similar server information:

`stoneConfigurationReport`
>   Returns a SymbolDictionary whose keys are the names of configuration file parameters, and whose values are the current settings of those parameters in the repository monitor process.

`configurationAt:` *aName*
>   Returns the value of the specified configuration parameter, giving preference to the current session process if the parameter applies to a Gem.

`stoneConfigurationAt:` *aName*
>   Returns the value of the specified configuration parameter from the Stone process, or returns `nil` if that parameter is not applicable to a Stone.

(The corresponding methods for accessing a session configuration are described on page 59.)

Here is a partial example of the Stone configuration report:

```
topaz 1> printit
System stoneConfigurationReport asReportString
%
#SHR_SPIN_LOCK_COUNT     1200
#StnDisableLoginFailureTimeLimit        15
#StnDisableLoginFailureLimit     15
#SHR_PAGE_CACHE_LOCKED   false
...
```

Keys in mixed capitals and lowercase, such as `SpinLockCount`, are internal run-time parameters.

To Change Settings at Run Time

The class method `System class>>configurationAt:` *aName* `put:` *aValue* in category Runtime Configuration Access lets you change the value of the internal run-time parameters in Table 1.3 if you have the appropriate privileges. The parameters that can be changed are those for which `ConfigurationParameterDict at:` *aName* returns a negative SmallInteger. All changeable parameters require that *aValue* be a SmallInteger.

CAUTION
Do not change configuration parameters unless there is a clear reason for doing so. Incorrect settings can have serious adverse effects on GemStone performance. For additional guidance about run-time changes to specific parameters, see Appendix A, "GemStone Configuration Options."

Table 1.3   Server Configuration Parameters Changeable at Run Time

Configuration File Option	Internal Parameter
SHR_SPIN_LOCK_COUNT	#SpinLockCount [a]
STN_ADMIN_GC_SESSION_ENABLED	#StnAdminGcSessionEnabled [b]
STN_CHECKPOINT_INTERVAL	#StnCheckpointInterval [a]
STN_COMMIT_QUEUE_THRESHOLD	#StnCommitQueueThreshold [a]
STN_CR_BACKLOG_THRESHOLD	#StnCrBacklogThreshold [a]
STN_DISABLE_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT	#StnDisableLoginFailureLimit [c]
STN_DISABLE_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT	#StnDisableLoginFailureTimeLimit [c]
STN_DISKFULL_TERMINATION_INTERVAL	#StnDiskFullTerminationInterval [a]
STN_EPOCH_GC_ENABLED	#StnEpochGcEnabled [b]
STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD	#StnFreeSpaceThreshold
STN_GEM_ABORT_TIMEOUT	#StnGemAbortTimeout [a]
STN_GEM_LOSTOT_TIMEOUT	#StnGemLostOtTimeout [a]
STN_GEM_TIMEOUT	#StnGemTimeout [a]
STN_HALT_ON_FATAL_ERR	#StnHaltOnFatalErr [a]
STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT	#StnLogLoginFailureLimit [c]
STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT	#StnLogLoginFailureTimeLimit [c]
STN_LOOP_NO_WORK_THRESHOLD	#StnLoopNoWorkThreshold [a]

Table 1.3   Server Configuration Parameters Changeable at Run Time (Continued)

Configuration File Option	Internal Parameter
STN_MAX_AIO_RATE	#StnMntMaxAioRate [a]
STN_MAX_VOTING_SESSIONS	#StnMaxVotingSessions [a]
STN_NUM_GC_RECLAIM_SESSIONS	#StnNumGcReclaimSessions [b]
STN_OBJ_LOCK_TIMEOUT	#StnObjLockTimeout
STN_REMOTE_CACHE_TIMEOUT	#StnRemoteCacheTimeout [a]
STN_PAGE_REMOVAL_THRESHOLD	#StnPageRemovalThreshold
STN_SHR_TARGET_PERCENT_DIRTY	#ShrPcTargetPercentDirty [a]
STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG	#StnSignalAbortCrBacklog [b]
STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT	#StnTranLogLimit [a]
STN_TRAN_Q_TO_RUN_Q_THRESHOLD	#StnTranQToRunQThreshold [a]
(none)	#StnLoginsSuspended [d]

[a] Can be changed only by SystemUser.

[b] Requires GarbageCollection privilege.

[c] Requires OtherPassword privilege.

[d] Requires SystemControl privilege.

The following example first obtains the value of #GcSessionEnabled. The parameter is one that can be changed at run time by SystemUser:

```
topaz 1> printit
ConfigurationParameterDict at: #AdminGcSessionEnabled
%
-9
topaz 1> printit
System configurationAt: #AdminGcSessionEnabled put: 0
%
0
```

For more information about these methods, see the comments in the image.

1.5 How to Tune Server Performance

There are a number of configuration options by which you can tune the GemStone server. These options can help make better use of the shared page cache, reduce swapping, and control disk activity caused by repository checkpoints.

To Tune the Shared Page Cache

Two configuration options can help you tailor the shared page cache to the needs of your application: SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB and SHR_SPIN_LOCK_COUNT.

You may also want to consider object clustering within Smalltalk as a means of increasing cache efficiency.

Adjusting the Cache Size

Adjust the SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB configuration option (page 389) according to the total number of objects in the repository and the number accessed at one time. For best performance, the entire object table should be in shared memory. At a minimum, we recommend that the shared page cache should be large enough to hold one-third to one-half of the object table and all the pages on which currently used objects reside.

In general, the more of your repository you can hold in your cache, the better your performance will be. The size of the cache should not exceed one-half of your physical memory.

You should review the configuration recommendations given earlier ("Estimating the Size of the Shared Page Cache" on page 16) in light of your application's design and usage patterns. Estimates of the number of objects queried or updated are particularly useful in tuning the cache.

You can use the shared page cache statistics for a running application to monitor the amount of unused space. See "To Monitor Page Reads and Writes by a Session" on page 225, especially the statistic FreeFrameCount.

Matching Spin Lock Limit to Number of Processors

The SHR_SPIN_LOCK_COUNT configuration option (page 389) specifies the number of times a process should attempt to obtain a lock in the shared page cache using the spin lock mechanism before resorting to setting a semaphore and sleeping. We recommend you leave SHR_SPIN_LOCK_COUNT set to –1 (the default), which causes GemStone to determine whether multiple processors are installed and set the parameter accordingly.

Clustering Objects That Are Accessed Together

Appropriate clustering of objects by the application can allow a smaller shared page cache by reducing the number of data pages in use at once. For general information about clustering objects, see the *GemStone/S 64 Bit Programming Guide*.

To Reduce Excessive Swapping

Be careful not to make the shared page cache so large that it forces excessive swapping. If your node is dedicated to running GemStone, our general recommendation (as given on page 16) is that you use up to one-half of its RAM for the cache. If it is not a dedicated node, you may need to limit the cache size to something smaller than one-half of the RAM. When the node's memory is also used for non-GemStone processes, your shared page cache may need to be swapped, which would affect performance adversely.

Excessive swapping also can be caused by the need to awaken (and swap in) sleeping sessions that are outside of a transaction. When the Stone repository monitor reaches its configured limit, it sends a SignaledAbort message to the sleeping session, causing it to be swapped back into memory. Each such session must awaken long enough to update its view of the repository.

You can reduce this type of swapping activity by increasing the STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG configuration option (page 403). For example, you might determine a desired interval between SignaledAbort messages, and then use your application's commit rate to calculate the setting of STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG. You may need to take the following additional steps:

- Increase the STN_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB configuration option to (STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG + 10) ⁄ 30 MB.

- Increase the size of the shared page cache. The default backlog of 20 commit records requires about 1 MB, assuming that a typical small transaction occupies about 50 KB.

If your configuration uses multiple extents in the file system, you may be able to reduce swapping by limiting the size of file system buffers. Some operating systems do not support this restriction.

To Control Checkpoint Frequency

Each checkpoint guarantees that the committed state of the repository has been written to the extent files. If the checkpoints interfere with other GemStone activity, you may want to adjust their frequency.

- In full transaction logging mode, most checkpoints are determined by the STN_CHECKPOINT_INTERVAL configuration option, which by default is five minutes (see page 391). A few Smalltalk methods, such as `Repository>>fullBackupTo:`, force a checkpoint at the time they are invoked. A checkpoint also is performed each time the Stone begins a new transaction log, so you may want to increase the size of these logs to reduce the frequency of checkpoints.

- In partial logging mode, checkpoints also are triggered by any transaction that is larger than STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT, which sets the size of the largest entry that is to be appended to the transaction log (see page 404). The default limit is 100 KB of log space. If checkpoints are too frequent in partial logging mode, it may help to raise this limit. Conversely, during bulk loading of data with large transactions, it may be desirable to lower this limit to avoid creating large log files.

  For information about tuning STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT in partial logging mode, see the discussion of the CheckpointCount cache statistic on page 232.

A checkpoint also occurs each time the Stone repository monitor is shut down gracefully, as by invoking **stopstone** or `System class>>shutDown`. This checkpoint permits the Stone to restart without having to recover from transaction logs. It also permits extent files to be copied in a consistent state.

Suspending Checkpoints

You can call the method `System class>>suspendCheckpointsForMinutes:` to suspend checkpoints for a given number of minutes, or until `System class>>resumeCheckpoints` is executed. (To execute these Smalltalk methods, you must have the required GemStone privilege, as described in Chapter 5, "User Accounts and Security".)

Adding Page Servers

GemStone uses page servers for three purposes:

- To write dirty pages to disk.

- To transfer pages from the Stone host to the shared page cache host, if different.

- To add free frames to the free frame list, from which a Gem can take as needed.

Page servers referred to as *AIO page servers* perform all three functions. By default, at least one such page server is running at all times, though you can add more as

needed. In addition, you can add one or more *free frame page servers:* page servers dedicated only to the third task in the list above, adding free frames to the free list.

Under certain circumstances, free frame page servers can improve overall system performance. For example, if Gems are performing many operations requiring writing pages to disk, the AIO page server may have to spend all its time writing pages, never getting a chance to add free frames to the free list. Alternatively, if Gems are performing operations that require only reading, the AIO page server will see no dirty frames in the cache—the signal that prompts it to take action. In that case, it may sleep for a second, even though free frames are present in the cache and need to be added to the free list.

To Add AIO Page Servers

By default the Stone spawns a single page server process on its local node to perform asynchronous I/O (AIO) between the shared page cache and the extents. This page server ordinarily is the process that updates extents on the local node during a checkpoint. (In some cases, the Stone may use additional page servers temporarily during startup to pregrow multiple extents.)

If your configuration has multiple extents on separate disk spindles, and you are trying to achieve the maximum possible commit rate, consider increasing the number of AIO page servers in use during ordinary operation. You can do this by changing the STN_NUM_LOCAL_AIO_SERVERS configuration option (page 401).

Additional page servers are unlikely to benefit you unless the host computer has at least two CPUs, and the disk drive hardware supports concurrent writes to multiple extents. For multiple page servers to be effective, they must be able to execute at the same time and write to disk at the same time.

Do You Need Free Frame Page Servers?

A Gem can get free frames either from the free list (the quick way), or, if sufficient free frames are not listed, by scanning the shared page cache for a free frame instead. (What constitutes sufficient free frames is determined by the configuration parameter GEM_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT; for details, see page 380.

If a Gem has to spend a large proportion of its time scanning the shared page cache, its performance may be unacceptable. Under these circumstances, extra free frame page servers can sometimes help. On a single-CPU system, one extra free frame page server might be all that's required; for systems with multiple CPUs, you may wish to start one at a time, checking statistics, until the problem is resolved.

By default, when you start the Stone, it tries to spawn one free frame page server process on its local node. Free frame page servers require a running NetLDI

process, however; if the NetLDI process is not already running on the node, the attempt fails and the Stone writes a message to its log file.

Certain cache statistics can help you determine whether additional free frame page servers will improve system performance. (For details about these and other statistics, see "Cache Statistics" on page 229.)

- If Gems have to scan the shared page cache for free frames, the cache statistic FramesFromFindFree will be greater than zero. If this is the case—especially if it significantly greater—consider starting one or more free frame page servers.

- If the FreeFrameCount is consistently lower than the FreeFrameLimit, a free frame page server might help (though other factors also enter into play).

If FramesAddedToFreeList rises significantly after starting a free frame page server, the new page server has indeed benefited you; likewise, if FramesFromFindFree is reduced to zero, or near zero.

To Add Free Frame Page Servers

You can change the number of free frame page server processes that will be started when the shared page cache is created by setting a configuration parameter, SHR_NUM_FREE_FRAME_SERVERS.

Default: 1
Minimum: 1
Maximum: (SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS – 5)

As mentioned previously, the NetLDI process must already be running in order for the free frame page servers to be started properly.

Process Free Frame Caches

There is a communication overhead involved in getting free frames from the free frame list for scanning. To optimize this, you can configure the Gems and their remote page servers to add or remove multiple free frames from a free frame cache to the free frame list in a single operation.

When using the free frame cache, the Gem or remote page server process removes enough frames from the free list to refill the cache in a single operation. When adding frames to the free list, the process does not add them until the cache is full.

You can control the size of the Gem and remote page server free frame caches by setting the configuration parameters GEM_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE and GEM_PGSVR_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE, respectively.

For each of these, a value of 0 disables the free frame cache (the Gem or remote page server process acquires frames one at a time). A value of -1 means use the default value: 0 (for shared page caches less than 100 MB) or 10 (for shared page caches of 100 MB or greater).

Default: -1
Minimum: -1
Maximum: 63

1.6 How to Run a Second Repository

You can run more than one repository on a single node—for example, separate production and development repositories. There are several points to keep in mind:

- Each repository requires its own Stone repository monitor process, extent files, transaction logs, and configuration file. (Each Stone will also start its own shared page cache monitor and a set of other processes, as described on page 3.)

- You must give each Stone a unique name at startup. That name is used to identify the server and to maintain separate log files. Users will connect to the repository by specifying the Stone's name.

- A single NetLDI serves all Stones and Gem session processes on a given node.

- Multiple Stones can share a single installation directory, provided that you create separate repository extents, transaction logs, and configuration files. If performance is a concern, the first step should be to isolate each Stone's data directory and the system swap space on separate drives. Then, review the discussion "Recommendations About Disk Usage" on page 9.

The following example shows the steps necessary to create a separate repository for application development (identified here by the prefix dev). This repository will run in parallel with the initial repository that you installed by following the instructions in the *GemStone/S 64 Bit Installation Guide.*

In this example, we use the $GEMSTONE installation tree to avoid having to duplicate files that can be shared. To reduce I/O contention, we create a separate data directory on another disk.

Step 1. Copy a fresh repository extent and configuration file to the new data directory. Make the files writable by the development group.

```
% mkdir /user2/devdata
% cd /user2/devdata
% cp $GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf .
% cp $GEMSTONE/bin/initial.config system.conf
% chmod ug+w extent0.dbf system.conf
```

Step 2. Edit the new configuration file so that it specifies the proper extent file. Change the transaction log directories to the new data directory.

```
DBF_EXTENT_NAMES = /user2/devdata/extent0.dbf;
STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES = /user2/devdata,
/user2/devdata;
```

Step 3. Set the environment variable GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF so it points to the new configuration file. GemStone will use the new configuration file in place of the default, which is $GEMSTONE/data/system.conf. For example:

```
$ GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF=/user2/devdata/system.conf
$ export GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF
```

Step 4. Start the Stone for the development repository, giving it the name *devserver24.* GemStone will create log files with that server name as the prefix.

```
$ startstone devserver24
```

Step 5. Start linked Topaz, then set the GemStone name to *devserver24* and log in as DataCurator:

```
% topaz -l
topaz> set gemstone devserver24
topaz> set username DataCurator
topaz> login
GemStone Password?
successful login
topaz 1>
```

At this point, you are logged in much as during the initial installation and you can begin installing user accounts for developers. However, the repository is the one in devdata. Any changes that you commit to this repository will not affect

`$GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf`, and existing applications can use the latter repository independently.

1.7 How to Operate a Duplicate Server

Some customers may want to keep a duplicate of a production GemStone server running almost in parallel as a "warm" backup. The duplicate continually runs in restore mode, restoring each transaction log from the production server after the log is closed. This section tells how to set up the duplicate server and restore the logs.

For general information about restoring backups and transaction logs, see "How to Restore from a Smalltalk Full Backup" on page 290. This discussion assumes you are familiar with that procedure.

An important point to remember is that the transaction logs copied from the production server, called the *archive logs* here, must be kept separate from the transaction logs created by the duplicate server. You can do that by using different log directories or different file name prefixes.

Step 1. Install the duplicate server. For fault tolerance, it's best to do a complete GemStone installation on a second node.

Step 2. While the production Stone is shut down, make an operating system copy of the production extents to the appropriate locations on the duplicate server.

Step 3. Start the duplicate server using the -**R** option, which causes the Stone to enter restore mode. For instance, **startstone** –**R**.

Step 4. Decide on a naming convention or location that you will use on the duplicate server to keep the archive logs separate from those being created by the duplicate server itself. For instance, if both Stones use the default prefix of *tranlog*, you might copy `tranlog123.dbf` on the production server to `$GEMSTONE/data/prodtranlog123.dbf` on the duplicate server.

Step 5. On the duplicate server, tell the Stone where to find the archive logs by sending the following message:

```
Repository>>setArchiveLogDirectories:arrayOfDirectorySpecs
    tranlogPrefix:tranlogPrefixString
```

The arguments specify the directories (or raw partitions) to which the production logs will be copied and the log prefix. Unless they will be changed during the copy operation, these parameters typically correspond to the

following configuration parameters for the *production* Stone: STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES and STN_TRAN_LOG_PREFIX. For details, see the method comments in the image.

The settings continue in effect until the Stone is shut down.

The following example uses the names from Step 4:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository setArchiveLogDirectories:
  #( '$GEMSTONE/data' )
tranlogPrefix: 'prodtranlog'
%
```

Step 6. On the production server, periodically send
Repository>>startNewLog to force a new transaction log. Copy the previous log to the duplicate server, being careful to use the destination directory or file name prefix selected in Step 4.

Alternatively, you can use Repository>>currentLogFile to monitor the current transaction log in use on the production server. When the log file changes, copy the recently completed transaction log to the duplicate server.

Step 7. As each log copy arrives on the node where the duplicate runs, restore it using Repository>>restoreFromArchiveLogs. Each time this method is invoked, it restores any new logs that it finds using the information provided by Repository>>setArchiveLogDirectories:tranlogPrefix: (Step 5).

Step 8. Repeat Steps 6 and 7 as necessary.

Step 9. If it becomes necessary to activate the duplicate in place of the production server, first restore any remaining transaction logs from the production server. Then, on the duplicate server, send the message
Repository>>commitRestore to terminate the restore process and enable logins.

Chapter

2

Configuring Gem Session Processes

This chapter tells how to configure the GemStone/S 64 Bit session processes for your application. For additional information about running session processes on a node remote from the Stone repository monitor, refer also to Chapter 3.

2.1 Overview

As shown in Figure 2.1, a GemStone session involves the following components in a client-server relationship:

- The user application
- A session manager process (Gem), which acts as a server for a particular application
- The Stone repository monitor
- The shared page cache monitor and cache
- The Stone's AIO page server
- The repository itself

Figure 2.1   GemStone Session Elements
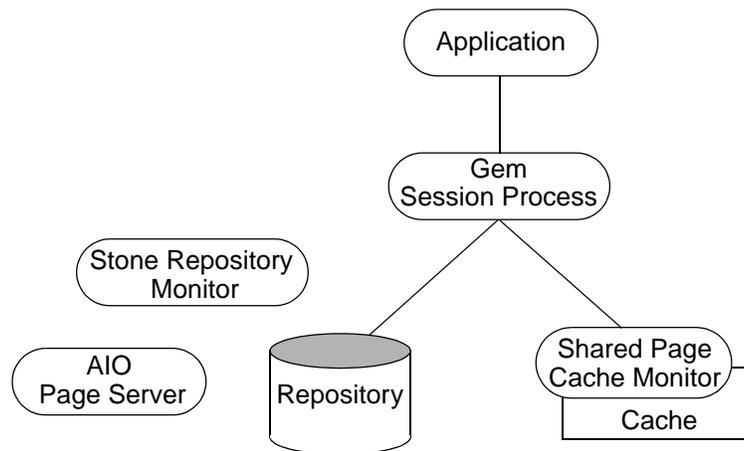
The Gem session process provides the bulk of the repository capabilities as seen by the application. From the viewpoint of the application, the Gem *is* the object server:

- It logs in to the repository through the Stone repository monitor, and it obtains object locks, free object identifiers, and free pages from the repository monitor.

- It presents the application with a consistent view of the repository during a transaction and tracks which objects the application accesses.

- It executes Smalltalk methods within the repository.

- It reads the repository as the application accesses objects, and (with the help of the AIO page server) it updates the repository when the application successfully commits a transaction.

Linked and RPC Applications

The Gem session process can be run as a separate process (as in Figure 2.1) or integrated with the application into a single process, in which case the application is called a *linked* application.

When the Gem runs as a separate process, it responds to Remote Procedure Calls (RPCs) from the application, in which case the application is called an *RPC* application. Applications that use a separate Gem process start that process automatically (from the user's viewpoint) while logging in to the repository.

GemStone provides both linked and RPC tools for repository administration. GemStone also provides both types of libraries for application developers. RPC applications start the Gem session process as part of connecting a user to the repository.

> *NOTE*
> *Whether an application is linked or RPC depends on which GemStone library was loaded at run time. Either type of application can be used on a single node or across a network. Only one session can be linked, but the application can have multiple RPC sessions. C programmers should use an RPC version during development and debugging to protect Gem data structures from possible corruption.*

The Session Configuration File

At start-up time, each Gem session process looks for a configuration file, which by default is the same system-wide configuration file sought by the repository monitor when it starts. However, there are three important differences:

- The session configuration file is optional. If one is not found, the session process uses system defaults.

- All session processes read those configuration options that begin with "GEM_" and the few that are used by both Stones and Gems (such as DUMP_OPTIONS and LOG_WARNINGS). Other settings that the Gem needs are obtained from the repository monitor by network protocol and are the same for all sessions logged in to that Stone.

- The first session process on a node remote from the Stone and extents uses the shared page cache configuration options (SHR_), which determine the configuration of the cache on that node.

Sometimes it's useful for certain sessions to use a variant configuration. Appendix A, "GemStone Configuration Options," tells how to specify an alternate configuration file and how to use supplementary files to adjust the system-wide configuration for a specific session process. Appendix A describes each of the configuration options.

2.2 How to Configure Gem Session Processes

To configuring a Gem session process, you perform the following steps:

1. Gather application specifics about the number of sessions that will be logged in to the repository simultaneously from this node.

2. Plan the operating system resources that will be needed: memory and swap (paging) space.

3. Set the Gem configuration options.

    If this node is remote from the repository monitor, enable a local GemStone shared page cache. Gem session processes running on a server node always use the Stone's shared page cache.

4. Set GemStone file permissions to allow session processes access while providing adequate security.

Gathering Application Information

System resources needed for session processes primarily depend on the number of sessions that will be logged in to a particular repository from this node. Remember that in some applications each user can have more than one session logged in.

Planning Operating System Resources

GemStone session processes need adequate memory and swap space to run efficiently. In addition, kernel parameters can limit the number of sessions that can connect to the shared page cache.

Estimating Memory Needs

Two factors determine the memory needs for session processes:

*   The size of the shared page cache on a node remote from the Stone and extents will depend on the configuration of the Gem that starts the cache. (There is only one cache on each node for a particular repository; session processes running on the server node attach to the Stone repository monitor's cache.)

*   The amount of memory required by a Gem session is dependent on how it is configured, as determined by the system requirements. To avoid out-of-memory conditions, Gems must be configured with an adequate temporary object cache.

Assuming the default of 10 MB for the Gem's temporary object cache, the first Gem session process on a node ordinarily requires about 30 MB of memory, of which 5 MB is for code that can be shared by other session processes. Each additional session process requires about 25 MB. The requirement is the same for Gems linked with an application. If you tune the cache size for Gems (page 61), add any increase to the amount given here.

In addition to the memory needs for session processes, you must also allocate memory for object server processes. For details, see "Planning Operating System Resources" on page 12.

For Gem session processes running on machines that are remote from the object server, there are additional memory needs on the server. For information about this, see "Estimating Memory Needs" on page 12.

Estimating Swap Space Needs

Swap (paging) space on machines remote from the Stones should follow the same general guidelines given for servers on page 13. In determining the additional swap space needed for GemStone session processes, use the memory requirements derived in the preceding section ("Estimating Memory Needs"), including space for the number of sessions you expect. The resulting figures will approximate the client's needs, and are in addition to the swap requirement for the object server and non-GemStone processes.

Estimating File Descriptor Needs

When a Gem session process starts, it attempts to raise the file descriptor limit from the default (soft) limit to the hard limit set by the operating system. GemBuilder applications (both linked and RPC) and page servers do the same. Gem session processes use file descriptors this way:

    7 for stdin, stdout, stderr, and internal communication
    2 for a connection between the Gem and an RPC application
    1 for each local extent within a file system
    2 for each local extent that is a raw partition
    1 for each extent on a remote node

GemBuilder applications that start a large number of RPC Gems need a correspondingly large number of file descriptors.

You can override the default behavior of raising the file descriptor limit to the hard limit by setting the GEMSTONE_MAX_FD environment variable to a positive integer. A lower limit may be desirable in some cases to reduce the amount of

virtual memory used by the process. A value of 0 disables attempts to raise the default limit.

The value of GEMSTONE_MAX_FD in the environment of a NetLDI (Network Long Distance Information) server is passed to its child processes.

Reviewing Kernel Tunable Parameters

The kernel parameter of primary relevance to GemStone session processes is the maximum number of semaphores per semaphore id (typically `semmsl` or a similar name, although it is not tunable under all operating systems). This parameter limits the number of sessions than can connect to the shared page cache, because each session uses one semaphore.

How you determine the existing limits depends on your operating system. If the information is not readily available, proceed anyway. A later step shows how to verify that the limits are adequate for the GemStone configuration you set up.

Set the Gem Configuration Options

Initially, you should focus on configuration options for the shared page cache. Changes to other Gem configuration options are discussed later in this chapter, beginning on page 61.

The Stone repository monitor always creates a shared page cache monitor and cache on its node, based on parameters in the Stone's configuration file.

On other nodes, when the first Gem session process logs in, the Stone starts a shared page cache monitor and cache on that node. Parameters in the Gem's configuration file determine the size of the cache and the number of processes that can attach to it (SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB and SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS, respectively). All subsequent sessions that log in from that remote node will be directed to use the same cache.

You can use the GemStone **shmem** utility (described on page 18) to determine whether the kernel configuration on a node remote from the Stone is adequate to support the cache. Use arguments from the configuration file that will be read by Gems running on that node.

To Set Ownership and Permissions for Session Processes

The primary consideration in setting file ownership permissions for client access is to make sure the Gem session process can read and write both the extents and the shared page cache. You must also take into account the following factors:

- Is the Gem session process linked with the application or RPC?

- Does the Gem session process runs on the server or on a node remote from the Stone?

- Does the server uses setuid bit and protection mode 600 for the extents (as recommended on page 31), or does it use the alternative of group write permission?

Extents

The extents may be protected as read-write only by their owner (protection 600) if you use the setuid (S) bit for repository executables as recommended on page 31. Otherwise, the extents must be writable by a group to which the GemStone users belong (protection 660).

Shared Page Cache

The shared memory and semaphore resources used by GemStone are created and owned by the user account under which the Stone repository monitor is running and have the same group membership. Access is read-write for the owner and group (the equivalent of file protection 660). You can inspect the cache ownership and permissions by using the **ipcs** command. (These permissions are not configurable by users.)

For a session to log in using a shared page cache, the UNIX user account of the linked application or Gem session process must either be the same as that of the Stone (such as the *gsadmin* account) or be one that belongs to the same group as the Stone. The same requirement applies to page server processes, which are discussed in Chapter 3, "Connecting Distributed Systems."

If the setuid bit is set on repository executables as recommended in Table 1.2 on page 31, the Stone process and shared page cache will belong to the owner you specify for those files (such as *gsadmin*).

To Set Access for Linked Applications

For linked applications *on the server*, we recommend you try using the setuid bit on the application's executable file. Have the file owned by *gsadmin* as it is defined on page 31. This works well for **topaz -l**. The installgs script offers to set the file ownership and permissions for you. To do it manually, do this while logged in as root:

```
# cd $GEMSTONE/bin
# chmod u+s topaz
# chown gsadmin topaz
```

You may prefer not to use the setuid bit with linked applications that do not distinguish between real and effective user IDs. GemStone's Topaz executable performs repository reads and writes as the *effective* user (the account that owns the executable's file), but performs other reads and writes as the *real* user (the one who invoked it). Linked applications that do not make this distinction, such as a third-party Smalltalk used with GemBuilder, are likely to perform *all* I/O as the effective user, or *gsadmin.* If this result is unsatisfactory, remove the S bit on that executable and add group write permission to the extents.

To Set Access for All Other Applications

All applications except linked applications on the server always use a GemStone NetLDI service to start a separate Gem session process or, in some cases, a page server. For these sessions, we recommend that the Gem session process and page server always be owned by (run as) the *gsadmin* account. That arrangement ensures that the Gem will be able to read and write both the extents and the shared page cache. The ownership and protection of the application executables themselves is not a factor.

To Set Access to Other Files

GemStone creates log files and other special files for session processes in several locations, which are described below. In a multi-user environment, the protection of these resources must be such that the appropriate file can be created or updated in response to actions by several users.

$HOME   GemStone ordinarily creates log files for spawned processes (such as RPC Gem session processes and page servers) in the home directory of the user or the NetLDI captive account. In situations where the home directory cannot be writable, the environment variable GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL can be used to specify an alternative location; see "To Set a Default NRS" on page 79.

/opt/gemstone   All users should have read/write/execute access to the directories /opt/gemstone/log and /opt/gemstone/locks on each host. (On some systems, these directories may be located in /usr/gemstone.)

By default, NetLDIs (Network Long Distance Information processes) create log files in the log directory.

GemStone processes that have a name for each instance (currently the Stone repository monitor, shared page cache monitor, and NetLDI) create lock files in the locks directory.

2.3 How to Access the Configuration at Run Time

GemStone provides several methods in class System that let you examine, and in certain cases modify, the session configuration parameters at run time.

To Access Current Settings at Run Time

Class methods in category Configuration File Access let you examine the configuration of your current Gem session process. There are three access methods for session processes:

`gemConfigurationReport`

> Returns a SymbolDictionary whose keys are the names of configuration file parameters, and whose values are the current settings of those parameters in the current session's Gem process.

`gemConfigurationAt:` *aName*

> Returns the value of the specified configuration parameter from the current session, or returns `nil` if that parameter is not applicable to a session process.

`configurationAt:` *aName*

> Returns the value of the specified configuration parameter, giving preference to the current session process if the parameter applies to a Gem.

To Change Settings at Run Time

The class method `System` class `>>configurationAt:` *aName* `put:` *aValue* in category Runtime Configuration Access lets you change the value of the internal run-time parameters in Table 2.1 if you have the appropriate privileges. The parameters that can be changed are those for which `configurationParameterDict:` *aName* returns a negative SmallInteger. All changeable parameters require that *aValue* be a SmallInteger.

CAUTION

Do not change configuration parameters unless there is a clear reason for doing so. Incorrect settings can have serious adverse effects on GemStone performance. Appendix A provides additional guidance about run-time changes to specific parameters.

Table 2.1   Session Configuration Parameters Changeable at Run Time

Configuration File Option	Internal Parameter
GEM_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT	#GemFreeFrameLimit
GEM_IO_LIMIT	#GemIOLimit
GEM_PGSVR_UPDATE_CACHE_ON_READ	#GemPgsvrUpdateCacheOnRead

The following example changes the value of the configuration option #GemFreeFrameLimit:

```
topaz 1> printit
System configurationAt:#GemFreeFrameLimit put: 4000
%
4000
```

For more information about the parameters that can be changed at run time, see Appendix A, "GemStone Configuration Options."

2.4 How to Tune Session Performance

There are a number of configuration options by which you can tune your Gem session processes. These options can help make better use of the Gem's internal caches, reduce swapping, and control disk activity limiting the I/O rate for certain sessions.

To Tune the Temporary Object Space

You should increase GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE (page 385) for applications that create a large number of temporary objects — for example, applications that make heavy use of the reduced conflict classes or sessions performing a bulk load.

It is important to provide sufficient temporary object space. If temporary object memory is exhausted, the Gem can encounter an out-of-memory condition and terminate. This is particularly likely to be a problem if there are long transactions that modify a large number of objects.

You will probably need to experiment somewhat before you determine the optimum size of the temporary object space for the application. The default of 10000 (10 MB) should be adequate for normal user sessions. For sessions that place a high demand on the temporary object cache, such as upgrade, you may wish to use 100000 (i.e., 100 MB).

The following Class methods in class System are available to help you keep track of the load on temporary object memory:

`_tempObjSpaceUsed`
> Returns the approximate number of bytes of temporary object memory being used to store objects.

`_tempObjSpaceMax`
> Returns the approximate maximum number of bytes of temporary object memory which is usable for storing objects.

`_tempObjSpacePercentUsed`
> Returns the approximate percentage of temporary object memory that is being used to store temporary objects. This is equivalent to the expression:
>
> ```
> (System _tempObjSpaceUsed * 100) // System
> _tempObjSpaceMax.
> ```
>
> It is possible for the result to be slightly greater than 100%; this indicates that temporary memory is almost completely full.

Any increase in GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE translates directly into increased memory usage per user.

To Tune the Private Page Cache

The configuration option GEM_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB sets the size (in KB) of the Gem's private page cache. The default value of this option is 1000; in most cases, this value is acceptable, and you do not need to do any further tuning.

You can use VSD to monitor the value of the statistic LocalCacheOverflowCount (page 244). It that value is non-zero, you can increase GEM_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB as needed. For details, see page 383.

To Reduce Excessive Swapping of Sleeping Sessions

Excessive swapping can be caused by the need to awaken (and swap in) sleeping sessions that are outside of a transaction. When the Stone runs out of space in the shared page cache, it takes this action (by sending a SignaledAbort message) to store the old commit records on which the sleeping sessions are based. Each such session must awaken long enough to update its view of the repository.

It may be possible to reduce this type of swapping by changing the server configuration. See the discussion and procedure on page 41.

2.5 How to Install a Custom Gem

The *GemBuilder for C* manual explains how to create a custom Gem session executable containing your own C functions to be called from Smalltalk. One way to make this custom Gem available to all users is to perform the following steps as system administrator:

Step 1. Copy the shell script `gemnetobject` from `$GEMSTONE/sys` to your working directory. This shell script is used to start Gem session processes under the UNIX shell. You will modify this script to start your custom Gem executable instead of the standard one.

Step 2. In your copy of `gemnetobject`, find the section labeled `User-definable symbols`. In that section, replace `gem` in the line

```
gemname="gem"
```

with the name of the new Gem executable. For example:

```
gemname="MyGem"
```

Step 3. Rename your modified copy of the shell script `gemnetobject` so that it has a distinct filename. For example:

```
% mv gemnetobject MyGemnetObject
```

Step 4. Copy the new shell script to `$GEMSTONE/sys`. Make sure that all GemStone users have read and execute (**r-x**) permission for the script. For example:

```
-r-xr-xr-x 1 root 912 Jul 24 20:22 MyGemnetObject
```

If necessary, change the permissions:

```
% chmod 555 MyGemnetObject
```

Step 5. Add an entry for the new shell script to the services database, `$GEMSTONE/bin/services.dat`. A NetLDI checks that file to translate the name of a service to a command it can execute. For example:

```
MyGemnetObject $GEMSTONE/sys/MyGemnetObject
```

Step 6. Copy the new Gem executable to the GemStone system directory. For example:

```
% cp MyGem $GEMSTONE/sys
```

Step 7. Make sure that all GemStone users have read and execute (**r-x**) permission for the new Gem executable.

The custom Gem executable is now available for shared use.

3 *Connecting Distributed Systems*

This chapter tells how to set up GemStone/S 64 Bit in a distributed environment:

- *Overview* (page 66) — An introduction to the GemStone processes and network objects that facilitate distributed GemStone systems.

- *How to Arrange Network Security* (page 73)— Three ways to provide access to GemStone processes on other nodes.

- *How to Use Network Resource Strings* (page 79) — How to specify where distributed GemStone resources are located.

- *How to Set Up a Remote Session* (page 82) — Step-by-step examples for setting up typical distributed client-server configurations. It also contains troubleshooting tips.

3.1 Overview

A properly configured network system is nearly transparent to GemStone users, but it requires additional steps by the system administrator. Users must be given access to all the workstations that will run their GemStone processes. Pointers to network services must be set up, and file and process specifications must include the node name in addition to the file name and path. Because processes are running on different nodes, the log files are spread throughout the network, and troubleshooting may become more complicated.

The nodes in your system can be any combination of GemStone-supported platforms, as long as they are connected by means of TCP/IP. Each remote GemStone connection consists of two TCP/IP connections to compensate for out-of-band problems in TCP/IP. (For remote Gems that are configured with GEM_PGSVR_UPDATE_CACHE_ON_READ set to true, only one TCP/IP connection is open.)

Although the Sun Network File System (NFS) can be used to share executables, libraries, and configuration files, they are not required and are never used to share repository files. Instead, GemStone extends the capabilities of TCP/IP by adding special network servers and page servers, which are described later in this section.

Figure 3.1 and Figure 3.2 show two typical distributed configurations in which an application on a remote node is logged in to a repository and Stone repository monitor running on a server node.

In Figure 3.1, an application communicates with a Gem session process on the server node by way of RPC calls. This configuration lets the Gem execute Smalltalk code in the repository without first bringing complex objects across the network. The Gem can access the shared page cache that was started by the Stone repository monitor. For instructions on setting up this configuration, see "To Run the Gem Session Process on the Stone's Node" on page 87.

In Figure 3.2, the application and the Gem are linked in a single process that runs on the remote node. This configuration avoids the overhead of RPC calls, but in some applications it may increase network traffic substantially if large objects must be brought across the network. The Stone repository monitor starts a shared page cache on the remote node when the first user from that node logs in to the repository. The Stone and the Gem session process each use a GemStone page server to access data pages residing on the other node. For instructions on setting up this configuration, see "To Run a Linked Application on a Remote Node" on page 84.

Figure 3.1   Gem Session Process on Server Node
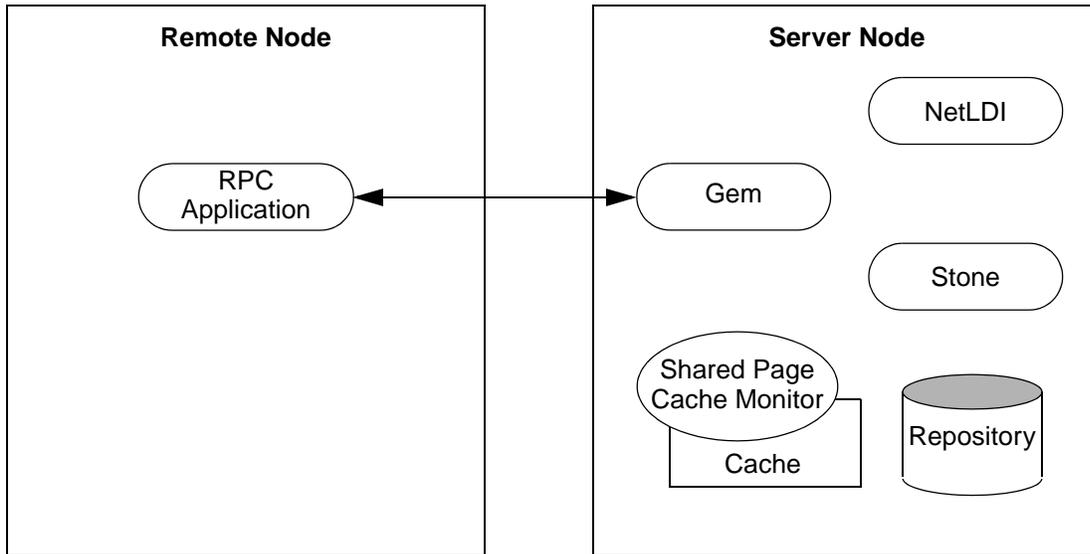
Figure 3.2   Gem Session Process on Remote Node
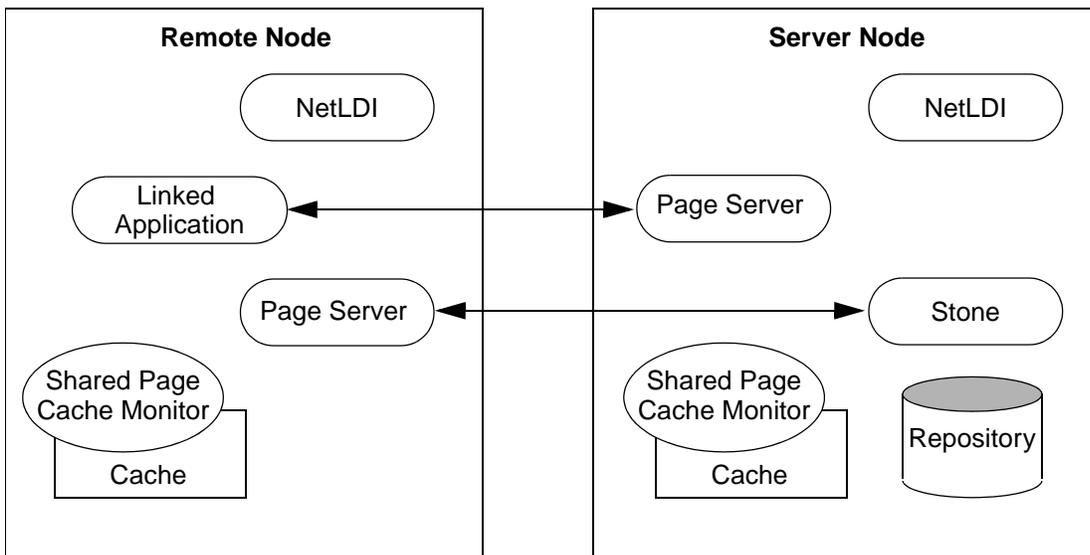
GemStone NetLDIs

The GemStone network server process is called NetLDI (Network Long Distance Information). The NetLDIs are the glue holding a distributed GemStone system together. Each NetLDI reports the location of GemStone services on its node to remote processes that must connect to those services. It also spawns other GemStone processes on request.

In a distributed system, each node where a Stone repository monitor, Gem session process, or linked application runs must have its own NetLDI. (That is, you do not need a NetLDI on nodes where only RPC applications are running.)

You start a NetLDI directly by invoking the **startnetldi** command (page 421). The NetLDI, in turn, starts Gem session processes and page servers on demand. (See the following section for more about page servers.) These child processes belong by default to the user account of the process requesting the service—sometimes that account is a user logging in to GemStone, other times it is the account that started the repository monitor.

Because most operating systems only let the root account start processes that will be owned by other accounts, a NetLDI ordinarily must run as root if it is to serve more than one user. This ownership can be accomplished by setting the owner and S bit for `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` or by starting the NetLDI while logged in as root. For information about the S bit, see "To Set File Permissions for the Server" on page 30. For the default installation, the file permissions and ownership for the NetLDI executable should look like this:

```
-r-sr-xr-x 1 root gsadmin 516096 Jul 29 22:01 netldid
```

To map a GemStone service name (such as a Stone name) to a network port number, GemStone checks for a lock file named *serviceName*`..LCK`, in the directory `/opt/gemstone/locks` or `/usr/gemstone/locks`. Every Stone, NetLDI, and shared page cache monitor creates one of these files when it starts. If there is no lock file and the service is a NetLDI, GemStone then checks for an entry in `/etc/services`, the TCP/IP network database. That file must contain an entry giving the port number for the NetLDI.

NetLDI Names

The default name of the NetLDI process is `gs64ldi`. During installation, this name is added to the `/etc/services` file and assigned a port number. You can change the name by using **startnetldi** *netLdiName*. The name may contain digits, but it must not be entirely numeric. If you use a different name, also do the following:

- Add the new name and a port number to /etc/services. If you have a distributed GemStone system, make the same entry on each node.

- Set **#netldi** to *netLdiName* in the GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL environment variable for each user. For example,

  ```
  $ GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL=#netldi:netLdiName
  $ export GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL
  ```

For more information about GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL, see "To Set a Default NRS" on page 79.

GemStone Page Servers

Remote GemStone repository I/O is carried out by page server processes. The name of the executable file is pgsvrmain. For each process that connects to a repository extent across the network (that is, for the repository monitor and each session process), the NetLDI service spawns a pgsvrmain on the node where the extent resides. GemStone never uses NFS (network file system) for repository access.

The Stone repository monitor uses a page server to perform asynchronous I/O to the repository. This page server is created at start up and is present even if all GemStone sessions are local.

You can also start additional AIO page servers as well as page servers dedicated to a single task—adding free frames to the free frame list. For details and instructions, see "Adding Page Servers" on page 43.

If you have many different extents on different spindles, starting more page servers can improve performance.

GemStone Network Objects

GemStone uses the concept of *network objects* to encompass the services that a NetLDI can provide to a client. In addition to the page server, other network objects include the following services requested by the Stone at startup: the shared page cache monitor, SymbolGem, page manager, and one or more garbage collection (GcGem) sessions.

The network object most visible to users is the Gem session process requested by an RPC application. This object can be gemnetobject or the name of a custom Gem. The request can be sent to the NetLDI on the same node to start a local session process, or (by using a network resource string) the request can be sent to a NetLDI on another node to start a process there.

The NetLDI first tries to map the requested object to the path of an executable by looking for an entry in `$GEMSTONE/bin/services.dat`. There is an entry for the standard Gem session process:

```
gemnetobject              $GEMSTONE/sys/gemnetobject
```

For example, when you enter "gemnetobject" as a session login parameter (such as for GemNetId in Topaz), the NetLDI maps the request to the script `$GEMSTONE/sys/gemnetobject`. Similarly, an object name can be entered while setting up a GemBuilder session (as Name of Gem Service) or other application. Application programmers provide the name as a parameter to `GciSetNet()`.

If your application uses a custom Gem executable, you can edit `services.dat` to include the appropriate mapping. For the procedure, see "How to Install a Custom Gem" on page 62.

If the NetLDI does not find the requested object in `services.dat`, it searches for an executable with that name in the user's $HOME directory. If you have a private Gem executable, place the executable in $HOME and then enter its name in place of *gemnetobject* during a GemStone login. Because of the search order, the private name must not be the same as that of an object in `services.dat`. The name must be the name of a file in $HOME, not a pathname.

Shared Page Cache in Distributed Systems

When the remote session logs in to the repository, the Stone repository monitor uses a NetLDI and page server (`pgsvrmain`) on the remote node to start a monitor process, and that monitor uses the NetLDI to create a local shared page cache. When the remote Gem wants to access a page in the repository, it first checks the shared page cache on the remote node. If the page is not found, the Gem uses a `pgsvrmain` on the server node, checking in the shared cache on that node and then, if necessary, reading the page from the disk. See Figure 3.3.

Figure 3.3   Shared Page Cache with Remote Gem
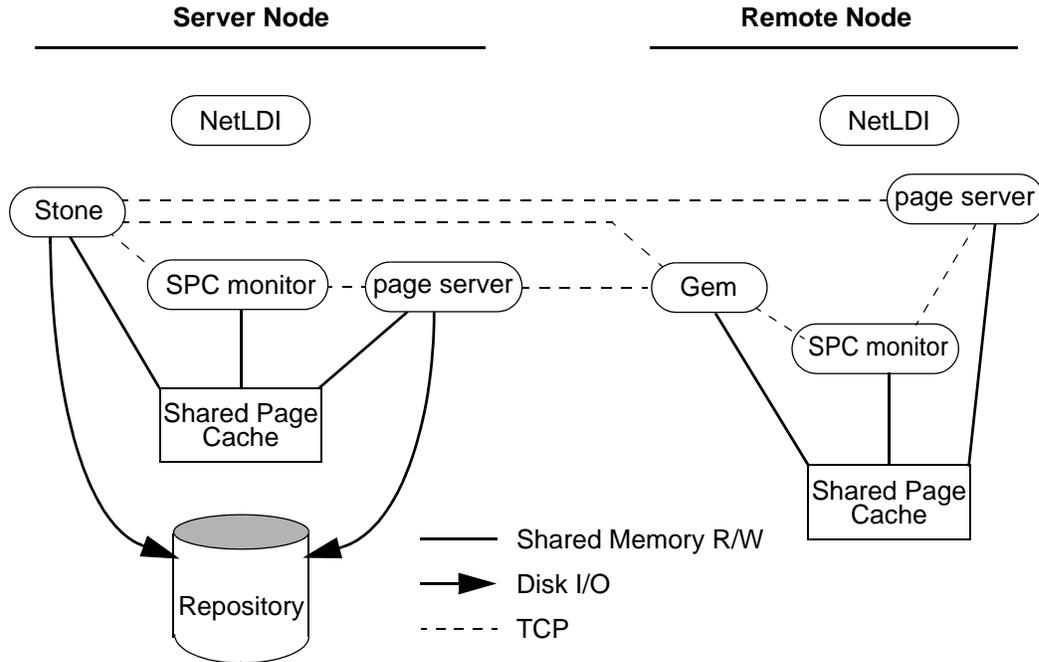
Disrupted Communications

Several incidents can disrupt communications between the GemStone server and remote nodes in a distributed configuration. Examples include node crashes and loss of the communications channel itself.

GemStone ordinarily depends on the network protocol *keepalive* option to detect that a remote process no longer exists because of an unexpected event. The keepalive interval is set globally by the operating system, typically at two hours. When that interval expires, the GemStone process tries to obtain a response from its partner. The parameters governing these attempts also are set by the operating system, with up to 10 attempts in 15 minutes being typical. If no response is received, the local GemStone process acts as if its partner was terminated abnormally.

Your operating system documentation contains information about the TCP keepalive option.

<center>*NOTE*</center>
Changes to this option on a given node affect all network communications on that node.

Solaris (Sun):

```
/usr/sbin/ndd -set /dev/tcp tcp_keepalive_interval value
```

HP-UX:

```
/usr/contrib/bin/nettune -s tcp_keepstart value
```

AIX:

```
/etc/no -o tcp_keepidle=value
```

Linux:

```
/sbin/sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_time=value
```

3.2 How to Arrange Network Security

This section describes the levels to which the system administrator can set the GemStone authentication requirement.

Default

In the default NetLDI mode, authentication is required each time a NetLDI attempts to start certain processes for a client, even if that process is to run on the node where the user is logged in. These situations always require authentication:

- Starting an RPC Gem session process, even on the same node.

- Creating or restoring a GemStone backup using a device on a node remote from the Gem performing the operation.

- Using **copydbf** between nodes.

Once a Stone or Gem is running, the NetLDI treats it as a trusted client and starts the page servers needed by a remote login without authentication. Simple network information requests, such as a request to look up a port number, also do not require authentication.

Secure Mode

startnetldi -**s** starts the NetLDI in *secure mode*. All accesses are authenticated, including simple requests to look up a server name. This mode affects the **waitstone** command and such user actions as connecting a session process to a remote Stone (a NetLDI is asked to look up the Stone's address).

> *NOTE*
> *Secure mode requires authentication before a Gem or Stone can start a*
> *page server to access an extent or shared page cache on another node.*
> *Under this mode, the account that starts the Stone process may need an*
> *entry in the account's .netrc file for each node in the GemStone system,*
> *and GemStone user accounts may need a .netrc entry for each node on*
> *which the extents are located.*

Captive Account Mode

startnetldi -**a***name* starts the NetLDI in *captive account mode,* which provides additional security. All child processes created by the NetLDI will belong to the single, designated account *name.* This mode requires that the NetLDI run either as root or as *name.* The effect is much like setting the S bits on executables, but it only affects ownership of processes started by the NetLDI, not linked applications

invoked directly by the user. Because this mode by itself does not change the authentication requirement, on most systems the NetLDI must either run as root so that it can authenticate other users or run in guest mode, which suspends authentication. For more information, see "Alternative: Guest Mode With a Captive Account" on page 78.

The captive account can be an ordinary user account or one created for that purpose, such as a GemStone administrative account. Log files by default will be in the captive account's home directory. Although captive accounts provide access to the repository, they do not affect network access—if authentication is required, it is based on the identity of the real user who requests the service.

Guest Mode

startnetldi –**g** starts the NetLDI in *guest mode*. No accesses are authenticated. When it is used by itself, guest mode lets the user who started the NetLDI also start other GemStone processes without typing passwords or creating `.netrc` files. Because guest mode is not permitted if the NetLDI will run as root, guest mode usually is combined with captive account mode. Table 3.1 shows how guest mode and captive account mode affect NetLDI operation.

Table 3.1   NetLDI Guest Mode and Captive Account Mode

NetLDI Options	Passwords Required	Owner of Spawned Processes	Owner of NetLDI Process	Which Accounts Can Start Processes
(none)	Yes, for RPC Gem or copydbf between nodes	Client's account	Ordinary user	Owner of NetLDI
			Root	Any user
-a*name*	Yes, for RPC Gem or copydbf between nodes	Account *name* (must start the NetLDI)	Ordinary user (*name*)	Owner of NetLDI
			Root	Any user
-**g**	No	Client's account	Ordinary user	Owner of NetLDI
			Root—not allowed	
-a*name* -**g**	No	Account *name* (must start the NetLDI)	Ordinary user (*name)*	Any user
			Root—not allowed	

For a complete list of the **startnetldi** command-line options, see page 421.

The following topics describe ways of setting up authentication to serve multiple users:

• Password authentication (the default) with the NetLDI running as root (page 76)

• Guest mode combined with a captive account (page 78)

Examples later in this chapter include procedures for specific configurations (see "Configuration Examples" on page 83).

Default: Password Authentication

The GemStone default is to use a system login name and password to authenticate network access. There are several ways for the user to provide this information:

- Create a .netrc file containing the name of the other node, the login name, and the password. (See "Using a .netrc File" on page 76.)

- Enter the login name and password through the application's user interface, such as the HostUserName and HostPassword parameters in Topaz. (See "Using the Application Interface" on page 77.)

- Use the NRS authorization modifier **#auth:***loginName***@***password* as part of a process name or file name. (See "Using an NRS #auth modifier" on page 77.)

If the user does not provide the login name and password explicitly, the application or GemStone executable tries to read them from a .netrc file in the user's home directory.

NOTE
Authentication is always done using the "real" user id, not the effective
user id as set by the S bit on GemStone executables.

The NetLDI providing the service verifies the password against the entry in the password file (or Network Information Service). Under operating systems that support shadow password files, the NetLDI first checks the shadow file; if it finds an entry, it uses that entry in preference to the entry in /etc/passwd.

For the default installation, the file permissions and ownership for the NetLDI executable should look like this:

```
-r-sr-xr-x 1 root gsadmin 516096 Jul 29 22:01 netldi
```

Using a .netrc File

Create a .netrc file in the home directory of each user who will be doing any of the following:

- Running an RPC Gem session process.

- Creating or restoring a GemStone backup using a device on a node remote from the Gem performing the operation.

- Running **copydbf** between nodes.

If the user has a home directory on more than one node, the easiest way is to make a file containing an entry for each node and install a copy in all of the home

directories. The file must contain the login information for each node where that user will need an RPC Gem or a page server.

GemStone supports the basic `.netrc` options of `node`, `login`, and `password` (which must appear in that order). For each node, the `.netrc` file should contain one line like the following:

```
machine nodeName login systemLogin password userPassword
```

> *NOTE*
> *The node name in the* `.netrc` *file must exactly match the name as it is listed in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES or as provided to an application as a login parameter. In particular, any domain qualification must be the same.*

Because the `.netrc` contains hard-coded passwords, it should be protected in such a way as to be readable only by its owner.

Using the Application Interface

Your application's login interface may let you specify a node login name and password for the node on which you will be running an RPC Gem session process. For example, Topaz lets you set these as variables:

```
topaz> set hostusername yourLogin
topaz> set hostpassword yourPassword
```

GemBuilder for Smalltalk provides similar fields in its login dialog: **Host username** and **Host password**.

Using an NRS #auth modifier

A third way to specify the login name and password is to provide that information in NRS syntax as part of the name of a process that NetLDI is to start. Ordinarily, an application program provides the name and password using information obtained from the user. For example, if you set the Topaz login parameters *HostUserName* and *HostPassword*, the application puts them in an NRS like the following:

```
'!tcp@Server#auth:HostUserName@HostPassword!gemnetobject'
```

The GemStone C interface provides similar capability to application programmers. For further information, refer to calls described in the *GemBuilder for C* manual.

Although it is less convenient for ordinary use, administrators and programmers may find it helpful in testing to enter the authorization modifier directly using the Topaz *GemNetId* parameter. For example:

```
topaz> set gemnetid !@Server#auth:name@password!gemnetobject
```

Alternative: Guest Mode With a Captive Account

The NetLDI guest mode can best be combined with captive account mode (page 73) in which a single, designated account owns all processes spawned by the NetLDI. The result serves multiple users with the convenience of guest mode and with improved security because the child processes no longer belong to accounts of individual users who request services.

The principal advantage of this combination is that the NetLDI can spawn processes on behalf of multiple users without being run as root. To make this capability possible, the captive account must own the `netldi` process. Change the file permissions and ownership for the NetLDI executable to remove the S bit:

```
-r-xr-xr-x 1 gsadmin gsadmin 516096 Jul 29 22:01 netldi
```

A disadvantage of the captive account for some applications is that the Gem session process will perform *all* I/O as that account, not as the account running the application — all file-ins, file-outs, and `System class >> performOnServer:`.

The captive account mode differs from the setuid method (page 31) in that captive account mode affects *all* services started by the NetLDI, including any ad hoc processes, which are processes started from the user's home directory. (The NetLDI looks in the user's home directory if it cannot find a service listed in `$GEMSTONE/bin/services.dat`.) If you prefer, you can prohibit such ad hoc services by specifying the -**n** option when starting the NetLDI.

If the combination of guest and captive account modes fits your needs, follow this configuration procedure:

Step 1. Create a UNIX account to own the GemStone distribution tree and serve as the captive account. We will refer to this account as *gsadmin*.

Step 2. Make *gsadmin* the owner of the tree, and set the setuid bit for any linked GemStone executables that run on the server node. Make the repository extents accessible only by *gsadmin* (mode 600). For instructions, see "To Set File Permissions for the Server" on page 30.

Step 3. Make sure *gsadmin* has execute permission for
`$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid.` The setgid bit should NOT be set on the
`netldid` executable. For instance:

```
-r-xr-xr-x  1 gsadmin 516096 Jul 29 22:01 netldid
```

Step 4. Log in as the captive account (such as *gsadmin*), then start the NetLDI in
guest mode and captive account mode, and perhaps disallow ad hoc processes
(the **-n** switch). For instance:

```
% startnetldi -g -a gsadmin -n
```

For details about the startnetldi command and its options, see page 421.

3.3 How to Use Network Resource Strings

Once you have chosen the remote and server nodes, network resource strings
(NRS) allow you to specify the location of each part of the GemStone system. Use
an NRS on a network system where you would use a process or file name on a
single-node system. For example, suppose you want to know whether a Stone is
running. If the Stone is on the local node, use this command:

```
% waitstone gemStoneName -1
```

If the Stone is on a remote node, use a command like this instead:

```
$ waitstone !@oboe!gemStoneName -1
```

where *oboe* is the Stone's node. You can also use an Internet address in "dot" form,
such as `120.0.0.4`, to identify the remote node. Note that each "!" must be
preceded by a backslash (\) when your command will be processed by the C shell.

Appendix B, "GemStone Utility Commands," indicates which options of each
UNIX-level GemStone command can be specified as an NRS. Besides location, an
NRS can describe the network resource type so that GemStone can more accurately
interpret the command line. Sometimes an NRS can also include your
authorization to use that resource. For more information, see Appendix C,
"Network Resource String Syntax."

To Set a Default NRS

You can set a default NRS header (the part between "! ... !") by setting the
environment variable GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL. This variable determines which
modifiers GemStone will use by default in each NRS it processes on your behalf.

For instance, you can cause all Gem session process logs to be created with a specific name in a specific directory.

- If you set GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL before starting a NetLDI, which is a system-wide service, that setting is passed to all its children and becomes the default for all users of that service.

- If you set GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL before starting a Stone, an application, or a utility (such as **copydbf**), that setting applies only to your own processes and does not affect other users.

Because these settings are defaults, they take effect only if an explicit setting is not provided for the same modifier in a specific request.

Use the **#dir** modifier to set the current (working) directory for NetLDI child processes, such as gemnetobject. Without this setting, the default is the user's home directory. If the directory specified does not exist or is not writable at run time, an error is generated. For example:

```
$ GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL=#dir:/user2/apps/logs
$ export GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL
```

For further information about the modifiers and templates available, see Appendix C, "Network Resource String Syntax."

To Use copydbf Between Nodes

Figure 3.4 shows an application of **copydbf** in which the source and destination are on remote nodes (Node1 and Node3, respectively). NetLDIs and network access are required to spawn page servers on the two remote nodes.

NOTE
If you want to start a Gem on a remote machine, you need to have a NetLDI on both machines.

Figure 3.4   Connections for copydbf

* started by NetLDI
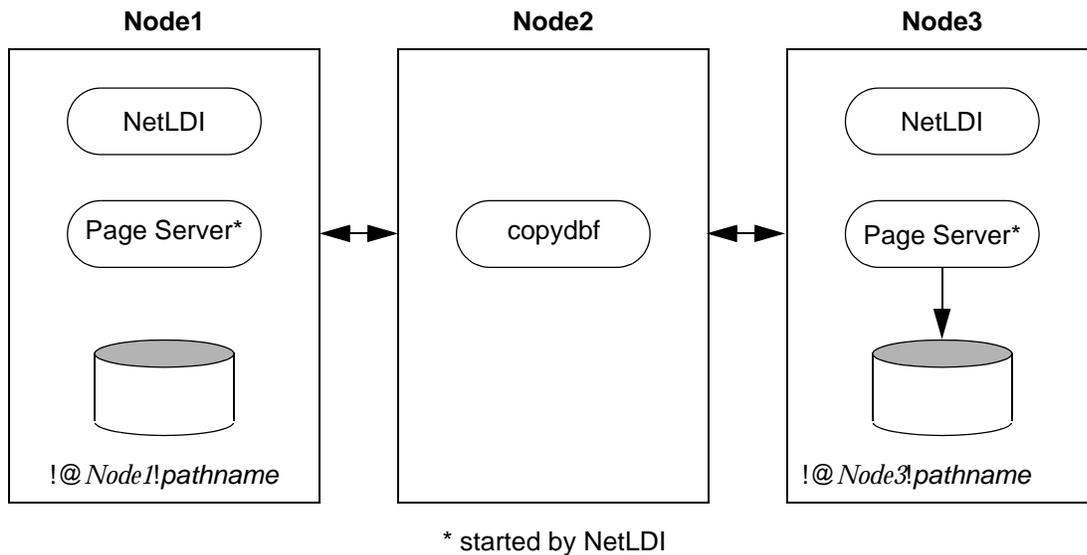
Step 1. Unless the NetLDIs are running in guest mode, you will need to provide authorization for NetLDI services. Create a `.netrc` file in your home directory on Node2 containing a line like the following for each of the other nodes:

```
machine Node1 login userName password secret1
machine Node3 login userName password secret3
```

Step 2. If they are not already present, start NetLDIs on Node1 and Node3.

Step 3. When you issue the **copydbf** command, include the node names in NRS syntax and specify the full path. For example:

```
Node2% copydbf !@Node1!pathname !@Node3!pathname
```

3.4 How to Set Up a Remote Session

Configuring a Gem session process on a remote node is much the same as configuring a session process on the server, which is described in Chapter 2, "Configuring Gem Session Processes." Keep the following points in mind:

• A remote node (on which a Gem is running) must have its kernel configured for shared memory similarly to how it is configured on the primary server node.

• Only nodes running a Stone need a GemStone key file, not nodes running remote sessions.

• If your site doesn't run NIS, add each node in the GemStone network to `/etc/hosts`.

• If your site doesn't run NIS, add the NetLDI entry to `/etc/services` on each node. Be sure to specify the same name and network port number each time.

• It's best if each node has its own `/opt/gemstone/log` and `/opt/gemstone/locks` (or `/usr/gemstone/log` and `/usr/gemstone/locks`) directories. If these directories are on an NFS-mounted partition, make sure that two nodes are not using the same directories. Each Stone and NetLDI needs a unique lock file. Shared log files may make it impossible to diagnose problems.

• Unless you run the NetLDIs in guest mode with a captive account, *all* users ordinarily must have an account on the primary server node and on any other node on which the repository extents reside. It's easier if the account name is the same on each node.

• Unless you run the NetLDIs in guest mode with a captive account, *the user who starts the Stone repository monitor* ordinarily needs an account on *all* nodes where a Gem session process will run or where an extent will reside.

You can either repeat the installation from the GemStone distribution media, as described in the next topic, or mount the directory on the server node that contains $GEMSTONE (page 83). Although GemStone never uses NFS to access the repository files, it can use NFS to access other files.

To Duplicate the GemStone Installation

If you repeat the installation on the remote node, we recommend that you also run `$GEMSTONE/install/installgs`. In particular, you should make the same selections regarding the ownership and group for the GemStone files as you did

on the primary server node. You can save disk space later by deleting the two copies of the initial repository (`$GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf` and `$GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf`) and the complete upgrade directory (`$GEMSTONE/upgrade`).

To Share a GemStone Directory

The following example prepares to run an application and Gem session process on a remote node using a shared software directory on the server. The GEMSTONE environment variable points to the shared installation directory, which is on the node *Server* and is NFS-mounted as /*Server*/users/gs64stone.

Step 1. Set the GEMSTONE environment variable to point to the NFS-mounted installation directory, and then invoke `gemsetup`:

(Bourne or Korn shell)
```
$ GEMSTONE=/Server/users/gs64stone
$ export GEMSTONE
$ . $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.sh
```

(C shell)
```
Remote% setenv GEMSTONE /Server/users/gs64stone
Remote% source $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.csh
```

Step 2. If they do not already exist, create the GemStone `log` and `locks` directories on the local node. (NetLDIs use this log directory.) You may need to have a system administrator do this for you as root.

```
# cd /opt
# mkdir gemstone gemstone/log gemstone/locks
# chmod 777 gemstone gemstone/log gemstone/locks
```

Configuration Examples

GemStone supports several configurations in which the application communicates with the Gem session process by using remote procedure calls (RPCs). Although the calls to network routines inevitably are time-consuming, they are essential when the application runs on a different node from the Gem, and they are desirable during code development because they isolate the application and Gem address spaces.

Use of RPC configurations for production repositories should be based on careful analysis of system loads and network traffic to select the most efficient configuration for a particular application. The RPC configuration may be desirable

when the application accesses large or complex objects that would saturate the network if they were brought across it on a frequent basis.

This section presents examples that illustrate the following distributed applications:

- A linked application connected to a Stone on another node (page 84).

- An RPC application with both the session process and the Stone on the server node (page 87).

- An RPC application with the session process on the application's node (page 89).

- An RPC application in which all three are on different nodes (page 92).

Two other examples show how to set up an extent on a node that is remote from the Stone, and how to use **copydbf** between nodes.

To Run a Linked Application on a Remote Node

Figure 3.5 shows how a linked application on a remote node communicates with a Stone and repository on the primary server node. This configuration typically is the best choice when you must offload some processes from a server node, especially when the application accesses relatively small objects or small groups of large objects.

Figure 3.5   Connecting a Linked Application to a Remote Server

Remote Node   **Primary Server Node**
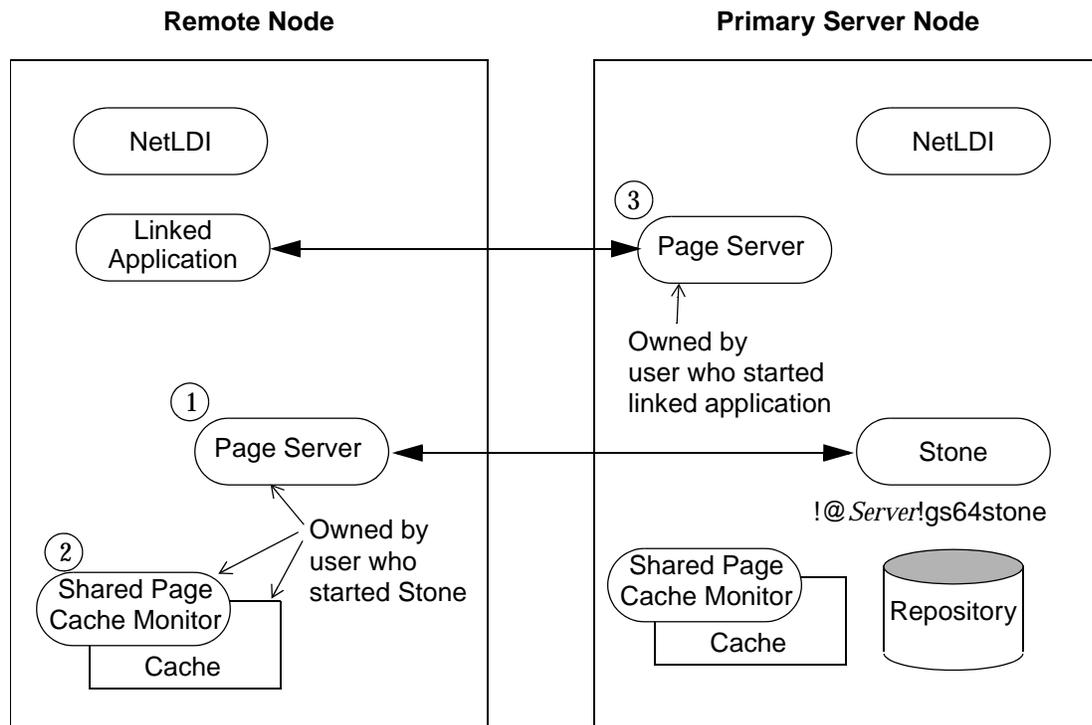
Two NetLDIs and two page servers ordinarily are required. NetLDIs start the page servers on request of the Stone and the application. Numbers show the order in which these processes are started:

- One page server (1) lets the Stone start a shared page cache and monitor (2) on the remote node. The page server and monitor processes will be owned by the user who started the Stone (or by the captive account), so the owner must have an account on the remote node. The cache itself will have the same owner and group as the Stone. The linked application must have permission to access the cache, either through group membership or through an S bit on the application executable.

- The other page server (3) lets the Gem session process (the linked application) access the repository on the primary server. There will be one such page server

process on the primary server node for each session logged in from a remote node; its owner (which may be a captive account) must have an account on the primary server. The page server process must have read-write permission for the repository, either through group membership or through an S bit on the `pgsvrmain` executable.

Because the shared page cache is readable and writable only by its owner and members of the same group (protection 660), the user running the application may need to belong to that group. See "To Set Ownership and Permissions for Session Processes" on page 56.

The following steps set up a linked application on the remote node. They use software in an NFS-mounted installation on the primary server node; that directory is already mounted on the remote node as /*Server*/**gs64stone.**

Step 1. Set the GEMSTONE environment variable to point to the installation directory, and then invoke gemsetup:

(Bourne or Korn shell)
```
$ GEMSTONE=/Server/gs64stone
$ export GEMSTONE
$ . $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.sh
```

(C shell)
```
Remote% setenv GEMSTONE /Server/gs64stone
Remote% source $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.csh
```

Step 2. Verify that a Stone and NetLDI are running on the primary server node. One way to do this verification is to use the **gslist** utility. For example:

```
Remote% gslist -m serverName
```

(The -**m** option tells **gslist** to list only processes that are running on the specified node. For more about **gslist**, see page 415.)

Step 3. Start a NetLDI on the remote node.

❒ To start the NetLDI for password authentication, make sure `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` is owned by root and has the S bit set. Issue this command (on some operating systems, you may have to issue it as root):

```
Remote% startnetldi
```

❐ To start the NetLDI in guest mode (authentication is not required), make sure `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` does NOT have the S bit set. Log in as the captive account *name*, then issue this command:

```
Remote% startnetldi -g -aname
```

Step 4. Start the linked application (for instance, Topaz) on the remote node, then set the *GemStone* login parameter to include the name of the primary server node in network resource syntax. For instance, to log in to Topaz as DataCurator:

```
Remote% topaz -l
topaz> set gemstone !@Server!gs64stone
topaz> set username DataCurator
topaz> login
GemStone Password?
successful login
topaz 1>
```

To Run the Gem Session Process on the Stone's Node

If the Gem session process is going to run on the server node (as shown in Figure 3.6), an RPC application uses a NetLDI on that node to start a Gem session process. Unless the NetLDI is running in guest mode with a captive account, the application user must provide authentication to the NetLDI. You should also specify the Gem network object (`gemnetobject`) that matches your UNIX shell on the server. For more information about network objects and how to invoke them, see "GemStone Network Objects" on page 69.

The following procedure assumes that you are already set up to run GemStone applications, as described in Chapter 2. In particular, you must have defined the GEMSTONE environment variable and invoked `$GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup` or its equivalent.

Figure 3.6   Starting a Session Process on the Server Node

* started by NetLDI
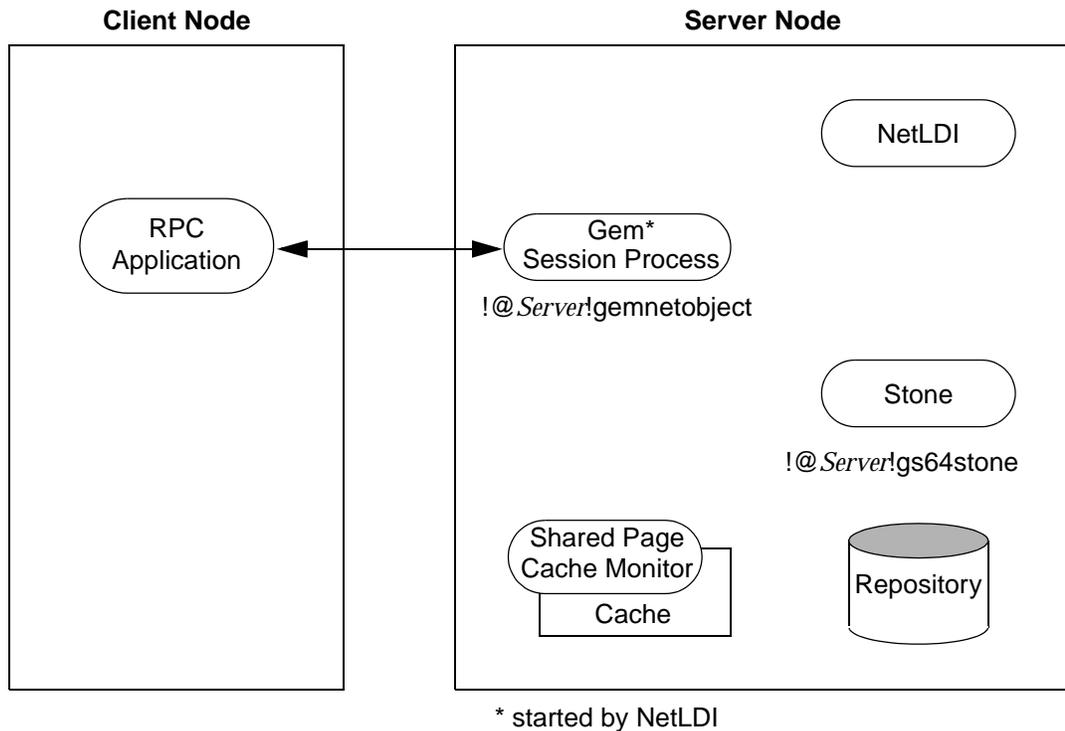
Step 1. Make sure that the NetLDI and Stone are running on the server. One way to do this is to use the **gslist** command. For example:

    Client% **gslist** -**m** *serverName*

Step 2. Unless the NetLDI is running in guest mode, decide how you will provide authentication.

❐ You can create a .netrc file in your home directory on the client node containing a line like the following, where the password is your password on the server:

    machine *Server* login *yourLogin* password *yourPassword*

❐   Alternatively, you can set the application login parameters, such as
     HostUserName and HostPassword, after you start the application. For
     example:

```
topaz> set hostusername yourLogin
topaz> set hostpassword yourPassword
```

Step 3. Log in to the application node and start the RPC version of your
     application (for instance, Topaz), then set *UserName*. For example:

```
Client% topaz
topaz> set username DataCurator
```

Step 4. Set GemNetId to `gemnetobject`. Because the session process is to run on
     the server, be sure to include the node name in the GemNetId NRS. (It's not
     necessary to set the GemStone login parameter when the Stone repository
     monitor runs on the same node as the Gem.) For example:

```
topaz> set gemnetid !@Server!gemnetobject
```

Step 5. Log in to the repository:

```
topaz> login
GemStone Password?
successful login
topaz 1>
```

At this point, you are logged in to a Gem session process on the server node. That
session process acts as a server to Topaz RPC and as a client to the Stone.

To Run the Gem and Stone on Different Nodes

The configuration shown in Figure 3.7 is unusual in that the RPC application and
its session process are running on the same node. (While this configuration might
be desirable during application development, a linked application, if it is available,
probably would give better performance.)

The NetLDIs and page servers function similarly to those described for the linked
application (see "To Run a Linked Application on a Remote Node" on page 84). In
Figure 3.7, however, the NetLDI also starts the RPC Gem session process at the
request of the application.

Figure 3.7   Starting the Session Process on a Remote Node
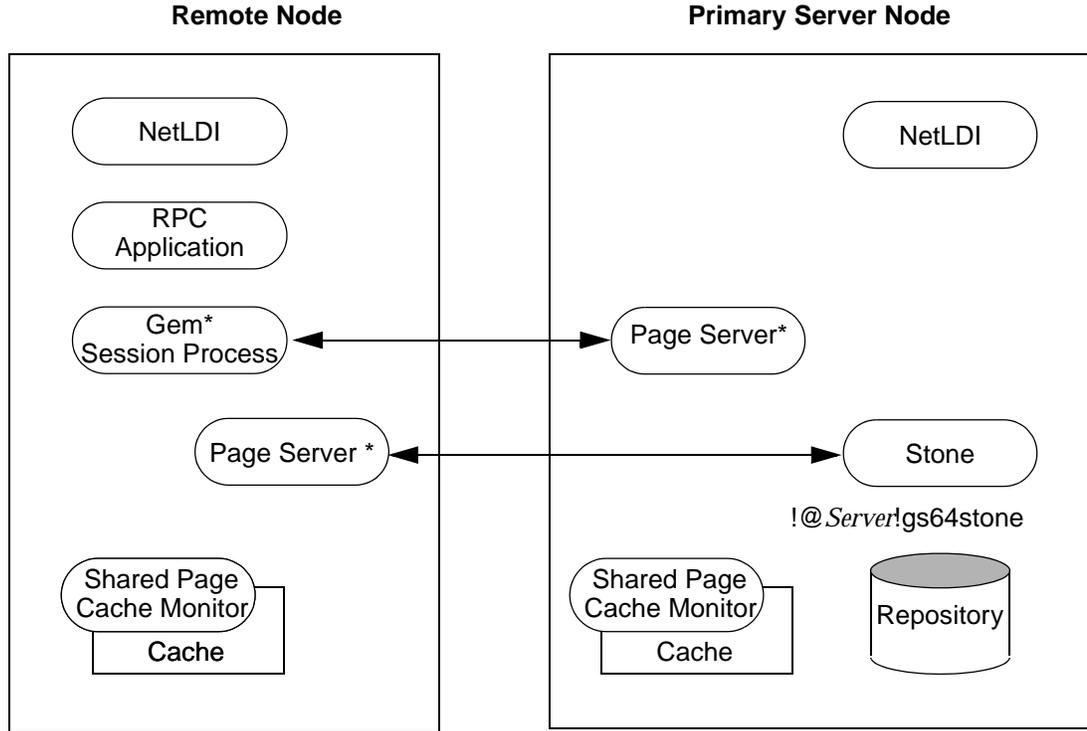
Step 1. Unless the NetLDIs are running in guest mode, decide how you will
        provide access so that application can start a Gem session process on the
        remote node.

❒   You can create a `.netrc` file in the your home directory on the remote node
    containing a line like the following, where *userPassword* is your operating
    system password on the server:

    `machine` *remoteNode* `login` *userName* `password` *userPassword*

❑ Alternatively, you can set the application login parameters, such as HostUserName and HostPassword, after you start the application. For example:

```
topaz> set hostusername yourLogin
topaz> set hostpassword yourPassword
```

Step 2. Log in to the remote node and start a NetLDI.

❑ To start the NetLDI for password authentication, make sure that `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` is owned by root and has the S bit set. Issue this command (on some operating systems, you may have to issue it as root):

```
Remote% startnetldi
```

❑ To start the NetLDI in guest mode (authentication is not required), make sure `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` does NOT have the S bit set. Log in as the captive account *name*, then issue this command:

```
Remote% startnetldi -g -aname
```

Step 3. Start the RPC version of your application (for instance, Topaz):

```
Remote% topaz
```

Step 4. Set GemNetId to `gemnetobject`. This network object identifies scripts that start a session process. For example:

```
topaz> set gemnetid gemnetobject
```

Step 5. Set the GemStone name, using NRS syntax to specify its location on the primary server node. Then set the UserName and log in. For example:

```
topaz> set gemstone !@Server!gs64stone
topaz> set username DataCurator
topaz> login
GemStone Password?
successful login
topaz 1>
```

To Run the Application, Gem, and Stone on Three Nodes

The RPC application, session process, and Stone can run on three separate nodes, as shown in Figure 3.8. The application runs on its node and connects to a Gem session process on the Gem's node. That session process communicates with the repository on the primary server node by way of a page server.

Again we see that a NetLDI must be running on each node where part of GemStone executes (but not necessarily on the application node, which runs only the RPC application).

Figure 3.8   Connecting an RPC Application, Three Nodes
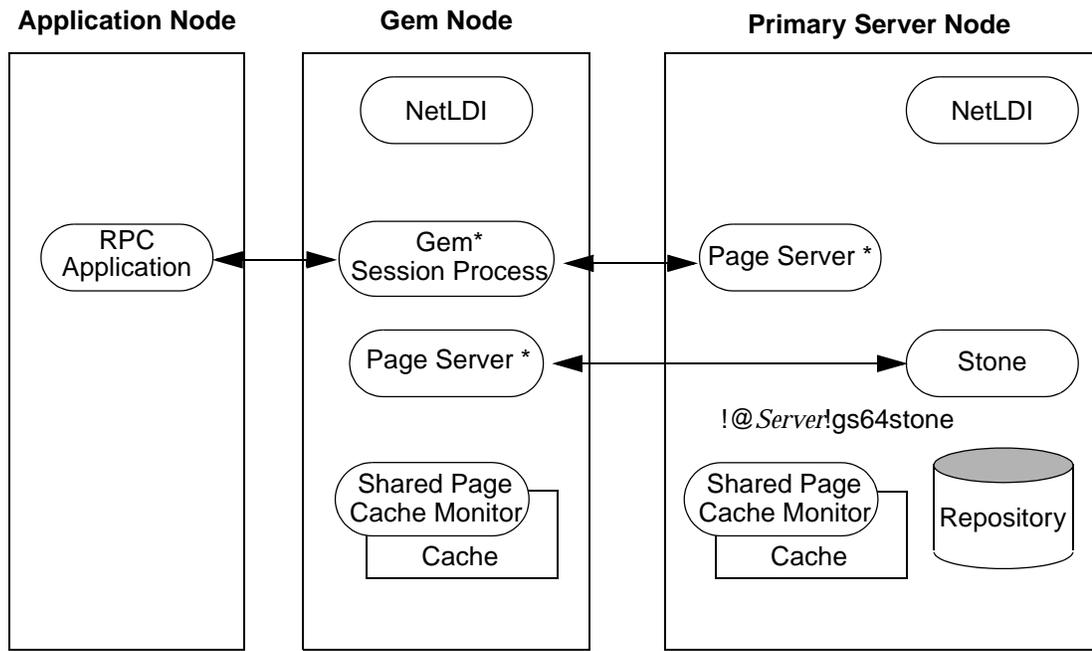
* started by NetLDI

The network access problem is similar to that in other RPC configurations: unless the NetLDI on the Gem node is running in guest mode, you must provide authentication to start the Gem session process.

Step 1. Unless the NetLDI on the Gem node is running in guest mode, decide how you will provide authorization for network services on that node.

❐ You can create a `.netrc` file in the your home directory on the application node containing a line like the following, where the password is your password on the Gem's node.

```
machine Gem login userLogin password secret2
```

❐ You can set the application login parameters, such as HostUserName and HostPassword, after you start the application. For example:

```
topaz> set hostusername yourLogin
topaz> set hostpassword yourPassword
```

Step 2. Log in to the Gem's node and start the NetLDI.

❐ To start the NetLDI for password authentication, make sure that `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` is owned by root and has the S bit set. Issue this command (on some operating systems, you may have to issue it as root):

```
Remote% startnetldi
```

❐ To start the NetLDI in guest mode (authentication is not required), make sure `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` does NOT have the S bit set. Log in as the captive account *name*, then issue this command:

```
Remote% startnetldi -g -aname
```

Step 3. Log in to the application node. Start the RPC version of your application (for instance, Topaz):

```
Application% topaz
```

Step 4. Set GemNetId to `gemnetobject`, and include the location, *gemNode,* in the NRS. For example:

```
topaz> set gemnetid !@gemNode!gemnetobject
```

Step 5. Use NRS syntax to specify the location and name of the repository. Then set the username and log in. In Topaz, for example, set GemStone and UserName:

```
topaz> set gemstone !@Server!gs64stone
topaz> set username DataCurator
topaz> login
GemStone Password?
successful login
topaz 1>
```

At this point, your Topaz application on the application node has logged you in to a Gem session process on the Gem's node, and the session process has logged in to the repository on the server.

Troubleshooting Remote Logins

Logging in to GemStone from a remote node requires proper system configuration of the remote node and frequently requires permission for network access from the primary server to the remote node as well as from the remote node to the primary server.

❒ The UNIX kernel on the remote node should meet shared memory and semaphore requirements similar to those for the server, although smaller sizes may be sufficient.

❒ Make sure that NetLDIs are running on all nodes that require them (see the figure for your configuration). Also make sure that the NetLDIs have the same port number in `/etc/services`. All nodes must be listed in `/etc/hosts`.

❒ If an RPC application is being started (that is, one with a separate Gem session process), make sure the user who starts the application has an entry for the Gem's node in a `.netrc` file in $HOME, or that other authentication provisions have been taken, such as running the NetLDI in guest mode with a captive account. The owner of the Gem process needs an account on the node where the Gem will run and needs write access to the Gem log, typically in $HOME. Ownership and permissions for $GEMSTONE/sys/netldid must be appropriate for the authentication system in use (see pages 76 and 78), and the directories in `/opt/gemstone` must be writable.

❒ Make sure that the user who started the Stone has an account on the remote node. This user also must have write permission for $HOME so that log files for the remote node can be created, unless steps are taken to create the log files in another directory.

❐   Check any GEMSTONE environment variables for definitions that point to a previous version: **env | grep GEM**.

If You Still Have Trouble

If you still can't log in to GemStone from an application on a remote node, try logging in on the server node as the same UNIX user account. We suggest that you first try a linked application, such as **topaz** –**l**, and when that works, move on to an RPC application (such as **topaz** or the equivalent **topaz** –**r**), still on the server.

Try Linked Topaz on the Server

A linked application on the server offers the least complicated kind of login because the server's shared page cache is already running and no network facilities are used. Any problems are likely to involve access permission for the shared page cache or the repository extents, which can also block attempts to log in from a client node.

❐   Make sure that the owner of the topaz process (`$GEMSTONE/bin/topaz`) can access the shared page cache. Use the UNIX command **ipcs** -**m** to display permissions, owner, and group for shared memory; for example:

```
Server% ipcs -m
IPC status from <running system> as of Mon Aug 11
16:22:27 PDT 2008
T    ID    KEY         MODE       OWNER     GROUP
Shared Memory:
m    768 0x4c177155 --rw-rw----  gsadmin     pubs
```

Compare the owner and group returned by **ipcs** with the owner of the Topaz process. You can use the **ps** command to determine the owner; for example, **ps** -**ef** | **grep topaz**. (The switches may be different on your system.)

A typical problem arises when root owns the Stone process and the shared page cache because their group ordinarily will be a special one to which Topaz users do not belong. Related problems may occur with a linked GemBuilder session. The third-party Smalltalk may be installed without the S bits and therefore may rely on group access to the shared page cache and repository. For background information, see "To Set Ownership and Permissions for Session Processes" on page 56.

To correct a shared page cache access failure, either change the owner and group of the setuid files or have the Stone started by a user whose primary group is one to which other GemStone users belong. Unlike file permissions, the shared page cache permissions cannot be set directly.

❒   Make sure the owner of the Topaz process has read-write access to
      $GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf.

Try Topaz RPC on the Server

The next step should be to try running Topaz on the server with a separate Gem
session process. This configuration relies on the NetLDI to start a Gem session
process, and that process, not the application itself, must be able to access the
shared page cache and repository extent.

❒   Make sure that a NetLDI is running on the server by invoking **gslist**. The
      default name is gs64ldi. If you need to start a NetLDI, the command is
      startnetldi.

      GemStone uses the NetLDI to start a Gem session process that does repository
      I/O in this configuration. For the NetLDI to start processes for anyone other
      than its owner, it must be owned by root or it must be started in guest mode
      and captive account mode by someone logged in as the captive account.

      The NetLDI writes a log file with the default name
      /opt/gemstone/log/gs64ldi.log. The log file contents may help you
      diagnose problems. (See the following discussion, "Check NetLDI Log Files.")

❒   Make sure that the owner of the resulting Gem session process
      ($GEMSTONE/sys/gem) can access the shared page cache and extent0.dbf
      through group membership or S bits. The troubleshooting is the same as that
      given on page 96 for the topaz executable.

The user who starts topaz (or the NetLDI captive account when it is in use) must
have write permission for $HOME so that the session process can create a log file
there. (For a workaround for situations where write permission is not allowed, see
"To Set a Default NRS" on page 79.)

Check NetLDI Log Files

Troubleshooting on a distributed GemStone system can be complicated. What
looks like a hung process may actually be caused by incorrect NRS syntax or by
another node on the network going down. The information for analyzing
problems may be found in log files on all the nodes used by GemStone.

Where the log file messages include NRS strings, be sure to check their syntax. The
problem may be as simple as an incorrect NRS or one that was not expanded by
the shell as you intended.

If you can't identify the problem from the standard log messages, try running the NetLDI in debug mode, which puts additional information in the log. The command line is **startnetldi** [*netLdiName*] -**d**.

The following example shows how you might use the NetLDI log to diagnose problems during an RPC login.

1. The client (Topaz, GBS, or GCI) contacts the NetLDI and requests a session.

    ```
    Entering Service Loop
    0: --- 06/24/08 12:40:11.406 PDT :
      Attempting accept...
         ...succeeded accepting client from 10.80.8.12,
         connection = 2
    0: --- 06/24/08 12:40:11.484 PDT :
      Finished reading client request:
         Client is a rpc application.
         '!#encrypted:<username>@password!gemnetobject'
    ```

    If there is no message in the NetLDI log after a login attempt, the failure is in connecting to the NetLDI. (This is usually clear from the error message.) Check your login parameters, particularly the NetLDI name, the port id assigned in the /etc/services file, and the GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL setting.

    If you started NetLDI using the -**p** option to specify a port range, verify that these ports are appropriate and, if you have a firewall, that these ports are open.

2. NetLDI starts listening on a "callback" port. This is not the port that the NetLDI uses to accept connections. This port is just used temporarily for the Gem-NetLDI communication.

3. NetLDI launches gemnetobject (or a similar script specified in the login parameters), telling it the number of the callback port it should use.

    ```
    0: --- 06/24/08 12:40:11.499 PDT :
      Successful fork; Child's Pid: 28836 command is:
         '/<$GEMSTONE>/sys/gemnetobject TCP 48273 30'
    ```

    Note that "Successful fork" does not necessarily mean that the Gem was correctly started and initialized; the NetLDI does not block.

4. The gemnetobject script runs. If you are not using the default gemnetobject, and you have errors in your script, it is very difficult to diagnose them; since the problem is outside of the NetLDI or Gem, details are not reported in either the NetLDI or the Gem logs.

5. The `gemnetobject` script exec's gem to start running the Gem's code.

6. The Gem session initializes itself. At this point there is a Gem log. The pid of the gem process is shown in the NetLDI log (step 3).

7. The Gem starts listening on a client service port. This is yet another distinct port, and is the one that will be used for ongoing communication between the Gem and the client. The port id is shown in the NetLDI log (step 10).

8. The Gem connects to the NetLDI on the callback port.

9. The Gem tells the NetLDI that it is ready, and the number of its client service port:

```
0: --- 06/24/08 12:40:11.803 PDT :
     Now reading reply from child
```

If this step does not occur within the NetLDI timeout, the NetLDI times that Gem out and stops listening on the callback port. (The NetLDI log will contain a message to that effect.) If you are getting timeouts with the default timeout interval, try increasing the timeout by invoking **startnetldi** with the -**t***timeout* option. This may at least help you keep working while determining why the timeout is occurring.

10. NetLDI passes the number of the client service port back to the client (Topaz, GBS or GCI), informing it that a Gem has been started for it, and that this Gem is waiting for a connection at a specific port.

```
0: --- 06/24/08 12:40:11.804 PDT :
  Reply to client started:
  'SUCCESS 48274'
0: --- 06/24/08 12:40:11.804 PDT :
  Done writing reply to client.
0: --- 06/24/08 12:40:11.885 PDT :
  Disposed. elapsed time = 0
```

11. The client contacts the Gem directly on its client service port.

Chapter

4 *Running GemStone*

This chapter shows you how to perform some common GemStone/S 64 Bit system operations:

*   Starting the GemStone Object Server (page 100)

*   Starting Network Long Distance Information (NetLDI) servers (page 106)

*   Identifying running servers (page 107)

*   Logging in to a GemStone session (page 108)

*   Identifying the current sessions (page 114)

*   Shutting down the object server (page 115)

Additional topics explain how to:

*   Recover from an unexpected shutdown (page 117)

*   Load objects in bulk (page 120)

*   Enter and use manual transaction mode, which we recommend that you use as often as possible (page 120)

4.1 How to Start the GemStone Server

In order to start a Stone repository monitor, the following must be identified through your operating system environment:

- Where GemStone is installed — The GEMSTONE environment variable must point to the directory where GemStone is installed, such as `/users/gemstone`. The directory `$GEMSTONE/bin` should be in your search path for commands.

- Which configuration parameters to use — The repository monitor must find a configuration file. The default is `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf`. Other files can supplement or replace the default file; for information, see "How GemStone Uses Configuration Files" on page 368.

- Which repository to use — The configuration file must give the path to one or more repository files (extents) and to space for transaction logs. The default configuration file specifies `$GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf` for the extent file, and places transaction logs in `$GEMSTONE/data/`. You may want to move these files to other locations. For further information, see "Choosing the Extent Location" on page 20.

To Start GemStone

Follow these steps to start GemStone following installation or an orderly shutdown (to recover from an abnormal shutdown, refer to "How to Recover from an Unexpected Shutdown" on page 117).

> *NOTE*
> *In certain distributed installations, a GemStone NetLDI must be*
> *running on other nodes before you can start the repository monitor.*
> *These situations are discussed in Chapter 3 of this manual and ordinarily*
> *do not apply.*

Step 1. Set the GEMSTONE environment variable to the *full pathname* (starting with a slash) of the directory where GemStone is installed. Ordinarily this directory has a name like `GemStone-sparc.Solaris`. For example:

```
$ GEMSTONE=/users/GemStone-sparc.Solaris
$ export GEMSTONE
```

If you have been using another version on GemStone, be sure you update or
unset previous settings of these environment variables:

- GEMSTONE
- GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF
- GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF
- GEMSTONE_LANG

Step 2. Set your UNIX path. One way to do this is to use one of the `gemsetup`
script. There is one version for users of the Bourne and Korn shells and another
for users of the C shell. These scripts also set your man page path to include
the GemStone man pages.

(Bourne or Korn shell)
```
$ . $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.sh
```

or (C shell)
```
% source $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.csh
```

Step 3. Start GemStone by using the **startstone** command:

```
% startstone [gemStoneName]
```

where *gemStoneName* is optional and is the name you want the repository
monitor to have. The default name is `gs64stone.` For additional
information about **startstone**, see page 423.

To Troubleshoot Stone Startup Failures

If the Stone repository monitor fails to start in response to a **startstone** command,
it's likely that the cause is one of the following. Inspect the Stone log for clues (the
default location is `$GEMSTONE/data/gs64stone.log`), then refer to the
discussions that follow this summary.

- The GemStone key file is missing or invalid (see page 102).

- The shared page cache cannot be attached (see page 102).

- An extent file is missing or cannot be opened for exclusive use because another
  GemStone process is using it (see page 103).

- Because of the timing of a system crash, the repository monitor is trying to
  create an extent that already exists (see page 104).

- A transaction log needed for recovery is missing, or the log directory or device
  does not exist (see page 105).

- The repository has become corrupted (see page 105).

The error numbers printed as part of a log message are defined in the file
`$GEMSTONE/include/gcierr.ht`.

Missing or Invalid Key File

The Stone repository monitor must be able to read the key file
`$GEMSTONE/sys/gemstone.key`. Ordinarily, you create this file during
installation from information provided by GemStone. Be careful to enter the
information correctly, following the instructions on the sheet. If the information is
missing, contact GemStone Technical Support as described in the Preface.

Shared Page Cache Cannot Be Attached

The shared page cache monitor must be able to create and attach to the shared
memory segment that will serve as the shared page cache. Several factors may
prevent this from happening:

- On some platforms, shared memory is not enabled in the kernel by default, or
  its default maximum size is too small to accommodate the GemStone
  configuration. GemStone's default configuration requires a shared memory
  segment slightly larger than 10 MB. For specifics about configuring shared
  memory, refer to your *GemStone/S 64 Bit Installation Guide.*

- If the size of the shared page cache has been increased, the operating system's
  limit on shared memory regions may need to be increased accordingly.
  Page 18 describes a utility (`$GEMSTONE/install/shmem`) that will help you
  check the configuration.

- The repository executables (the Stone, Gems, and page servers) must have
  permission to read and write the shared page cache. Ways to set up access are
  described in "To Set File Permissions for the Server" on page 30. In general,
  users must belong to the same group as the Stone repository monitor. If the
  Stone is running as root, it is unlikely that other users will be able to access the
  shared page cache.

Extent Missing or Access Denied

If the Stone repository monitor cannot access a repository extent file, it logs a message like the following:

```
GemStone is unable to open the file
!TCP@pelican#dbf!/users/GemStone/data/extent0.dbf.
reason = File = /users/GemStone/data/extent0.dbf
DBF Op: Open; DBF Record: -1;
Error: open() failure; System Codes: errno=2, ENOENT, The file or
directory specified cannot be found (pageKind [null])

An error occurred opening the repository for exclusive access.

Stone startup has failed.
```

Examine the message for further clues. The extent file could be missing, the permissions on the file or directory could be set incorrectly, or there may be an error in the configuration file that points to the extents. Correct the problem, then try starting GemStone again.

Extent Open by Another Process

If another process has an extent file open when you attempt to restart GemStone, a message like the following appears in the Stone log (by default, $GEMSTONE/data/gs64stone.log):

```
GemStone is unable to open the file
!TCP@pelican#dbf!/users/GemStone/data/extent0.dbf.
reason = File = /users/GemStone/data/extent0.dbf
DBF Op: Open; DBF Record: -1;
Error: exclusive open:  File is open by another process.; System
Codes: errno=11, EAGAIN, No more processes (due to process table
full, user quotas, or insufficient memory) (pageKind [null])

An error occurred opening the repository for exclusive access.

Stone startup has failed.
```

Close any other Gem sessions (including Topaz sessions) that are accessing the repository you are trying to restart, or wait for a **copydbf** to complete. Use **ps -ef** (the options on your system may differ) to identify any pgsvrmain processes that are still running, and then use **kill** *processid* to terminate them. Try again to start GemStone.

Extent Already Exists

If GemStone attempts to recover from a system crash that occurred just after an extent was created but before the next checkpoint, you will find an error message like the following in the Stone log:

```
An error occurred in recovery for extentId 2:
fileName= !TCP@pelican#dbf!/users/GemStone/data/extent1.dbf
File already exists; you must delete it before recovery can succeed.
```

Verify that an extent was being added to the repository at or shortly before the crash. If necessary, look for a message near the end of the Stone log file.

- If an extent was being added, there is no committed data in the extent file yet. Delete the specified file and do not replace it with anything. Try to start GemStone again. The recovery procedure will recreate the extent file.

- If an extent was NOT being added, it is possible that an existing extent has been corrupted. For instance, extent0.dbf of a multiple-extent repository may have been overwritten. Try to determine the cause and whether the action can be rectified. You may have to restore the repository from a backup.

Other Extent Failures

At startup, the GemStone system performs consistency checks on each extent listed in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES.

All extents must have been shut down cleanly with a repository checkpoint the last time the system was run. This consistency check is the only one for which GemStone attempts automatic recovery.

The following consistency checks, if failed, cause the startup sequence to terminate. These failures imply corruption of the disk or file system, or that the extents were modified at the operating system level (such as by **cp** or **copydbf**) outside of GemStone's control and in a manner that has corrupted the repository.

- Extents must be in proper sequence within DBF_EXTENT_NAMES.

- Extents must be properly sequenced in time.

- The last checkpoint must have occurred earlier than or at the same time as the current system time (in GMT).

- Extents must belong to the correct repository.

Transaction Log Missing

If GemStone cannot find the transaction log file for the period between the last checkpoint and an unexpected shutdown, it puts a message like this in the Stone log:

```
Extent 0 not cleanly shutdown, recovery needed
Repository startup from checkpoint = (fileId 0, blockId 14)
  Searching for most recent transaction log
      no log files found
  Searching for transaction log file, fileId 0, directoryId 0,
      filename = /users/gemstone/data/tranlog0.dbf
Error during repository recovery
```

If the log file was archived and removed from the log directory, restore the file.

If the log file is no longer available, you can use **startstone** -**N** to restart from the most recent checkpoint in the repository. However, any transactions that occurred during the intervening period cannot be recovered.

NOTE
*When you use **startstone** with the -**N** option, any transactions*
occurring after the last checkpoint are permanently lost.

Repository Failure

If you have GemStone backups (either online extent backups or Smalltalk full backups, as described in Chapter 9), you can restore the repository to the state of the most recent backup. If full logging (STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING=True) was in effect at the time of the backup, objects committed by subsequent transactions can then be recovered from the transaction logs. For details, see "How to Restore from an Online Extent Backup" (page 283) or "How to Restore from a Smalltalk Full Backup" (page 290).

If you do not have a recent backup and transaction logs for valuable data, you may still be able to recover your committed repository. However, this procedure is not nearly as reliable and may be quite time-consuming. See "How to Audit the Repository" on page 215.

Other Startup Failures

- Check `/opt/gemstone/locks` and remove old files. On some systems, the lock files may be located in `/usr/gemstone/locks`. On Solaris systems, also check `/tmp/gemstone` for *stoneName*`..FIFO`.

- Certain unexpected shutdowns may leave UNIX interprocess communication facilities allocated, which can block attempts to restart the repository monitor. Use the command **ipcs** to identify the shared memory segments and semaphores allocated, then use **ipcrm** to free those resources allocated to a repository monitor that is no longer running. For information about **ipcs** and **ipcrm**, consult your operating system's documentation.

- If you can't start GemStone under any circumstances, try **pageaudit** on the repository. (See "How to Audit the Repository" on page 215.) If the page audit is good but GemStone still doesn't start, check your installation configuration. For more help, contact your local GemStone administrator or GemStone Technical Support.

4.2 How to Start a NetLDI

It's common practice to start a GemStone Network Long Distance Information (NetLDI) server when starting a Stone repository monitor. Chapter 3 of this manual describes the two situations in which a NetLDI is necessary:

- A user will be running an RPC application with a separate Gem session process on the Stone's node.

- A user will be running a linked application or a separate Gem on another node and logging in to the repository on the Stone's node.

To start a NetLDI server, perform the following steps on the node where the NetLDI is to run:

Step 1. Set the GEMSTONE environment variable to the *full pathname* (starting with a slash) of the directory where GemStone is installed. Ordinarily this directory has a name like `GemStone64Bit2.4.0-sparc.Solaris.` For example:

```
$ GEMSTONE=/installDir/GemStone64Bit2.4.0-sparc.Solaris
$ export GEMSTONE
```

Step 2. Use one of the `gemsetup` scripts to set your UNIX path. There is one version for users of the Bourne and Korn shells and another for the C shell. These scripts also set your man page path to include the GemStone man pages.

(Bourne or Korn shell)
```
$ . $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.sh
```

or (C shell)
```
% source $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.csh
```

Step 3. Start the NetLDI by using the **startnetldi** command.

❒ To start the NetLDI for password authentication, make sure that
`$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` is owned by root and has the S bit set. Issue
this command (on some operating systems, you may have to issue it as
root):

```
Client% startnetldi
```

❒ To start the NetLDI in guest mode (authentication is not required), make
sure that `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` does NOT have the S bit set. Log in
as the captive account *name*, then issue this command:

```
Client% startnetldi -g -aname
```

For additional information about **startnetldi**, see the command description in
Appendix B. For information about the authentication modes, see "How to
Arrange Network Security" on page 73.

To Troubleshoot NetLDI Startup Failures

If the NetLDI service fails to start in response to a **startnetldi** command, it's likely
that the cause is one of the following. Inspect the NetLDI log for clues. By default,
the NetLDI log (*netLdiName*.`log`) is located in `/opt/gemstone/log`; on some
systems, this file may be located in `/usr/gemstone/log`.

• The NetLDI is to run as root but the guest mode option is specified. This
combination is not allowed.

• The account starting the NetLDI does not have permission to create or append
to its log file.

• The account starting the NetLDI does not have read and execute permission
for `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid`.

The error numbers printed as part of a log message are defined in the file
`$GEMSTONE/include/gcierr.ht`.

4.3 To List Running Servers

The **gslist** utility lists all Stone repository monitors, shared page cache monitors,
and NetLDIs that are running. The **gslist** command by itself checks the locks

directory (`/opt/gemstone/locks` or `/usr/gemstone/locks`) for entries. The
-v option causes it to verify that each process is alive and responding. For example:

```
% gslist -v
Status   Version    Owner      Started       Type   Name
------ --------- --------- ------------ ------ ----
  OK    2.4.0     gsadmin   Jun 26 12:02 cache  gs64stone@nodeA
  OK    2.4.0     gsadmin   Jun 26 12:02 Stone  gs64stone
  OK    2.4.0     gsadmin   Jun 26 10:13 Netldi gs64ldi
```

By default, **gslist** lists servers on the local node. The **-m** *host* option performs the
operation on node *host*, which must have a NetLDI running.

4.4 How to Start a GemStone Session

This section tells how to start a GemStone session and log in to the repository
monitor. The instructions apply to all logins from the node on which the Stone
repository monitor is running.

- For additional information about the GemStone administrative logins, see
  Chapter 5, "User Accounts and Security."

- For additional information about logging in from a remote node, see
  Chapter 3, "Connecting Distributed Systems."

This section begins with a brief discussion of environmental variables, and then
presents two examples. The first example starts a linked application and logs in to
GemStone. The second example starts an RPC application, which in turn spawns
a separate Gem session process that communicates with the GemStone server.

The examples use Topaz as the application because it is part of the standard
GemStone Object Server distribution. Other applications may use different steps
to accomplish the same purpose. Some users may prefer to make these steps part
of an initialization file.

For an explanation of the difference between linked and RPC sessions, see "Linked
and RPC Applications" on page 52.

To Define a GemStone Session Environment

In order to start a GemStone session, the following must be defined through your
operating system environment:

- Where GemStone is installed

All GemStone users must have a GEMSTONE environment variable that points to the GemStone installation directory, such as /*installDir*/GemStone64Bit2.4.0-hppa.hpux. The directory $GEMSTONE/bin should be in your search path for commands. For an example, see the next topic, "To Start a Linked Session".

• Which configuration parameters to use

Because each GemStone session can have its own configuration file, some users may need a second environmental variable, such as GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF. If no other file is found, the session uses system defaults. For further information, see "To Set Up the User's Environment" on page 141 and "How GemStone Uses Configuration Files" on page 368.

To Start a Linked Session

The following steps show how to start a linked application (here, the linked version of Topaz). The steps for setting the GEMSTONE environment variable and the operating system path for a session are the same as those given on page 100 for starting a repository monitor. They are repeated here for convenience.

The procedure assumes that the Stone repository monitor has already been started and has the default name *gs64stone*.

Step 1. Set the GEMSTONE environment variable to the *full pathname* (starting with a slash) of the directory where GemStone is installed. Ordinarily this directory has a name like GemStone64Bit2.4.0-sparc.Solaris. For example:

```
$ GEMSTONE=/installDir/GemStone64Bit2.4.0-sparc.Solaris
$ export GEMSTONE
```

If you have been using another version on GemStone, be sure you update or delete previous settings of these environment variables:

• GEMSTONE
• GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF
• GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF
• GEMSTONE_LANG

Step 2. Set your UNIX path. One way to do this is to use one of the gemsetup scripts. There is one version for users of the Bourne and Korn shells and another for users of the C shell. These scripts also set your man page path to include the GemStone man pages.

(Bourne or Korn shell)
```
$ . $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.sh
```

or (C shell)
```
% source $GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup.csh
```

Step 3. Start linked Topaz:

```
% topaz -l
```

Step 4. Set the *UserName* login parameter:

```
topaz> set username DataCurator
```

Step 5. Log in to the Gem session.

```
topaz> login
GemStone Password?
successful login
topaz 1>
```

At this point, you are logged in to a Gem session process, which is linked with the application. The session process acts as a server to Topaz and as a client to the Stone. Information about Topaz is in the manual *GemStone Topaz Programming Environment*.

When you are ready to end the GemStone session, you can log out of GemStone and exit Topaz in one step by invoking the Topaz **exit** command:

```
topaz 1> exit
```

To Start an RPC Session

The following steps show how to start an RPC application (here, the RPC version of Topaz) on the server node. The procedure assumes that the Stone is running under the default name *gs64stone* and that you are already set up to run a GemStone session as described in Steps 1 and 2 of the previous example.

Step 1. Use **gslist** to find out if a NetLDI is already running. The default name for the NetLDI is `gs64ldi`. (This list also shows the Stone and shared page cache monitor.)

```
% gslist
Status  Version    Owner      Started      Type  Name
------ --------- --------- ------------ ------ ----
exists 2.4.0     gsadmin   Jun 26 12:02 cache  gs64stone@nodeA
exists 2.4.0     gsadmin   Jun 26 12:02 Stone  gs64stone
exists 2.4.0     gsadmin   Jun 26 10:13 Netldi gs64ldi
```

Step 2. If necessary, start a NetLDI:

❒ To start the NetLDI for password authentication, make sure that `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` is owned by root and has the S bit set. Issue this command (on some operating systems, you may have to issue it as root):

```
Client% startnetldi
```

❒ To start the NetLDI in guest mode (authentication is not required), make sure that `$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid` does NOT have the S bit set. Log in as the captive account *name*, then issue this command:

```
Client% startnetldi -g -aname
```

Step 3. Unless the NetLDI is running in guest mode with a captive account, decide how you will provide authentication so that the NetLDI can start the Gem session process. Choose one of the following:

❒ You can create a `.netrc` file in the your home directory containing a line like the following, where *hostName* is the name of this node (which is also the server node):

```
machine hostName login yourUnixId password yourPassword
```

❐   You can set the application login parameters, such as HostUserName and HostPassword, after you start the application. For example:

```
topaz> set hostusername yourUnixId
topaz> set hostpassword yourPassword
```

Step 4. Start the RPC application (such as Topaz), then set the UserName.

```
% topaz
topaz> set username DataCurator
```

Step 5. Set GemNetId (the name of the Gem service to be started) to `gemnetobject`. This script starts the separate Gem session process for you. For example:

```
topaz> set gemnetid gemnetobject
```

Step 6. Log in to the GemStone session.

```
topaz> login
GemStone Password?
successful login
topaz 1>
```

At this point, you are logged in through a separate Gem session process that acts as a server to Topaz RPC and as a client to the Stone repository monitor.

When you are ready to end the GemStone session, you can log out of GemStone and exit Topaz by in one step by invoking the Topaz **exit** command:

```
topaz 1> exit
```

To Troubleshoot Session Login Failures

Several factors may prevent successful login to the repository:

•   Your GemStone key file may establish a maximum number of user sessions that can simultaneously be logged in to GemStone. (Note that a single user may have multiple GemStone sessions running simultaneously.) The limit itself is encoded in `$GEMSTONE/sys/gemstone.key`, but you can examine the comment in that file. For example:

```
# Stone Session limit:      10
```

•   The GemStone configuration option STN_MAX_SESSIONS (page 400) can restrict the number of logins to fewer than a particular key file allows. An entry in the Stone log file shows the maximum at the time the Stone started. By

default, the Stone log file is $GEMSTONE/data/*gemStoneName*.log. Look for a
line like this in a box:

```
SESSION LIMIT: Maximum number of concurrent sessions: 64
```

- The GemStone configuration option SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS
  (page 388) restricts the number of sessions that can attach to a particular
  shared page cache. This number can be different on each node, depending on
  the configuration file that is read by the process that starts the cache. On the
  node where the Stone runs, one of this number is used by the Stone, the shared
  page cache monitor, each GcGem (garbage collection) session, each Stone AIO
  page server, the page manager, the SymbolGem, and each free frame page
  server. On other nodes, the Stone's page server and the shared page cache
  monitor each use one. For details, see "To Set the Page Cache Options and the
  Number of Sessions" on page 15. Check the Stone's log for warnings that the
  value requested for SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS has been adjusted to
  match your system's configuration.

- The UNIX kernel must provide one semaphore for each session that wants to
  attach to the shared page cache. See "Reviewing Kernel Tunable Parameters"
  on page 14.

- The UNIX kernel file descriptor limit can restrict the number of sessions, and
  GemStone executables attempt to raise that limit. For information, see the
  discussions of "Estimating File Descriptor Needs" on page 13 (for the Stone)
  and page 55 (for Gems). On some operating systems, you can examine the
  kernel limit by invoking **limit**.

- The owner of the Gem or a linked application process must have write access
  to the extent file and to the shared page cache. Use the UNIX command **ipcs -m**
  to display permissions, owner, and group for shared memory. For example:

```
server% ipcs -m
IPC status from <running system> as of Mon Aug 25
16:21:08 PDT 2008
T       ID      KEY          MODE          OWNER        GROUP
Shared Memory:
m       25089   0x4c000ed5   --rw-rw----   gsadmin      users
```

  Typical problems occur with linked applications, which may be installed
  without the S bit and therefore rely on group access to the shared page cache
  and the repository.

- If the session is using a separate (RPC) gem process — even on the same node
  — see "Troubleshooting Remote Logins" on page 94.

The error numbers printed as part of a log message are defined in the file
`$GEMSTONE/include/gcierr.ht` and in the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit.*

4.5 How to Identify Sessions Logged In

Privileges required: SessionAccess.

To identify the sessions currently logged in to GemStone, send the message
`System class>>currentSessionNames`. This message returns an array of
internal session numbers and the corresponding UserId. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
System currentSessionNames
%
session number: 2     UserId: GcUser
session number: 3     UserId: GcUser
session number: 4     UserId: SymbolUser
session number: 5     UserId: DataCurator
session number: 6     UserId: DataCurator
```

The session number can be used with other System class methods to stop a
particular session or to obtain its UserProfile. See `stopSession:`*aSessionId,*
terminateSession:aSessionId `timeout:`*seconds* and
`userProfileForSession:`*aSessionId*.

> *NOTE*
> *Be aware that it may take as long as a minute for a session to terminate*
> *after you send* `stopSession:`*. If the Gem is responsive, it usually*
> *terminates within milliseconds. However, if a Gem is not active (for*
> *example, sleeping or waiting on I/O), the Stone waits one minute for it*
> *to respond before forcibly logging it out. You can bypass this timeout by*
> *sending* `terminateSession:timeout:`

The method `System class>>descriptionOfSession:`*aSessionId* returns an
array of descriptive information by which you can trace the session name to a
particular person: the second element shows the operating system process id (pid),

and the third element shows the name of the node on which it is running. In this example, the DataCurator session is running on "node1" as pid 3010:

```
topaz 1> printit
System descriptionOfSession: 2
%
an Array
  #1 an UserProfile
  #2 3010
  #3 node1
  ...
```

For details about these methods and the information returned, see the class and method comments in the image.

4.6 How to Shut Down the Object Server and NetLDI

Privileges required: SystemAccess and SystemControl.

To shut down GemStone from UNIX, first make sure that all user sessions have logged out. One way to find out about other user sessions is to send the message currentSessionNames to System. For example, using Topaz:

```
topaz 1> printit
System currentSessionNames
%
session number: 2    UserId: GcUser
session number: 3    UserId: GcUser
session number: 4    UserId: SymbolUser
session number: 5    UserId: DataCurator
session number: 6    UserId: DataCurator
```

After all user sessions have logged out, use the **stopstone** command, which performs an orderly shutdown in which all committed transactions are written to the extent files.

% **stopstone** [*gemStoneName*] [**-i**]

If you do not supply the name of the Stone repository monitor, **stopstone** prompts you for one. The default name during startup was gs64stone. If necessary, use **gslist** (page 415) to find the name.

The -**i** option aborts all current (uncommitted) transactions and terminates all active user sessions. If you do not specify this option and other sessions are

logged in, GemStone will not shut down and you will receive a message to that effect.

stopstone prompts you to supply a GemStone username and password. The user must have the SystemControl privilege (initially, this privilege is granted to SystemUser and DataCurator). For details about user accounts and privileges, see Chapter 5.

There is a similar command to shut down the NetLDI network service.

% **stopnetldi** [*netLdiName*]

For more information about the stopstone and stopnetldi commands, refer to Appendix B, "GemStone Utility Commands."

If you are logged in to a GemStone session, you can invoke
System class>>shutDown, which also requires the SystemControl privilege.

CAUTION

*If you must halt a specific Gem session process or GemStone server processes, be sure to use only **kill** or **kill -term** so that the Gem can perform an orderly shutdown.*

*Do NOT use **kill -9** or another uncatchable signal, which may not result in a clean shutdown or may cause the Stone repository monitor to shut down when you intended to kill only a Gem process. If for some reason you need to send **kill -9** to a shared page cache monitor, use **ipcs** and **ipcrm** to identify and free the shared memory and semaphore resources for that cache. If you send **kill -9** to a Stone, use **ipcs** to determine whether **ipcrm** should be invoked.*

4.7 How to Recover from an Unexpected Shutdown

GemStone is designed to shut down in response to certain error conditions as a way of minimizing damage to the repository. If GemStone stops unexpectedly, it probably means that one of the following situations has occurred:

- Disk failure

- Shared page cache monitor failure

- Fatal error detected by a Gem

- File system corruption

- Power failure

- Operating system crash

When GemStone shuts down unexpectedly, check the message at the end of the Stone log file to begin diagnosing the problem. Unless you specified another file on the **startstone** command line, the Stone log is $GEMSTONE/data/*gemStoneName.*log.

The $GEMSTONE/data directory also contains log files for the Stone child processes. The child processes have log names formed from *gemStoneName,* the process id, and a descriptive abbreviation. For instance:

`gs64stone.log`	Stone repository monitor
`gs64stone_14033admingcgem.log`	Admin GcGem
`gs64stone_2963pcmon.log`	Shared page cache monitor
`gs64stone_2967pgsvrff.log`	Free Frame page server
`gs64stone_2984pgsvraio.log`	AIO page server
`gs64stone_2987pagemanager.log`	Page Manager
`gs64stone_2992reclaimgcgem0-6.log`	Reclaim GcGem
`gs64stone_2994symbolgem.log`	SymbolGem

Once the problem is identified, your recovery strategy should take into account the interdependence of GemStone system components. For instance, if an extent becomes unavailable, to restart the system and recover you may have to kill the Stone repository monitor if it is still running. The **stopstone** command won't work in this situation, since the orderly shutdown process requires the Stone to clean up the repository before it stops.

Normal Shutdown Message

If you see a shutdown message in the system log file, GemStone has stopped in response to a **stopstone** command or a Smalltalk `System shutdown` method:

```
--- 06/24/08 08:59:58 PDT ---
'LoginsSuspended' is now set to 1 by DataCurator.
GemStone is stopping the Admin Gem with sessionId 3,
processId 25909
Stopping Reclaim Gem for extents 0 to 1, sessionId 2
processId 25908
GemStone is stopping the Symbol Creation Gem with
sessionId 4, processId 25910
SHUTDOWN command was received from user DataCurator.
Now stopping GemStone.
```

After a normal shutdown, restart GemStone in the usual manner. For instructions, see "How to Start the GemStone Server" on page 100 of this chapter.

Disk Failure or File System Corruption

GemStone prints several different disk read error messages to the GemStone log file. For example:

```
Repository Read failure,
fileName = !#dbf!/users/gemstone/data/extent0.dbf
PageId = 94
File = /users/gs64stone/data/extent0.dbf
too few bytes returned from read()
DBF Operation Read; DBF record 94, UNIX codes: errno=
34,...
    "A read error occurred when accessing the repository."
```

If you see a message similar to the above, or if your system administrator identifies a disk failure or a corrupted file system, try to copy your extents to another node or back them up to tape immediately. The copies may be bad, but it is worth doing, just in case. If you're lucky, you may be able to copy them back after the underlying problem is solved and start again with the current committed state of your repository.

Otherwise, the procedure you need to follow depends on what was done at the operating system level. For a discussion of the options, see the section "How to Recover After Repair of the File System" on page 313.

Shared Page Cache Error

If you find a message similar to the following in the GemStone log, the shared page cache (SPC) monitor process (`shrpcmonitor`) died. The SPC monitor log, $GEMSTONE/data/*gemStoneName*_pcmon*nnnn*.log, may indicate the reason.

```
--- 06/24/08 15:07:19 PDT ---
    The stone's connection to the local shared cache monitor
was lost.
    Error Text: 'Network partner has disconnected.'
```

Check `/opt/gemstone/locks` or `/usr/gemstone/locks` and remove any entries left by the monitor that died. These files have names that include the Stone name and a network address, such as `gs64stone@127.0.0.1` and `gs64stone@127.0.0.1..LCK` for the default Stone name `gs64stone`.

The unexpected shutdown of a Gem process may result in a "stuck spin lock" error that brings down the shared page cache monitor and the Stone. GemStone uses spin locks to coordinate access to critical structures within the cache, and each Gem must release any locks it holds in the process of shutting down. This error may result from a system crash, but a typical cause is the use of **kill** -**9** to kill an unwanted Gem process. If you must halt a Gem process, be sure to use only **kill** or **kill** -**TERM** so that the Gem can perform an orderly shutdown.

Use **startstone** to restart GemStone. For instructions, see "How to Start the GemStone Server" on page 100.

Fatal Error Detected by a Gem

If a Gem session process detects a fatal error that would cause it to halt and dump a core image, the Stone repository monitor may do the same when it is notified of the event. This response on the part of the Stone is configurable through the STN_HALT_ON_FATAL_ERR option (page 396). When that option is set to True (the default) and a Gem encounters a fatal error, the Stone prints a message like this in its log file:

```
Fatal Internal Error condition in Gem
    when halt on fatal error was specified in the config file
```

You can change this response by setting the STN_HALT_ON_FATAL_ERR configuration option to False. That setting causes the Stone to attempt to keep running if a Gem encounters a fatal error; it is the recommended setting for GemStone in a production system.

Some Other Shutdown Message

In the event of other shutdown messages in the GemStone log:

1. Consider whether the shutdown might have been caused by a disk failure or a corrupt file system, especially if you see an unexpected message such as `Object not found`. If you suspect one of these conditions, start with a page audit of the repository file (see "How to Audit the Repository" on page 215).

   If the page audit fails, read the advice under "Disk Failure or File System Corruption" on page 118 of this chapter, and consult your operating system administrator.

   If the audit succeeds, continue to the next step.

2. If you don't suspect disk failure or a corrupt file system, try using **startstone** to restart GemStone. For instructions, see "How to Start the GemStone Server" on page 100.

3. If the restart fails, you may have to restore the repository. For details, see the restore procedures in Chapter 9.

No Shutdown Message

If the GemStone log doesn't contain a shutdown message, there has probably been a power failure or an operating system crash. In that event, the Stone repository monitor automatically recovers committed transactions the next time it starts. Use **startstone** to restart GemStone, as described on page 100. For information about the **startstone** command, see page 423.

4.8 How to Bulk-Load Objects

During bulk loading of objects into the repository, it may be desirable to make the following changes:

* You may need to commit incrementally, but if so, commit as seldom as possible. There is a limit on how large a transaction can be, either in terms of the total size of previously committed objects that are modified, or of the total size of temporary objects that are transitively reachable from modified committed objects.

  To address this concern, increase the GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE configuration option. The size of each transaction (the number of 16 KB pages written) should be approximately 1/3 to 1/2 the size of

GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE, and no more than 1/4 to 1/2 the size of the shared page cache.

- If you are loading through GemBuilder, you can reduce growth of your Smalltalk image by using forwarders or explicit stubbing. For instance, when adding objects to a large collection, make the Collection object a forwarder or, after adding each element, send it the message #stubYourself.

- If the bulk load consists of large transactions, put the repository in partial logging mode during loading (STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING = False) and lower the STN_TRANLOG_LIMIT configuration option. This change reduces size of the resulting transaction logs by causing each transaction larger than the specified limit to be written as a checkpoint. (The STN_TRANLOG_LIMIT configuration option has no effect if the repository has been run in full logging mode.)

- Alternatively, you can increase performance during bulk loads by adding the following entries to your configuration file:

```
STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES = /dev/null, /dev/null;
STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING = TRUE;
```

For information about these configuration file options, see pages 404 and 403, respectively.

NOTE
Be aware that using /dev/null *for the tranlog directories will prevent you from being able to restore tranlogs in the event of a system failure.*

4.9 Considerations for Large Repositories

GemStone/S 64 allows you to define a very large shared page cache, thereby enabling you to run very large repositories. This section presents special considerations that apply to large repositories.

Loading the object table at startup

When starting the repository, the object table is not loaded into memory, and initial accesses can take an excessively long time. If you encounter this condition, you may choose to run the **startcachewarmer** utility, which explicitly loads the object table into memory. There is an initial cost at startup, but subsequent performance will be acceptable.

For details about **startcachewarmer**, see page 419.

Making efficient use of a large cache

When running a system on which many users log in simultaneously, consider using remote caches so that you don't need to run all Gem processes on the same machine. There are a couple of ways to optimize this. The following configuration options are of particular interest:

* To allow Gems to make more efficient use of the large cache, set the GEM_PGSVR_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE configuration option (page 382) to increase the size of the Gem free frame cache. For example:

  ```
  GEM_PGSVR_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE = 25;
  ```

* To improve performance on remote caches, set GEM_PGSVR_UPDATE_CACHE_ON_READ (page 383) to True so that remote Gem sessions will update their local caches. For example:

  ```
  GEM_PGSVR_UPDATE_CACHE_ON_READ = TRUE;
  ```

Disk Space and Commit Record Backlogs

Sessions only update their view of the repository when they commit or abort. The repository must keep a copy of each session's view so long as the session is using it, even if other sessions frequently commit changes and create new views (commit records). Storing the original view and all the intermediate views uses up space in the repository, and can result in the repository running out of space. To avoid this problem, all sessions in a busy system should commit or abort regularly.

For a session that is not in a transaction, if the number of commit records exceeds the value of STN_CR_BACKLOG_THRESHOLD, the Stone repository monitor signals the session to abort by sending #rtErrSignalAbort (also called "sigAbort"). If the session does not abort, the Stone repository monitor reinitializes the session or terminates it, depending on the value of STN_GEM_LOSTOT_TIMEOUT.

Sessions that are in transaction are immune from this process. It is important that sessions do not stay in transaction for long periods in busy systems; this can result in the Stone running out of space and shutting down. However, sessions that run in automatic transaction mode are *always* in transaction; as soon as they commit or abort, they begin a new transaction. (For a discussion of automatic and manual transaction modes, see the "Transactions and Concurrency Control" chapter of the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit*.)

To avoid running out of disk space, we recommend that you use *manual transaction mode* whenever possible. To enter manual transaction mode:

```
topaz> printit
System transactionMode: #manualBegin
%
```

At the point that this session needs to commit a change, begin a transaction manually, then make the changes:

```
topaz> printit
System beginTransaction .
AllUsers addNewUserWithId: #Jane password: 'gemstone' .
System commitTransaction
%
```

After you commit (or abort) the transaction, your session will return to waiting outside of a transaction.

Handling signals indicating a commit record backlog

Even in manual transaction mode, it is possible to cause a commit record backlog, depending on how your system is configured. Sessions should ensure that they commit or abort regularly, or set up sigAbort handlers to abort when requested by the Stone. A sigAbort handler may be as simple as this:

Example 4.1   sigAbort handler

```
Exception
    installStaticException:
    [ :exception :GSdictionary :errID :array |
       System abortTransaction.
       System enableSignaledAbortError).
```

Note that a session that is entirely idle does not become aware of the signal to abort, and may timeout and be terminated by the stone in spite of the handler. If your application may have idle sessions, we recommend setting up a timer that causes regular aborts when the session is otherwise idle.

Sessions that are in transaction, and therefor immune from the sigAbort mechanism, may also be signaled when there is a commit record backlog. When the number of commit records exceeds the value of STN_CR_BACKLOG_THRESHOLD, and the session holding the oldest commit

record is in transaction, the Stone repository monitor signals the session by sending #rtErrSignalFinishTransaction. The session then has the opportunity to perform a continueTransaction to update its view of unmodified objects. It may also commit or abort. Unlike sigAbort, the session can choose to ignore this message and will not receive further signals from the stone.

For more information on these signals, see the *Programming Guide* for GemStone/S 64 Bit.

5 *User Accounts and Security*

This chapter tells how to use the GemStone/S 64 Bit tools to perform administrative tasks on an object server. There are two such tools:

- The Topaz programming environment is a line-oriented interface. It is part of the GemStone Object Server distribution.

- GemBuilder for Smalltalk is available as a separate product and requires Smalltalk from a third-party vendor.

The Topaz interface is available to all administrators and can be used from any terminal and readily accepts input from scripts. All administrative tasks can be performed from the Topaz interface, and a few tasks, such as restoring a backup, require it.

GemBuilder for Smalltalk (GBS) requires a window system. All administrators with access to GemBuilder can use its visual tools for creating and maintaining user accounts. Administrators who are experienced with this interface may also prefer to use its workspace for other administrative tasks, in which case the Topaz examples in this manual should be helpful because the Smalltalk code is the same.

This chapter also shows you how to perform some common GemStone user administration tasks:

- How to create and modify user accounts, including passwords, privileges, group memberships, and symbol resolution, and how to control the user's read-write access to objects through the use of *segments*.

    ❐ Procedures for performing these tasks with the GemBuilder administration tools begin on page 135.

    ❐ Procedures for performing these tasks with Topaz begin on page 151.

- How to configure GemStone login security by restricting valid passwords, imposing password and account age limits, and monitoring intrusion attempts.

To perform any of the tasks described in this chapter, you should either have the GemBuilder administration tools available or be familiar with the Smalltalk programming language as described in the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit*.

To perform most of these tasks you must have explicit *privilege* to execute a restricted Smalltalk method, and you may also need to be explicitly authorized to modify an affected segment. This chapter introduces these concepts. For a full description, see the chapter of the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit* that discusses security.

5.1 The Administrative Accounts

For system administrative work, you will use two logins: DataCurator and SystemUser. The DataCurator account is used to perform system administration tasks. The SystemUser account ordinarily is used only for performing GemStone system upgrades. To log in as SystemUser, simply substitute that name for DataCurator when you set the GemStone user name. Access to both of these accounts should be restricted.

> *WARNING*
> *Logging in to GemStone as SystemUser is like logging in to your workstation as root: an accidental modification to a kernel object can cause a great deal of harm. Use the DataCurator account for system administration functions except those that **require** SystemUser privileges, such as a repository upgrade.*

Two other administrative accounts, GcUser and SymbolUser, are for the special sessions that log in to perform the garbage collection and symbol creation tasks, respectively.

- Because GcUser is logged in automatically by the Stone repository monitor, the primary reason to log in as GcUser yourself is to tune garbage collection parameters that are stored in GcUser's UserGlobals.

- Logging in as SymbolUser is disallowed. Directly accessing the AllSymbols collection, which is in the UserGlobals of the SymbolUser, is possible from another administrative session. There is no other reason to log in as SymbolUser.

5.2 Defining Your GemStone Environment

Before you can launch one of the administrative tools, it's necessary to define the session environment in UNIX. That process is the same as the one described for all users on page 108. Define the GEMSTONE environment variable and be sure that `$GEMSTONE/bin` is in your path.

5.3 User Accounts

This section provides background information about how GemStone stores user accounts, what accounts are predefined, and what determines an account's name space.

UserProfiles

Each GemStone user is associated with an instance of class UserProfile. That UserProfile object contains information describing objects that the user is allowed to examine or modify, messages that the user is permitted to send, the user's native language, and default attributes of any objects that the user creates.

The following paragraphs describe each of the elements that you specify when creating a new UserProfile. If you have the necessary privileges, you can also modify these elements. In addition, the UserProfile contains a symbol list for use in resolving symbols in that user's name space. For a discussion, see "The UserProfile and Session Symbol Lists" on page 132.

User ID   Each UserProfile is associated with a userId—a unique String that identifies the user to the GemStone system at login. Embedded spaces are permitted.

Password	The user supplies this password (an InvariantString) for identification purposes at login. This password has no connection with a user's operating system password and should be different. GemStone stores the password in encrypted form in a secure manner. Users must have explicit privilege to change their own passwords—or anyone else's. (See the discussion of privileges below.)
	GemStone provides a number of ways to restrict the passwords that a user can choose, and it can record login failures and disable the account if failed attempts persist. For information about changing the default settings, see "How to Configure GemStone Login Security" on page 167.
Default Segment	When you add a new user to the GemStone system, you can either allow the default segment to be nil, or specify a segment to determine the default read and write authorizations for objects created by the user.
	In GemStone Smalltalk, a segment groups objects for purposes of authorization (protection); that is, if you can read or write one of a segment's objects, you can read or write all of them. The owner of a segment can designate named groups whose members are authorized to read or write objects in that segment. For more information about segments, see the chapter in the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit* that discusses security.
	A default segment of nil means that objects created by that user, by default, have world read and write access; that is, are not restricted from being read or written by all other users. Not requiring authorization checks has the benefit of improved performance.
	To specify a default segment for a user, you may use an existing segment, or you must create and commit the segment before it can be used.
Privileges	When you create a new UserProfile, you determine whether the new user may perform certain "privileged" system functions that are customarily performed by you, as the GemStone data curator. For example, many of the messages to System require explicit privilege. For developers, you must also specifically grant the privilege that allows the user to

modify code. Table 5.1 lists the Smalltalk methods associated with each GemStone privilege.

Note that privileges are more powerful than segment authorization (discussed above). Although the owner of a segment can always use authorization protocol to restrict read or write access to objects in a segment, you (as the data curator) can override that protection by sending privileged messages that let you change the authorization scheme.

Groups

GemStone uses group membership to supervise access to objects; each user can examine or modify only those objects which you (or the segment's owner) have made available to that user, or objects which do not have a segment. Similarly, GemStone ensures that other users cannot see or change objects that you and the owner have agreed to keep private.

Each GemStone user may belong to any number of groups. There are three predefined groups: System, Publishers, and Subscribers. By default, all new users become members of group Subscribers.

Table 5.1   Smalltalk Methods with GemStone Privileges

Type of Privilege	Privileged Methods (some methods require more than one privilege)
SystemControl	**GsSession**>>stop
	Repository>>auditWithLimit:, quickObjectAuditWithLevel:, reclaimAll
	System class>>changeCacheSlotFreeFrameLimit:to:, changeCacheSlotIoLimit:to:, flushAllExtents, resumeCheckpoints, resumeLogins, sendSigAbortToSession:, shutDown, startCheckpointAsync, startCheckpointSync, stopUserSessions, suspendCheckpointsForMinutes:, suspendLogins
SessionAccess	**GsSession** class>>sessionWithSerialNumber:, serialOfSession:, sessionIdOfSerial:
	System class>>currentSessionNames, descriptionOfSessionSerialNum:, descriptionOfSession:, otherSessionNames, stopUserSessions, userProfileForSession:
UserPassword	**UserProfile**>>oldPassword:newPassword:
DefaultSegment	**UserProfile**>>defaultSegment:

Table 5.1   Smalltalk Methods with GemStone Privileges (Continued)

Type of Privilege	Privileged Methods (some methods require more than one privilege)
CodeModification	*[You must have CodeModification privilege to create or modify instances of GsMethod, GsMethodDictionary, or Class. Also see the discussion following this table.]*
OtherPassword	*[You must have OtherPassword privilege to make any changes to a UserProfile or to the AllUsers UserProfileSet. This includes adding or removing a SymbolDictionary to/from a SymbolList that is not your own.]* **UserProfile**>>activeUserIdLimit, activeUserIdLimit:, clearOldPasswords, isDisabled, lastLoginTime, lastPasswordChange, loginsAllowedBeforeExpiration, loginsAllowedBeforeExpiration:, password:, reasonForDisabledAccount, reasonForDisabledAccount:, userId:, disableCommits, enableCommits **UserProfileSet**>>findDisabledUsers, findProfilesWithAgingPassword
SegmentCreation	**Segment** class>>newInRepository:
SegmentProtection	**Segment**>>group:authorization:, ownerAuthorization:, worldAuthorization:
FileControl	**Repository**>>abortRestore, addTransactionLog:size:, commitRestore, continueFullBackupTo:MBytes:, createExtent:, createExtent: withMaxSize:, fullBackupTo:MBytes:, restoreFromArchiveLogs, restoreFromBackup:, restoreFromBackups:, restoreFromCurrentLogs, restoreToEndOfLog:, restoreStatus, restoreStatusNextFileId, restoreStatusOldestFileId, startNewLog, timeToRestoreTo:
GarbageCollection	**Repository**>>auditWithLimit:, findDisconnectedObjectsAndWriteToFile:pageBufferSize:saveToRepository:, markForCollection, markGcCandidatesFromFile:, markGcCandidatesFromFile:forceOnError:, pagesWithPercentFree:, postReclaimAll:, quickObjectAuditWithLevel:, reclaimAll, repairWithLimit: **System** class>> startAdminGcSession, startAllGcGemSessions, startAllReclaimGcSessions, startReclaimGemForExtentRange:to:, startReclaimGemForExtentRange:to:onHost:, startReclaimGemForExtentRange:to:onHost:stoneHost: startSymbolCreationSession, stopAdminGcSession, stopAllGcSessions, stopAllReclaimGcSessions
NoPerformOnServer	**System** class>>performOnServer:
NoUserAction	**System** class>> loadUserActionLibrary:
NoGsFileOnServer	Any GsFile operation which accesses a file on the server.
NoGsFileOnClient	Any GsFile operation which accesses a file on the client.

Table 5.1   Smalltalk Methods with GemStone Privileges (Continued)

Type of Privilege	Privileged Methods (some methods require more than one privilege)
(various)	**System** class>>configurationAt:put:

For a more general discussion of UserProfiles in GemStone, see the discussion of sessions and UserProfiles in the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit.* Also see the instance protocol for UserProfile and UserProfileSet in the image.

Code Modification

CodeModification privilege is required to execute any method that modifies Smalltalk code:

- You must have CodeModification privilege to create instances of GsMethod, or to create or modify instances of GsMethodDictionary or Class. (You cannot modify a GsMethod once it has been created.)

- You must have CodeModification privilege to add a Class to, or remove a Class from, a SymbolDictionary and its subclasses.

- You must have CodeModification privilege to add or remove a SymbolDictionary from your own SymbolList. (See pages 145, 158, and 159.)

- You cannot use GemBuilder for C to modify instances of the following classes (or their subclasses): GsMethod, GsMethodDictionary, Class, SymbolDictionary, SymbolList, UserProfile.

Predefined Users

When GemStone is first installed, the AllUsers object (a UserProfileSet) has UserProfiles already defined for the following users. *You must never delete these users.*

SystemUser   The SystemUser account is the owner of the SystemSegment, which contains the kernel classes. This account ordinarily used only to perform GemStone system upgrades. DO NOT use this account for ordinary administration tasks. For more about this, see "The SystemUser Account" on page 132.

DataCurator   The DataCurator account is the account you should use for day-to-day administration tasks. Initially, DataCurator is granted all

privileges and belongs to all predefined groups All GemStone UserProfiles are part of the DataCurator Segment.

GcUser   The GcUser account is a special account that logs in to the repository to perform garbage collection tasks. Initially, GcUser has only the GarbageCollection privilege and belongs only to group Subscribers.

SymbolUser   The SymbolUser account is a special account that is used to perform symbol creation tasks. Initially, SymbolUser has only the **GarbageCollection** privilege and belongs only to group **Subscribers**. Under normal circumstances, you should never need to log in as SymbolUser.

Nameless   The Nameless account is a special account for use only by other GemStone products. Do not use this account or change it unless instructed to do so by GemStone.

For more information about AllUsers and other predefined system objects, see Appendix D, "GemStone Kernel Objects."

The SystemUser Account

SystemUser is a special user, analogous to `root` in UNIX. SystemUser has all privileges, belongs to all predefined groups, and is authorized to read and write all segments. These privileges cannot be taken away, so even if SystemUser is not a member of a specific group, a session logged in as SystemUser is still able to write to that group's segment, no matter what permissions are set on that segment. SystemUser is the only user in a GemStone system that "breaks the rules" in this way. All other users have only the privileges that you give them.

SystemUser should **only** be used when performing administration tasks that cannot be performed by DataCurator. Normally, the only tasks that require SystemUser login are installation or upgrade of GemStone products.

If you accidentally create objects in SystemSegment, you can move them into their proper segment by sending each object the message `#changeToSegment:`. To do this, you will need to log in as SystemUser.

You cannot disable the SystemUser and DataCurator accounts. Also, their sessions do not expire.

The UserProfile and Session Symbol Lists

As explained in the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit*, the GemStone Smalltalk compiler follows a well-defined path in looking for the objects named by

source code symbols (variable names). First, the compiler considers the possibility that a variable name might be either local (a temporary variable or an argument) or defined by the class of the current method definition (an instance variable, a class variable, or a pool variable). If a variable is none of these, the compiler refers to an Array of SymbolDictionaries in the user's UserProfile and current session state. That Array is called the user's *symbol list.* The symbol list tells Smalltalk which of many possible GemStone SymbolDictionaries to search for an object named in a Smalltalk program. (The predefined SymbolDictionaries are described later.)

For each session, a persistent instance of class SymbolList is stored in the repository and is referenced from the UserProfile associated with this session as the symbolList instance variable. In addition, a transient copy of that SymbolList is stored in the GsCurrentSession object for the logged-in session.

A session's transient copy can be modified without affecting (or causing concurrency conflicts with) either the persistent symbol list or the transient copies controlling other sessions. Changes to your own UserProfile's persistent symbol list also change the symbol resolution of your current session. However, changes to the persistent symbol list are likely to cause concurrency conflicts with other sessions logged in under the same userId. For further information about symbol lists and the GsCurrentSession object, refer to the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit.*

The UserGlobals SymbolDictionary

When you set up a new UserProfile, GemStone automatically creates a new SymbolDictionary for the user's private symbols and inserts it as the first element in the symbol list. This new *UserGlobals* SymbolDictionary initially contains the following keys:

- `#UserGlobals`—the UserGlobals dictionary itself (as the value).

- `#NativeLanguage` —The user's native language, in which GemStone will deliver error messages and dates. Of course, the necessary dictionaries in that language must be created and installed for this to happen. When you add a new GemStone user, the initial `#NativeLanguage` value is `#English`. (For more information, see the discussion of error handling in the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit.*)

The UserGlobals dictionary will also contain entries that define the user's private objects (for example, test data and new classes that will not be shared with other GemStone users).

The Globals SymbolDictionary

The second element in each user's initial symbol list is a "system globals" SymbolDictionary, ordinarily called *Globals*. This dictionary contains all of the GemStone Smalltalk kernel classes (Object, Class, Collection, and so forth). Although users can read the objects in Globals, ordinarily they cannot modify objects in that Dictionary. For more information about the Globals Dictionary, see Appendix D, "GemStone Kernel Objects."

The Published SymbolDictionary

The third and final element in each user's initial symbol list is a SymbolDictionary for application objects that are "published" to all users. Users who are members of the group Publishers can place objects in this dictionary to make them visible to other users. Using the Published dictionary lets you share these objects without having to put them in Globals, which contains the GemStone kernel classes, and without the necessity of adding a special dictionary to each user's symbolList instance variable.

Sharing Objects

As described above, the Globals dictionary provides all GemStone users with access to such objects as the kernel classes Integer and Collection. If you want GemStone users to share other objects as well, you need to arrange for references to those objects to be added to the users' symbol lists. There are three primary ways to do this:

- As a member of group Publishers, you can add the objects to the Published dictionary. This dictionary is already in each user's symbol list, so whatever you add becomes visible to users the next time they obtain a fresh transaction view of the repository. If you are using the GemBuilder administration tools, the procedure is similar to that described on page 145 for copying a dictionary, except that you select an object in the **Entries** pane and choose **Edit** > **Copy Entry**. If you are using Topaz, send the message `Published at:` *aKey* `put:` *aValue*.

- You can have users add a special dictionary, such as an application dictionary, to their own symbol list. The procedure is described under "To Add a Dictionary to a Symbol List" on pages 145 and 159.

- The application itself can add the objects to the individual user's symbol list, either to the permanent symbol list in the UserProfile or to a transient symbol list for that session. For information about this approach, refer to the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit*.

Make sure that the SymbolDictionaries in each user's symbol list include the names of all objects the user might need. For example, you might add each member of a programming team to group Publishers. After completing the definition of a new class, a programmer could make the class available to colleagues by adding it to the Published dictionary.

For more information, refer to the chapter on symbol resolution and object sharing in the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit*.

5.4 Using GemBuilder for Administration

Performing GemStone system administration from GemBuilder for Smalltalk involves these steps:

1. Start GemBuilder and open the GemStone Session Browser. Log in as described below.

    To start GemBuilder, it must have been properly installed in your Smalltalk image according to the instructions in your *GemBuilder Installation Guide*.

2. In the **GemStone** menu, choose one of the GemBuilder browsers or tools from the **Admin** menu.

3. Using the tools, administer user accounts or assign segment authorizations for security purposes.

4. When you finish, remember to commit your transaction so that it becomes a permanent part of the repository.

The following sections describe this series of steps more fully.

Logging in Through GemBuilder

1. To open a GemStone Session Browser, choose **Tools** > **Session Browser** from the **GemStone** menu.

    > *NOTE*
    > *The appearance of your GemStone Session Browser may vary somewhat*
    > *from the illustrations shown here.*

2. In the Session Browser (Figure 5.1), click **Add**.

3. When the GemStone Login Editor appears (Figure 5.2), fill in the session parameters. For example:

GemStone repository	`gs64stone`
GemStone username	`DataCurator`
GemStone password	(*type the DataCurator password*)

Then click **OK**.

4. To log in, select the name of the session in the upper left pane of the Session Browser (Figure 5.1). Then click **Login Link** or **Login RPC**.

For complete information about GemBuilder, see the GemBuilder for Smalltalk manual.

Figure 5.1   The GemStone Session Browser
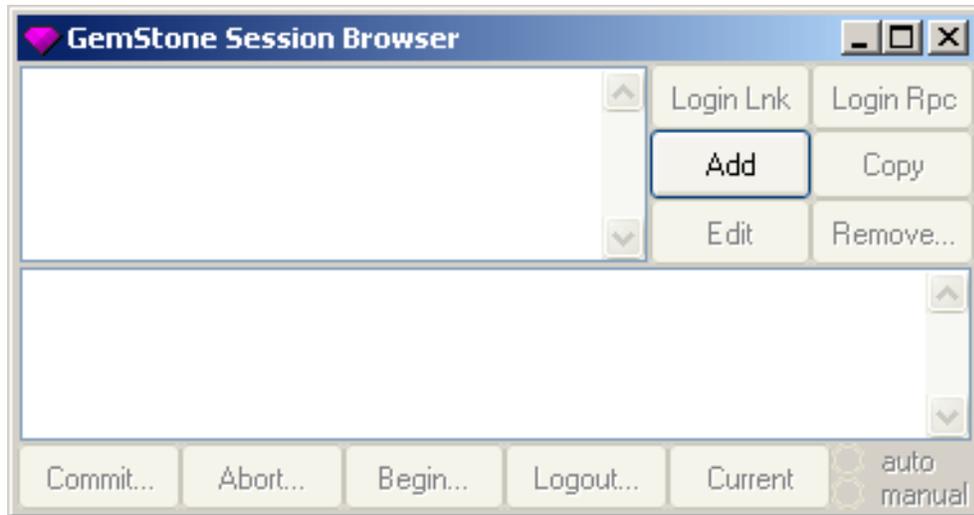
Figure 5.2   The Login Editor

Finding the GemBuilder Administration Tools

Once you have successfully logged in to GemStone, you can select any of the GemBuilder browsers or tools from the **GemStone** menu and begin working with the repository.

Figure 5.3 (page 139) shows the tools that are available through the **Admin** menu:

* The **Users** tool lets you examine, modify, and delete existing accounts or create new ones. You select a user account in the GemStone User List dialog. The GemStone User and Privileges dialogs show the UserProfile for the selected account.

* **Symbol Lists** lets you examine and modify the name space of a particular user. You can use the SymbolList Browser to add and delete dictionaries from the user's SymbolList, as well as examine and modify the entries in the dictionaries that make up the SymbolList.

* **Segments** lets you create segments and set their authorizations. Segments provide the means for managing GemStone authorization at the object level by assigning objects to segments that have appropriate authorization characteristics.

Committing Your Changes

Remember to commit your changes to the repository. To commit your changes, do one of the following:

* Click the **Commit** button in the Session Browser (Figure 5.1 on page 136).

* Choose **Commit** from the **File** menu of the administration tools, as shown in Figure 5.3.

If you log out after performing work and do not commit it to the permanent repository, the uncommitted work is lost.

Logging Out

To log out of GemStone from the Session Browser (Figure 5.1), select your session in the browser's lower pane, then click **Logout**. When you log out, GemBuilder prompts you to commit your changes.

Figure 5.3   The GemBuilder Administration Tools
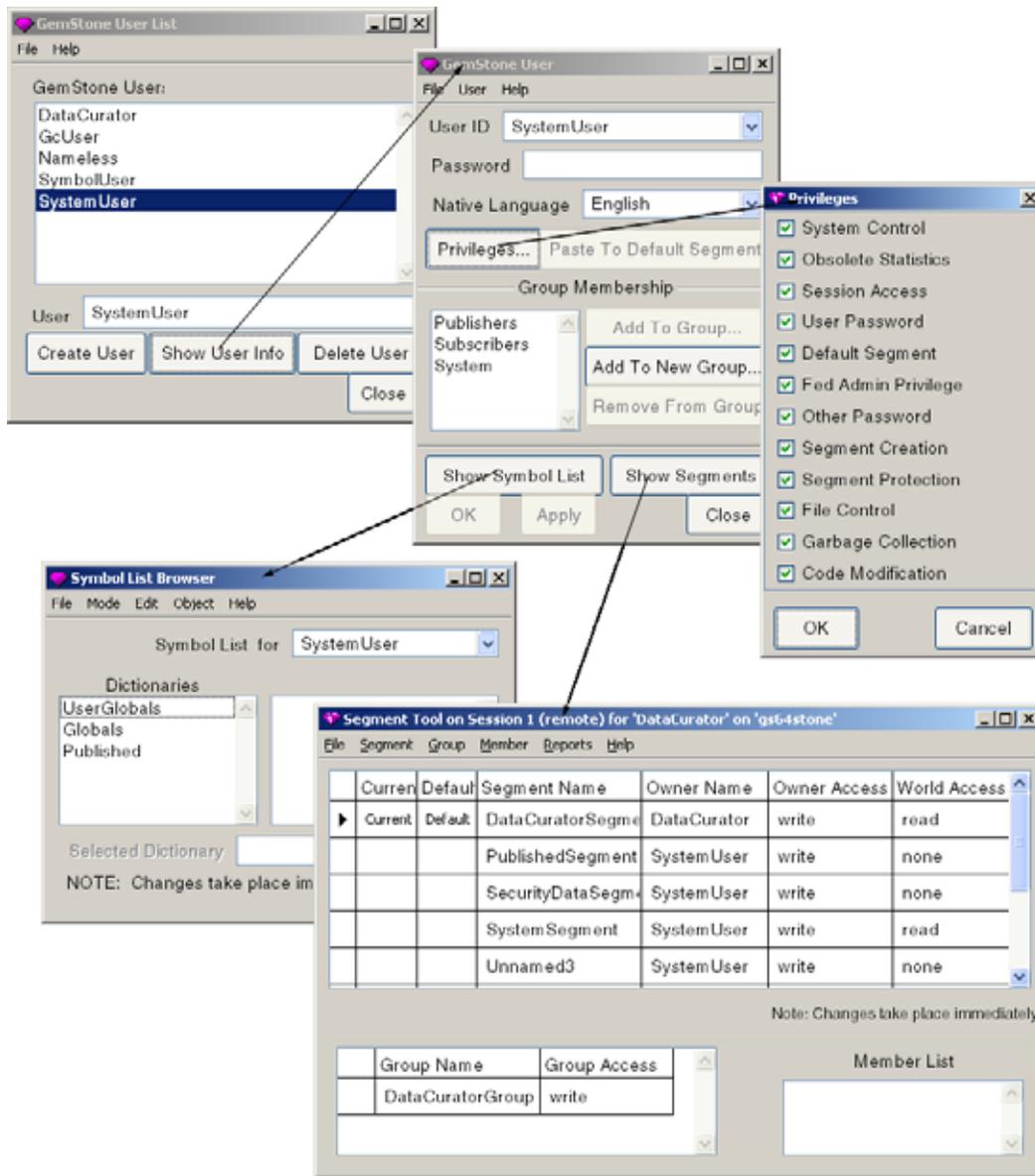
Administering User Accounts

You can use the GemBuilder administration tools to create user accounts (UserProfiles) and examine, modify, and remove existing accounts. Most of these tasks use the GemStone User List (left side of Figure 5.4) to open a GemStone User dialog for a particular user (right side of Figure 5.4).

Follow these general steps for most tasks described in this section:

Step 1. In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Admin > Users**.

Step 2. When the user list appears, select the UserId, then click **Show User Info**.

Step 3. When the GemStone User dialog appears, carry out the steps in the specific procedures that follow.

Step 4. When you are finished, click **OK** or **Apply**.

Step 5. Remember to commit your transaction before logging out.

Figure 5.4   GemBuilder Tools for Accessing User Profiles
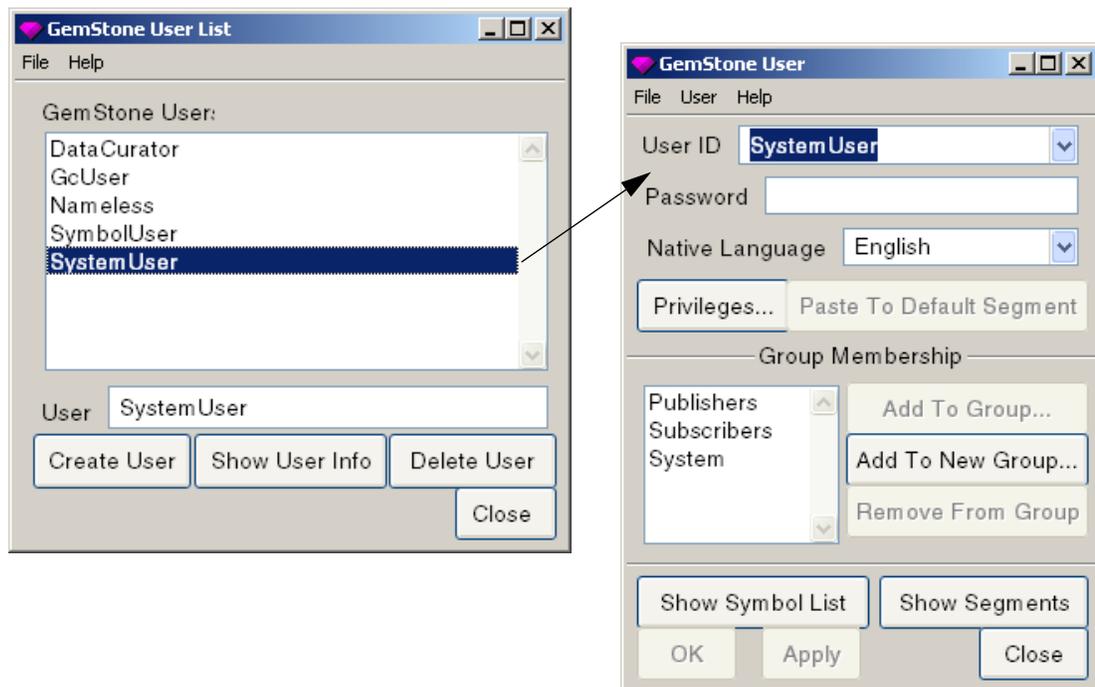
To List Existing Users

Privileges required: None.

In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Admin > Users**. The resulting GemStone User dialog lists all users defined in the repository.

For a list of users that includes each user's group memberships, choose **Admin > Segments** from the **GemStone** menu. When the Segment Tool appears, choose **User Report** from the **Reports** menu.

To Add a User

Privileges required: #OtherPassword privilege and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

When you add a user, the GemStone User dialog creates a new UserProfile object and stores it with other UserProfiles in the global object AllUsers (a UserProfileSet). By default, the new UserProfile has no segment, no privileges and no group membership.

Step 1. In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Admin > Users**.

Step 2. When the GemStone User List (Figure 5.4 on page 140) appears, click the **Create User** button.

Step 3. When an empty GemStone User dialog appears, enter the **User ID**.

Step 4. If you enter a **Password**, it will not be echoed, but you will be asked to verify it. If you do not enter a password, it will be set to "gemstone". The password must not be the same as the UserId and must not be longer than 1024 characters.

Step 5. You can also set privileges and group membership at this time. These operations are described on page 144 and page 147, respectively.

Step 6. Click **OK** when you are finished, or click **Apply** if you want to add another user.

Step 7. Choose **Commit** from the **File** menu.

Step 8. Set up the user's environment, as explained next.

To Set Up the User's Environment

In addition to adding the UserProfile, you should make sure that each new user has the GEMSTONE environment variable defined so that it points to the

installation directory. Each user also must know how to execute `$GEMSTONE/bin/gemsetup` as described under "To Start a Linked Session" on page 109, or must be able to perform similar functions within an initialization file.

Users may need to belong to the same UNIX group as the Stone repository monitor process so that they can access the GemStone extents and shared page cache. For further information, see "To Set File Permissions for the Server" on page 30.

Depending on your site requirements and the applications that they are running, users may need to set one or more of the following environment variables:

- GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF and GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF, which can point to customized configuration files for specific GemStone servers and user sessions. For general information, see "Creating or Using a System Configuration File" on page 372.

- GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL, which can set a number of network-related defaults, including the type of user authentication that GemStone expects. For further information, see "To Set a Default NRS" on page 79.

- GEMSTONE_LOG, which can set the location of system log files for the Stone repository monitor and its child processes. For further information, see "GemStone Server Logs" on page 208.

- GEMBUILDER, which points to the directory where GemBuilder is installed. See the documentation for your version of GemBuilder for details about the need for this or other environment variables.

Users may require write access to their home directory in order to create `.netrc` files and certain log files. At sites where such access is not permitted, refer to "How to Arrange Network Security" on page 73 and to the discussion of GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL on page 79.

To Remove a User

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization in the segment of
AllUsers.

When you delete a user's account, the Users tool removes the UserProfile from
AllUsers and puts the UserProfile in your UserGlobals as
*oldUserID*_userProfile so that objects owned by the former user can still be
accessed. That user's persistent SymbolList is saved in your UserGlobals as
*oldUserID*_symbolList. If you remove the UserProfile and SymbolList, the
objects may be discarded.

Step 1. In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Admin > Users**.

Step 2. When the GemStone User List (Figure 5.4 on page 140) appears, select the
UserId.

Step 3. Click **Delete User**. You will be asked to confirm the action. If you proceed,
the old UserProfile and SymbolList will be saved in your UserGlobals.

Step 4. Remember to commit your transaction before logging out.

To Change a Password

Privileges required: UserPassword to change your own password; OtherPassword to change another user's password.

The new password will take effect on the next login after you commit the current transaction.

Your choice of passwords for your own account may be subject to optional constraints as to pattern and the use of certain words. For information, ask your system administrator or see "How to Configure GemStone Login Security" on page 167.

Step 1. In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Admin > Users**.

Step 2. When the GemStone User List (Figure 5.4 on page 140) appears, select the UserId, then click **Show User Info**.

Step 3. Enter the new password in the GemStone User dialog, then press Tab or Return. The password must not be the same as the UserId and must not be longer than 1024 characters.

Step 4. When the verification window appears, enter the new password again.

Step 5. Choose **OK** or **Apply**. If you are changing your own password, you will be asked to enter the old password.

Step 6. Remember to commit your transaction before logging out.

To Change a User's Privileges

Privileges required: write authorization to the segment of the user's UserProfile; OtherPassword.

The new privileges will take effect when you commit the current transaction.

Step 1. In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Admin > Users**.

Step 2. When the GemStone User List (Figure 5.4 on page 140) appears, select the UserId, then click **Show User Info**.

Step 3. In the GemStone User dialog, click the **Privileges** button.

Step 4. When the Privileges dialog (Figure 5.5) appears, click on the check boxes to toggle each privilege that you want to change.

Step 5. Click **OK** when you are finished.

Step 6. Remember to commit your transaction before logging out.

Figure 5.5   The Privileges Dialog

To Add a Dictionary to a Symbol List

Privileges required: To add a SymbolDictionary to your own symbol list, CodeModification. To add a SymbolDictionary to another user's symbol list, OtherPassword privilege and write permission to the segment of the other user's SymbolDictionary.

You can copy a dictionary from one symbol list and add it to a different user's persistent symbol list by using the Symbol List Browser. The change does not affect

the transient copy of the symbol list that is used by another currently logged-in session until that session commits or aborts.

Step 1. In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Admin > Symbol Lists**.

Step 2. When the Symbol List Browser appears, open **Symbol List for** and select a userId that already has the dictionary in its symbol list. See Figure 5.6.

Step 3. In the **Dictionaries** pane, select the dictionary you want to copy. Then choose **Edit > Copy Dict**.

Step 4. Open **Symbol List for** again. This time, choose the userId where you want to add the dictionary.

Step 5. When the symbol list for that user appears, choose **Edit > Paste Dict**.

Step 6. Remember to commit your transaction before logging out.

Figure 5.6   The Symbol List Browser

To Examine a User's Group Memberships

No privileges are required for this operation.

Step 1. In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Admin > Users**.

Step 2. When the GemStone User List (Figure 5.4 on page 140) appears, select the UserId, then click **Show User Info**.

Step 3. The selected user's group memberships are listed in the GemStone User dialog.

To Add a User to a Group

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of the users's UserProfile.

You can use the GemStone User dialog to add group membership for a particular user:

- If the group already exists in the repository, click **Add To Group** in the GemStone User dialog. Then choose the group name in the list that appears.

- If the group does not yet exist in the repository, click **Add To New Group** in the GemStone User dialog. Then enter the name in the dialog box that appears.

To Remove a User from a Group

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of the users's UserProfile.

You can use the GemStone User dialog to remove group membership for a particular user.

Select the group name in the list of group memberships, then click **Remove From Group**. When you're done, click either **OK** or **Apply**.

Administering Segment Authorizations

This section tells how to administer segments using GemBuilder's Segment Tool.

To Find Out Who Is Authorized to Read or Write in a Segment

Privileges required: read authorization for the segment with which this segment itself is associated, such as the DataCurator Segment.

Each segment maintains access authorization for its owner, the world, and an unlimited number of groups. There are three levels of access: none, read-only, and write (which includes read access).

Step 1. In the **GemStone** menu, choose **Tools > Segment Tool** to bring up the Segment Tool, Figure 5.7. (You can also access this tool by choosing **Show Segments** in a GemStone User dialog.)

Step 2. In the Segment Tool, choose **Reports > Segment Report**. The report lists the owner, world, and group authorizations for each segment.

Step 3. To view the members of a particular group, choose **Reports > Group Report**. To view the groups to which each user belongs, choose **Reports > User Report**.

Figure 5.7   The Segment Tool
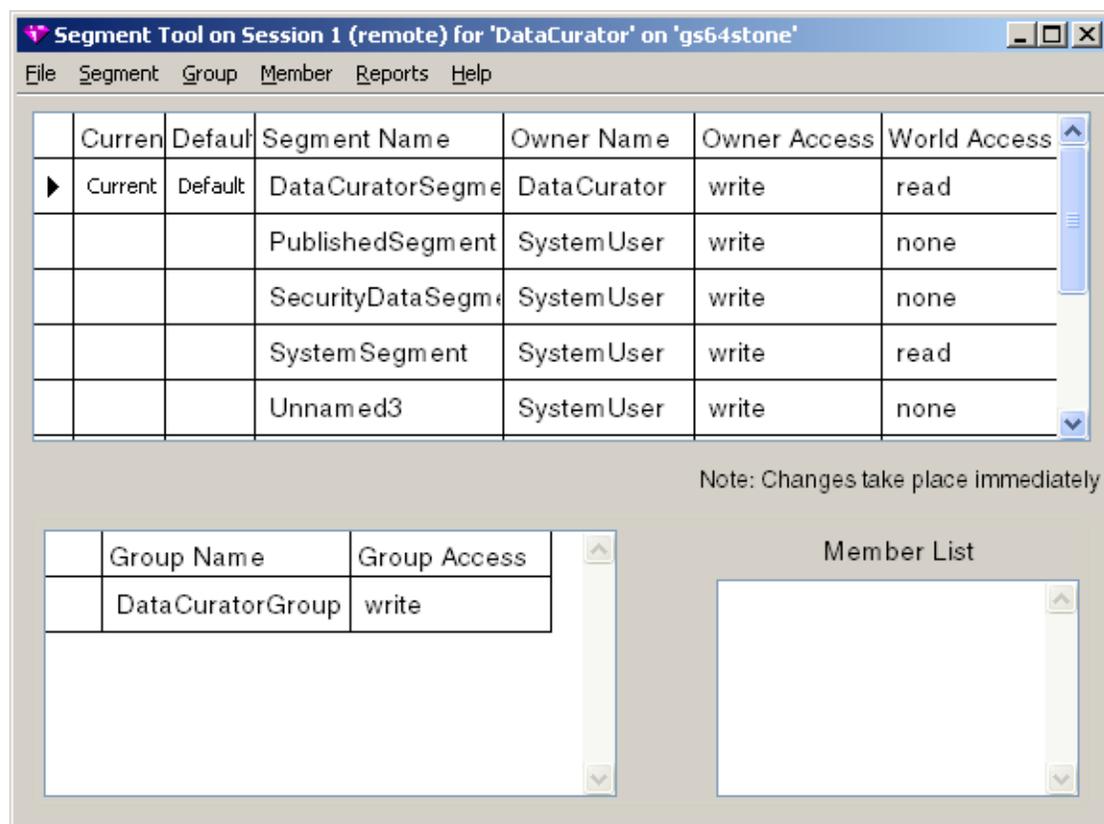
To Change the Authorization of a Segment

Privileges required: SegmentProtection or be the segment's owner, and write authorization to the DataCurator segment.

Each segment maintains access authorization for its owner, the world, and an unlimited number of groups. There are three levels of access: none, read-only, and write (which includes read access).

The new authorization will take effect for logins following the commit of the current transaction.

Step 1. In the GemStone menu, choose **Segments** to bring up the Segment Tool, Figure 5.7. (You can also access this tool by choosing **Show Segments** in a GemStone User dialog.)

The top half of the dialog shows the owner, the owner's access, and the world access for each segment in the repository.

Step 2. To change owner or world access, select the existing permission you want to change. Then enter a new permission ("read", "write", or "none").

Step 3. To set up or change group access to this segment, do the following:

❒ Make sure the segment is selected in the top half of the tool. If necessary, click in the first column of the segment's row.

❒ To add a group to the authorization list for this segment, choose **Add** from the **Group** menu. Enter the group name in the dialog box that appears. If the group does not exist in the repository, you will be asked to confirm its creation.

❒ To remove a group from the authorization list, first select the group by clicking in the first column of the **Group Name** list. Then choose **Remove** from the **Group** menu. You will asked to confirm the action.

❒ To change the type of access for a particular group, first select that group in the **Group Name** list and select the existing permission. Then enter the new permission ("read" or "write").

❒ To add a member to a group that has access to this segment, first select that group in the groups list. Then choose **Add** from the **Member** menu. Enter the UserId and choose **OK**. (A UserProfile with that UserId must already exist in the repository.)

❒ To remove a member from a group that has access to this segment, select the UserId in the member list and choose **Remove** from the **Member** menu. You will be asked to confirm the action.

Step 4. Remember to commit your transaction before logging out. A convenient way to do that is by choosing **Commit** from this tool's **File** menu.

To Change a User's Default Segment

Privileges required: DefaultSegment to change your own, or write authorization in the DataCurator Segment to change another's; and write authorization to the DataCurator segment.

Changes to another user's default segment do not take effect until the next login.

To change your own default segment:

Step 1. Open the Segment Tool by choosing **Tools > Segment Tool** in the **GemStone** menu.

Step 2. Select the desired segment by clicking in its first column. Then choose **Segment > Make Default**. (Alternatively, you can type the @ symbol in front of the segment name.)

To change someone else's default segment:

Step 1. In the GemStone User dialog, choose **Show Segments**.

Step 2. When the Segment Tool appears, select the desired segment by clicking in the first column. Choose **Segment > Grab**.

Step 3. Return to the GemStone User dialog. Choose **Paste To Default Segment**.

Step 4. Choose **OK** or **Apply**.

NOTE
If you change any user's default segment (including your own) to a segment for which that user lacks write authorization, and you subsequently commit the transaction, the affected user will no longer be able to log in to GemStone.

Step 5. Remember to commit your transaction before logging out.

5.5 Using Topaz for Administration

Performing system administration tasks using Topaz involves three steps:

1. Start Topaz and log in to GemStone.

2. Use the Topaz **printit** command to execute Smalltalk expressions.

3. Use the Topaz **commit** command to make your work a permanent part of the GemStone repository.

> *NOTE*
> *You must commit your changes to the repository in order to make them permanent.*

Logging in Through Topaz

To start Topaz, enter:

```
% topaz -l
```

Topaz announces itself with a banner:

```
_____
|          GemStone/S64 Object-Oriented Data Management System               |
|             Copyright (C) GemStone Systems, Inc. 1986-2008.                 |
|                          All rights reserved.                              |
|     covered by Patent Number 6,567,905 Generational Garbage Collector.     |
+----------------------------------------------------------------------------+
|    PROGRAM: topaz, Linear GemStone Interface (Remote Session)              |
|    VERSION: 2.2.0, Fri Mar 23 16:54:03 US/Pacific 2007                     |
|      BUILD: gss64_2_3_x_branch-19151                                       |
|  BUILT FOR: SPARC (Solaris)                                                |
|       MODE: 64 bit                                                         |
| RUNNING ON: 2-CPU handel sun4u (Solaris 2.9 Generic_117171-08) 400MHz      |
| sparcv9,2048MB                                                             |
| PROCESS ID: 3596      DATE: 07/26/08 15:30:39 PDT                          |
|   USER IDS: REAL=gsuser (531) EFFECTIVE=gsuser (531)                       |
|_____|
```

Next, set three parameters that allow you to log in to the repository: the name of your GemStone repository monitor, your GemStone user name, and your GemStone password. Use the Topaz **set** command to establish these parameters.

For example:

```
topaz> set gemstone gs64stone
topaz> set username DataCurator
topaz> set password
GemStone Password?  (type your GemStone password)
topaz> login
[Info]: LNK client/gem GCI levels = 801/801
[Info]: User ID: SystemUser
[Info]: Repository: gs64stone
[Info]: Session ID: 5
[Info]: GCI Client Host: <Linked>
[Info]: Page server PID: -1
[Info]: Login Time: 06/24/08 15:04:10 PDT
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1>
```

The session number in the topaz prompt ("topaz 1>") is a reminder that you are logged in to a GemStone session. If you log in to additional sessions, the number in the prompt shows which session is active.

If you want to return to your host operating system from Topaz without terminating your GemStone session, use the Topaz **spawn** command. When the operating system prompt appears, you can execute system commands. When you're finished, type **exit**. You can then resume your GemStone work from within Topaz.

The Printit Command

The **printit** command sends text following the command to GemStone for execution as Smalltalk code, and displays the results. (The **run** command does the same thing.) If there is an error in your code, Topaz displays an error message instead of a legitimate result.

Smalltalk text is terminated by the first line that contains a % symbol in column 1. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
2 + 2
%
4
```

For complete information about Topaz commands, see the *GemStone Topaz Programming Environment* manual. You can also use the **help** command at the Topaz prompt.

The Commit Command

The **commit** command ends the current transaction and stores your changes in the repository.

NOTE
*Always remember to commit changes you want to become persistent. Your changes are not part of the repository (and therefore not visible to subsequent sessions) until you issue the Smalltalk message **System commitTransaction** or invoke the Topaz **commit** command.*

Administering User Accounts

This section explains how to create user accounts (UserProfiles) and how to examine, modify, and remove existing accounts using Topaz. Most of these tasks explicitly access UserProfiles in the global object AllUsers.

To List Existing Users

Privileges required: None.

There is no direct method within GemStone Smalltalk to list only the names of existing accounts. The following example shows one way to obtain that information:

```
topaz 1> level 1
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers collect: [:each | each userId ].
%
an IdentityBag
  _varyingSize     5
  _numEntries      5
  _indexedPaths    nil
  _levels          0
  #1 DataCurator
  #2 SystemUser
  #3 SymbolUser
  #4 GcUser
  #5 Nameless
```

To Add a User

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

This section shows how to create a new GemStone UserProfile object. The new UserProfile is stored in the global object AllUsers (a UserProfileSet), along with all other UserProfiles.

NOTE
You must add each new user to AllUsers.

In addition to creating the new UserProfile, you should also see that each user's UNIX environment is set up to provide access to GemStone. That discussion is on page 141.

GemStone Smalltalk provides two methods for adding a user. The simplified form requires only a UserId and a password. The complete form also allows you to set the user's privileges and group memberships.

Without Privileges or Groups

You can use the simplified form to create a new user with no privileges or group memberships.

In the following example, you must supply the new user's userId and password (each as a String). The password must not be the same as the UserId and must not be longer than 1024 characters.

This method creates and commits a new segment and makes this the default segment for the new user.

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers addNewUserWithId: 'theUserId'
     password: 'thePassword'.
"commit the new UserProfile"
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Assign Privileges and Group Memberships

Using the complete form allows you to assign privileges to the new user and add the user to groups.

Execute the following expression:

```
AllUsers addNewUserWithId: 'theUserId'
    password: 'thePassword'
    defaultSegment: nil
    privileges: anArrayOfPrivStrings
    inGroups: aCollectionOfGroupStrings
```

You must supply the new user's UserId and Password, and specify any privileges or group memberships. The password must not be the same as the UserId and must not be longer than 1024 characters.

For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers addNewUserWithId: 'Mary'
    password: 'herPasswd'
    defaultSegment: nil
    privileges: #( 'UserPassword' )
    inGroups: #( 'MarathonRunners' ).
"commit the new UserProfile"
System commitTransaction.
%
```

For more information about privileges, see the discussion entitled "UserProfiles" on page 127.

To Change Your Own Password

Privileges required: UserPassword.

Your choice of passwords for your own account may be subject to optional constraints as to pattern and the use of certain words. For information, ask your system administrator or see "How to Configure GemStone Login Security" on page 167.

To modify your own GemStone password, execute the following expression. The new password will take effect when you commit the current transaction. The

password must not be the same as the UserId and must not be longer than 1024 characters.

```
topaz 1> printit
System myUserProfile
      oldPassword:'oldPasswordString'
      newPassword:'newPasswordString' .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Change Another User's Password

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

To modify the password of a GemStone user (other than your own), execute the following expression.

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId')
      password: 'newPasswordString' .
System commitTransaction
%
```

The new password takes effect when you commit the current transaction.

The password set by this method is not subject to the constraints described on page 167 because it can only be set by a user having the OtherPassword privilege. The password must not be the same as the UserId and must not be longer than 1024 characters.

Each password change of this type is noted in the GemStone security log, which currently is the Stone's log file. The entry includes the userId of the session making the change but not the new password.

To Examine a User's Privileges

No privileges are required for this operation.

GemStone provides messages that allow you to determine which privileged methods a GemStone user may execute, and to change the privileges of any user. Naturally, you need the appropriate privileges to use those methods.

To find out which privileged methods a given user is permitted to execute, first make sure that the Topaz display level is sufficient to display that information. The Topaz display level determines the amount of detail that appears in the results of

Smalltalk execution. Use the Topaz **level** command to raise the level to at least 1, so that privileges information will be displayed:

```
topaz 1> level 1
```

Now send the following message to the desired user's UserProfile:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId') privileges
%
```

This message returns an Array of Strings. Each String in the Array corresponds to one of the user's privileges. Table 5.1 (on page 129) lists the Smalltalk methods that correspond to each privilege.

To Assign a Privilege to a User

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of the user's UserProfile.

The new privileges will take effect when you commit the current transaction.

To add to a user's existing privileges, execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId')
      addPrivilege: aPrivilegeString .
System commitTransaction
%
```

Here's an example that assigns three new privileges to user Bob:

```
(AllUsers userWithId: 'Bob')
      addPrivilege: 'SystemControl';
      addPrivilege: 'SessionAccess';
      addPrivilege: 'UserPassword' .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Revoke a User's Privilege

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of the user's UserProfile.

The privileges will be revoked when you commit the current transaction.

To revoke one (or more) of a user's existing privileges, execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId')
      deletePrivilege: aPrivilegeString .
System commitTransaction
%
```

The following example revokes three of user Jane's privileges:

```
(AllUsers userWithId: 'Jane')
      deletePrivilege: 'SystemControl';
      deletePrivilege: 'SessionAccess';
      deletePrivilege: 'UserPassword' .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Redefine a User's Privileges

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of the user's UserProfile.

The new privileges will take effect when you commit the current transaction.

To redefine a user's privileges, perhaps adding some and revoking others, execute the following expression:

```
(AllUsers userWithId: theUserId) privileges: anArrayOfStrings
```

This expression supersedes any previous privilege assignments. After the change is committed, only those privileges listed in the expression are valid for the user. Any privileges that were previously valid, but are not listed, are revoked.

For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'Sam') privileges:
      #( 'UserPassword' ) .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Add a SymbolDictionary to Your Own Symbol List

Privileges required: CodeModification.

You can add a dictionary to a symbol list by sending the message UserProfile>>insertDictionary: *aSymbolDictionary* at: *anIndex*. The

change does not affect the transient copy of the symbol list that is used by another currently logged in session until that session commits or aborts.

This example inserts dictionary NewDict (which already exists in the Published dictionary) into the user's own symbol list:

```
topaz 1> printit
System myUserProfile
      insertDictionary: NewDict at: 2 .
System commitTransaction
%
```

Inserting the new dictionary at index 2, as in the example, places it between the UserGlobals and the Globals dictionaries in the search order. Because symbol resolution depends on the order of dictionaries in a user's symbol list, the index used in this example may not be appropriate for all situations.

To Add a SymbolDictionary to Someone Else's Symbol List

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write permission to the segment of the other user's SymbolDictionary.

This example inserts dictionary NewDict (which already exists in the Published dictionary) into user Jerry's symbol list:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'Jerry')
      insertDictionary: NewDict at: 7 .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Remove a SymbolDictionary from Your Own Symbol List

Privileges required: CodeModification.

You can remove a dictionary from a symbol list by sending the message UserProfile>>removeDictionary: *aSymbolDictionary*. The change does not affect the transient copy of the symbol list that is used by another currently logged in session until that session commits or aborts.

This example removes dictionary OldDict from the user's own symbol list:

```
topaz 1> printit
System myUserProfile
      removeDictionary: OldDict .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Remove a SymbolDictionary from Someone Else's Symbol List

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write permission to the segment of the other user's SymbolDictionary,

This example removes dictionary OldDict from user Jerry's symbol list:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'Jerry')
      removeDictionary: OldDict .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Examine a User's Group Memberships

No privileges are required for this operation.

To find out which groups a user belongs to, first make sure that the Topaz display level is sufficient to display that information. Use the Topaz **level** command to raise the level to at least 1, so that group membership information will be displayed:

```
topaz 1> level 1
```

Now execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId') groups
%
```

This expression returns a Set of Strings indicating the groups to which the user belongs.

To Add a User to a Group

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

To add a user to a group, do the following:

```
topaz 1> printit
" If this is a new group, add it to the
  'master list' AllGroups "
('MarathonRunners' in: AllGroups)
      ifFalse: [AllGroups add: 'MarathonRunners' ].
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId') addGroup: 'MarathonRunners'.
System commitTransaction
%
```

This expression adds the user to the group MarathonRunners by adding the group name to the list of groups maintained in the UserProfile. (This action takes effect when you commit the current transaction.)

If the group MarathonRunners did not previously exist, this expression creates it in AllGroups (the "master list" of all group names). See Appendix D, "GemStone Kernel Objects," for more information about AllGroups and other predefined system objects.

To Remove a User from a Group

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

To remove a user from a group, execute an expression of the following form:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId') removeGroup: 'Sprinters' .
System commitTransaction
%
```

This expression removes the designated group from the list of groups to which the user belongs. This action will take effect when you commit the current transaction. For more information about groups, see the Security chapter of the *Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit*.

To List All Members of a Group

No privileges are required for this operation.

To list all members of a user group, first make sure that the Topaz display level is sufficient to display that information. Use the Topaz **level** command to raise the level to at least 1, so that group membership information will be displayed:

```
topaz 1> level 1
```

Now execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers membersOfGroup: aString
%
```

This expression returns an IdentitySet containing the userId for each member of the group.

To Remove a User Group

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

To remove a user group from the global object AllGroups, execute the following expression. (You do not need to enter the comments, which are within double quotes.)

```
topaz 1> printit
| theGroup |
theGroup := aGroupString .
" Does the group still contain any members? If so, first
remove each member from the group "
(AllUsers usersInGroup: theGroup) do:
        [:aUserProfile| aUserProfile removeGroup: theGroup].
" It's OK to remove the group itself "
AllGroups remove: theGroup .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Modify Someone's User ID

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

The new user ID will take effect when you commit the current transaction.

To modify the user ID of a GemStone user (other than your own), execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId') userId: 'newId' .
%
```

An error is raised if *newId* is the userId of an existing UserProfile.

To Remove an Account

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

The global object AllUsers (a UserProfileSet) serves as the master list of all authorized GemStone users. When you need to cancel a user's access to GemStone, you can simply move that user's UserProfile from AllUsers to a UserProfileSet called OldUsers, which contains all obsolete UserProfiles. Any objects owned by members of OldUsers remain intact, but their owners can no longer access the repository.

First, verify that OldUsers already exists:

```
topaz 1> object OldUsers
```

If OldUsers already exists, Topaz will print some information about it (depending upon the current display level). If OldUsers does **not** already exist, Topaz will issue a message of the form could not find an object named OldUsers. To create OldUsers, execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
UserGlobals at: #OldUsers put: UserProfileSet new
%
```

Now add the obsolete UserProfile to OldUsers, then delete it from AllUsers:

```
topaz 1> printit
OldUsers add: (AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId').
AllUsers remove: (AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId')
      ifAbsent: [] .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To subsequently access any objects owned by the former user, you can refer to (OldUsers userWithId: '*theUserId*') wherever you would refer to an active UserProfile.

To Disable Commits from a User

Privileges required: OtherPassword. Commits cannot be disabled for system accounts (SystemUser, DataCurator, GcUser, SymbolUser, and Nameless).

To disable commits for a user, execute the following expression:

```
(AllUsers userWithId: theUserId) disableCommits
```

This expression disables any commits for the given user, beginning with the next login of the user after the session making this change commits. It does not affect the user's current transaction, if any.

For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'Sam') disableCommits.
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Re-enable Commits for a User

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

To enable commits for a user, execute the following expression:

(AllUsers userWithId: *theUserId***) enableCommits**

This expression enables commits for the given user, beginning with the next login attempt after the session making this change commits.

To Determine if a User can Commit

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

To test if commits have been disabled for a user account, execute the following expression:

(AllUsers userWithId: *theUserId***) isReadOnly**

Administering Segment Authorizations

This section tells how to administer segments using Topaz.

To Find Out Who Is Authorized to Read or Write in a Segment

Privileges required: read authorization for the segment with which this segment is associated, such as the DataCurator Segment.

Each segment maintains access authorization for its owner, the world, and an unlimited number of groups. There are three levels of authorization: none, read (read-only), and write (which includes read permission).

You can find out who is authorized to read or write objects in a segment by sending it the message asString. For instance:

```
topaz 1> printit
PublishedSegment asString
%
aSegment, Number 5 in Repository SystemRepository
Owner SystemUser write
Group Subscribers read
Group Publishers write
World none
```

To Change the Authorization of a Segment

Privileges required: SegmentProtection or be the segment's owner, and write authorization to the DataCurator segment.

Each segment maintains access authorization for its owner, the world, and an unlimited number of groups. There are three authorization symbols: #none, #read (read-only), and #write (which includes read permission).

The new authorization will take effect for logins following the commit of the current transaction.

> *CAUTION*
> *Do not, under any circumstances, attempt to change the authorization of*
> *the SystemSegment.*

To change the authorization for a segment, execute any (or all) of the following expressions.

```
topaz 1> printit
theSegment ownerAuthorization: #anAuthorizationSymbol .
%
topaz 1> printit
theSegment worldAuthorization: #anAuthorizationSymbol .
%
topaz 1> printit
theSegment group: #aGroupString
       authorization: #anAuthorizationSymbol .
%
```

> *NOTE*
> *Exercise caution when changing the authorization for any segment that*
> *a user may be using as his or her default segment or current segment —*
> *whether or not the user owns the affected segment. If a user attempts to*
> *commit a transaction, but has created objects in a segment for which he*
> *or she no longer has write authorization, an error will be generated.*

For example, to authorize the group Accounting to read (but not write) in user Eli's default segment, you could execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'Eli') defaultSegment
 group: #Accounting authorization: #read .
%
```

If the group `#Accounting` does not exist, GemStone will return an error. The discussion "Add a User to a Group" earlier in this chapter tells how to create a new GemStone group.

To Remove a Group from a Segment's Authorization List

Privileges required: SegmentProtection, and write authorization for the segment.

To remove a group from a segment's list of authorized groups, execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
theSegment group: #aGroupString authorization: #none
%
```

To Change a User's Default Segment

Privileges required: DefaultSegment to change your own, or write authorization in the DataCurator Segment to change another's; and write authorization to the DataCurator segment.

Changes to another user's default segment do not take effect until the next login.

To change a user's default segment, execute the following expression:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'theUserId') defaultSegment: aNewSegment
%
```

> *NOTE*
> *If you change any user's default segment (including your own) to a segment for which that user lacks write authorization, and you subsequently commit the transaction, the affected user will no longer be able to log in to GemStone.*

5.6 How to Configure GemStone Login Security

GemStone provides several login security features. You can:

- Constrain the choice of passwords to a certain pattern, ban particular passwords altogether, or ban reuse of a password by the same account

- Require users to change their passwords periodically (password aging)

- Limit the number of logins under a temporary password

- Disable accounts that have not logged in for a specified interval (account aging)

- Limit the number of concurrent sessions by a particular account

- Monitor failed login attempts and, if necessary, disable further login attempts on that account

In all cases, the password must not be the same as the UserId and must not be longer than 1024 characters.

Additional methods let you determine which accounts have been disabled by one of these security features and why a particular account was disabled.

CAUTION
GemStone records certain administrative changes to these security
features in the Stone log. You may want to restrict access to that file.

The SystemUser, DataCurator, SymbolUser, and GcUser accounts are never disabled by the security features.

To Constrain the Choice of Passwords

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

You can constrain a user's choice of passwords in terms of pattern (such as the number of characters that repeat). Independently, you can establish a list of words that are disallowed as passwords, and you can keep a user from choosing the same password more than once.

The constraints described here apply only when a user changes his or her own password by using the message
`UserProfile>>oldPassword:newPassword:` and only to password changes after the constraint is committed to the repository. That is, the constraints (other than the prohibition of userId as the password) do not apply to administrator

actions changing any other account's password using the OtherPassword privilege, and they do not invalidate existing passwords.

Table 5.2 lists the messages that you can use to set pattern constraints. You send these messages to the global object AllUsers. For example, to set the minimum password length to six characters, do this:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers minPasswordSize: 6 .
System commitTransaction
%
```

The default setting in all cases is 0, which means there is no constraint on the pattern.

Table 5.2   Ways to Constrain the Password Pattern

Message to AllUsers	Comments
minPasswordSize: *aPositiveInteger*	Sets the minimum number of characters in a new password; *0* means no constraint.
maxPasswordSize: *aPositiveInteger*	Sets the maximum number of characters in a new password; *0* disables the constraint. (The password String itself must not be longer than 1024 characters.)
maxRepeatingChars: *aPositiveInteger*	Sets the maximum number of adjacent characters that can have the same value; for example, *1* allows 'aba' but not 'aa'. *0* means no constraint.
maxConsecutiveChars: *aPositiveInteger*	Sets the maximum number of adjacent characters that can be an ascending or descending sequence, such as '123' or 'zyx' based on a case-sensitive comparison. *0* means no constraint.
maxCharsOfSameType: *aPositiveInteger*	Sets the maximum number of adjacent characters that can be of the same type (alpha, numeric, or special); for example, *3* allows 'abc4de' but not 'abcde'. *0* means no constraint.

Any user can inquire about the current setting of a password pattern constraint by sending its corresponding Accessing message (that is, without the colon or argument shown in Table 5.2).

For example, to determine the current minimum size for a password:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers minPasswordSize
%
6
```

Disallowing Particular Passwords

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

You can create a list of disallowed passwords by adding Strings to the AllUsers instance variable disallowedPasswords. Any messages understood by class Set can be used. For instance:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers disallowedPasswords)
  addAll: #( 'Mother' 'apple pie' ) .
System commitTransaction
%
```

The default is an empty set.

Additions to this list affect only new passwords requested after the additions are committed; that is, additions do not invalidate existing passwords. If a user attempts to change that account's password to one of the Strings in disallowedPasswords, the error #rtRestrictedPassword is returned.

Any user can examine the current list of globally disallowed passwords by sending the message `AllUsers disallowedPasswords`.

Disallowing Reuse of Passwords

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

You can prevent each user from choosing the same password more than once by setting the AllUsers instance variable disallowUsedPasswords to true. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers disallowUsedPasswords: true .
System commitTransaction
%
```

The default setting is false.

When reuse of passwords is disallowed, GemStone maintains a separate encrypted set of old passwords for each user. Each time a user invokes `oldPassword:newPassword:`, the new password is checked against the prior passwords for that account. If the new password matches a prior one, the error #rtUsedPassword is returned.

Clearing a User's Disallowed Old Passwords

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

You can clear the set of old passwords so that they can be reused by sending the message `clearOldPasswords` to that user's UserProfile. As mentioned above, this set is maintained for each user when the AllUsers instance variable disallowUsedPasswords is set to true. The following example clears the remembered passwords for account *qa2*:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'qa2') clearOldPasswords .
System commitTransaction
%
```

To Require Periodic Password Changes

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

You can require users to change their password periodically by sending the message `UserProfileSet>>passwordAgeLimit:`*numberOfHours*. For example, to set the limit to 120 days:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers passwordAgeLimit: 120 * 24 .
System commitTransaction
%
```

The passwordAgeLimit is added to the time the password was last changed to determine when the password will expire. A setting of 0 (the default) disables password aging.

Each time this method is invoked, the action is recorded in the GemStone security log (currently, the Stone's log).

If a user does not change the account's password within the specified interval, the account is disabled. Attempts to log in return error #gsErrLoginFailure. However, the SystemUser, DataCurator, SymbolUser, and GcUser accounts are never disabled by password aging.

DataCurator or another user with the OtherPassword privilege can reactivate the disabled account by giving it a new password. For details about how to do this, see page 144 (with GemBuilder) or page 155 (with Topaz).

Providing Warning of Password Expiration

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

You can provide an automatic warning to users whose password is about to expire by sending the message
`UserProfileSet>>passwordAgeWarning:`*numberOfHours*. For example, to warn users who log in within five days of the time their password will expire, do this:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers passwordAgeWarning: 5 * 24 .
System commitTransaction
%
```

Logins within *numberOfHours* prior to expiration receive the error #rtErrPasswordExpirationWarning.

Finding Accounts With Password About to Expire

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

You can find out which accounts have a password within the warning period set by `passwordAgeWarning:`. To do this, send the message `findProfilesWithAgingPassword` to AllUsers. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers findProfilesWithAgingPassword
  collect: [ :u | u userId] .
%
an OrderedCollection
#1 qa1
#2 qa2
#3 qa3
```

Finding Out When a Password Was Changed

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

You can find out the last time the password was changed for a particular userId by sending the message `lastPasswordChange` to that account's UserProfile. This

example converts the DateTime returned to a particular pattern based on MM/DD/YY:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'qa2') lastPasswordChange US12HrFormat
%
06/24/08 11:28 AM
```

To Disable Inactive Accounts

Privileges required: OtherPassword and write authorization to the segment of AllUsers.

You can have the system disable accounts for which there has been no login for a specified length of time. To do this, send the message `staleAccountAgeLimit:` *numberOfHours* to AllUsers. This example disables accounts when they have not logged in for 30 days:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers staleAccountAgeLimit: 30 * 24 .
System commitTransaction
%
```

Each time this method is invoked, the action is recorded in the GemStone security log (currently, the Stone's log).

A setting of 0 (the default) disables account aging.

The SystemUser, DataCurator, SymbolUser, and GcUser accounts are not disabled by this mechanism.

DataCurator or another user with the OtherPassword privilege can reactive the account by giving it a new password. For details about how to do this, see page 144 (with GemBuilder) or page 155 (with Topaz).

Finding Out When an Account Last Logged In

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

If at least one age limit applies to an account, you find out when that account last logged in by sending the message `lastLoginTime` to that account's UserProfile. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'qa2') lastLoginTime US12HrFormat
%
06/24/08 01:40 PM
```

The time of the last login is maintained only if loginsAllowedBeforeExpiration is set in that UserProfile or if at least one of these instance variables is set in AllUsers: passwordAgeLimit, passwordAgeWarning, or staleAccountAgeLimit.

To Limit Logins Until Password Is Changed

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

When you assign a password to an account, you can make the password temporary by limiting the number of times it can be used. This limitation applies only to a specific account, that is, to the UserProfile that is the receiver of the message. It is intended for use with a new or reactivated account as a means of ensuring that the user changes the password. For example, the following limits the account "qa2" to two more logins under the current password:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'qa2')
  loginsAllowedBeforeExpiration: 2 .
System commitTransaction
%
```

A setting of 0 (the default) disables this feature.

The limit remains in effect until the user changes the password (see pages 144 and 155). Once the password is changed, the limit for that account is set to 0. The password will not expire again unless a new limit is set by repeating `loginsAllowedBeforeExpiration:`.

If the limit is exceeded before the password is changed, the system disables the account. DataCurator or another user with the OtherPassword privilege can reactivate the account by giving it a new password. For details, see page 144 (with GemBuilder) or page 155 (with Topaz).

The SystemUser, DataCurator, SymbolUser, and GcUser accounts are not disabled by this mechanism.

To Limit Concurrent Sessions by a Particular UserId

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

You can limit the number of concurrent sessions logged in under a particular userId by sending the message `activeUserIdLimit:` *aPositiveInteger* to the UserProfile for that account. For example, the following limits the userId "qa2" to four concurrent sessions:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'qa2') activeUserIdLimit: 4 .
System commitTransaction
%
```

A setting of 0 (the default) disables this feature.

If a user attempts to log in when the maximum number of sessions for that userId are already logged in, the login is denied and the fatal error #gsActiveUserLimitExceeded is returned.

To Record Login Failures

The Stone repository monitor keeps track of login failures (incorrect passwords) for each account and can write that information to the GemStone security log (currently, the Stone's log). By default, messages are logged when the same account fails login attempts 10 or more times within ten minutes. You can change the default limits by setting the STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT and STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT configuration options (see page 397).

The log message gives the following information:

```
---Fri 15 Aug 2008 09:39:40 PDT ---
    GemStone user DataCurator has failed on 10 attempt(s)
        to log in within 1 minute(s).
    The last attempt was from user account writer1 on host
        name docs.
```

Disabling Further Login Attempts

If login failures continue, the Stone repository monitor can disable the account by changing the GemStone password to an invalid one (that is, to a password that cannot be entered). By default, the account is disabled when the number of failures exceeds 15 within 15 minutes. You can change the default limits by setting the STN_DISABLE_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT and STN_DISABLE_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT configuration options (page 392).

Subsequent attempts to login as that account result in the following error message:

```
Login failed:  the GemStone userId/password combination is
invalid or expired.
```

The SystemUser, DataCurator, SymbolUser, and GcUser accounts are not disabled by this mechanism.

To reactivate an account that has been disabled by this mechanism, the DataCurator (or another account with explicit OtherPassword privilege) must change the account's password to a valid one. See the instructions under "To Change Another User's Password" on pages 144 and 156.

To Find Out Which Accounts Have Been Disabled

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

The message `AllUsers findDisabledUsers` returns a SortedCollection of UserProfiles that are disabled by one of the security precautions discussed above:

- The password expired (through aging or a login limit).

- The account remained inactive.

- There were repeated password failures.

For example:

```
topaz 1> level 1
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers findDisabledUsers
  collect: [:aUser | aUser userId ] .
%
an Array
  #1 qa2
  #2 qa3
```

In each case, the account has been disabled by setting its password to one that is invalid. DataCurator or another user with the OtherPassword privilege can reactivate an account by giving it a new password. For information about how to do that, see pages 144 and 155.

To Verify That an Account Is Disabled

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

You can verify that a particular account is disabled by sending the message `isDisabled` to the account's UserProfile. The method returns either True or False. This example inquires about account *qa2*:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'qa2') isDisabled
%
true
```

To Find Out Why an Account Was Disabled

Privileges required: OtherPassword.

You can find out why a particular account was disabled by sending the message `reasonForDisabledAccount` to the account's UserProfile. This example inquires about account *qa2*:

```
topaz 1> printit
(AllUsers userWithId: 'qa2') reasonForDisabledAccount
%
LoginsWithSamePassword
```

The value returned is one of these Strings: 'PasswordAgeLimit', 'StaleAccount', 'LoginsWithSamePassword', or 'LoginsWithInvalidPassword'.

Chapter

6 *Managing Repository Space*

The *repository* is the logical unit that represents the universe of shared objects that are stored within a GemStone/S 64 Bit system. Within GemStone Smalltalk, the repository is the single instance of Class Repository. Initially, it has the name `SystemRepository`.

The logical repository maps to one or more physical *extent* files in the file system or to data on one or more raw disk partitions. Chapter 1 explains how this mapping is done through GemStone configuration options. Initially, the repository is contained in a single file, `$GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf`.

Whenever GemStone performs a *checkpoint,* it makes sure that transactions committed before the checkpoint have been written to the repository extents. The STN_CHECKPOINT_INTERVAL configuration option (page 391) sets the maximum time between checkpoints. (The default is five minutes, but various factors may cause a checkpoint to occur sooner.) The checkpoint limits the amount of time that is needed to recover from a system crash by guaranteeing that the data for the transaction is written to the extent and not just to the transaction log. For information, see "To Control Checkpoint Frequency" on page 42.

This chapter explains how the repository grows, and tells you how to perform a number of administrative tasks related to the repository:

- How to determine the amount of free space in the repository (page 179)

- How to create more space by adding an extent while the repository is in use (page 181)

- How to remove an extent (page 183)

- How to reallocate objects among extents (page 184)

- How to recover from an error caused by a full disk (page 190)

6.1 Repository Growth

The repository begins in the compact form of `$GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf`. As repository activity progresses, the extent file expands for a variety of reasons, in increments of 1 MB or more.

- Committed objects are flushed to the disk at certain times by writing the new page during a *checkpoint* of the repository. Private (invisible) objects, such as the structure that supports large collections, also are part of the repository. (Committed changes are written immediately to a transaction log to preserve the information in case of a system failure.)

- Allow at least 10 MB per session for repository space. If that space isn't available, the repository monitor will expand the extent to provide the necessary free space.

- The STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD configuration option (page 395) sets the minimum amount of free space to be available in the repository (the default is 1 MB). If free space falls to that threshold, the Stone repository monitor enlarges the repository.

To manage the size of the extents, you need to regularly perform garbage collection on your GemStone repository. The frequency can vary from monthly to daily, depending on the amount of activity in the repository. Without garbage collection, the repository will continue to grow and be filled with wasted space. See Chapter 10, "Managing Growth," for a discussion of garbage collection in GemStone.

6.2 How to Check Free Space

Use the methods `Repository>>fileSize` and `Repository>>freeSpace` to obtain reports about the logical repository as a whole.

The result of the message `fileSize` is the total size of the repository in bytes, including all extent files. If the repository consists of a single extent file, it is ordinarily the same result as you would obtain by using the operating system command **ls** -**l** *extentName*. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository fileSize
%
23068672
```

The result of `freeSpace` tells how much space (in bytes) is available for allocation within the repository at its current size. Free space is equal to the sum (for all extents in the repository) of the number of free pages in each extent multiplied by the page size. This space does not include fragments on partially filled data pages.

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository freeSpace
%
11272192
```

Depending on the configuration options selected and the available disk space, the Stone repository monitor may be able to create additional free space by enlarging the repository.

If your configuration has more than one extent, use `Repository>>fileSizeReport` to generate statistics about each individual extent and also totals for the entire repository. (The heading "Extent #1" identifies the primary extent regardless of its file name, which initially is `extent0.dbf`.)

For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository fileSizeReport
%
Extent #1
-----------
    Filename = !TCP@nodename#dbf!/users/extents/extent0.dbf

    File size =        22.00 Megabytes
    Space available = 5.56 Megabytes

Extent #2
-----------
    Filename = !TCP@nodename#dbf!/users/extents/extent1.dbf

    File size =        6.00 Megabytes
    Space available = 0.12 Megabytes

Totals
------
    Repository size = 28.00 Megabytes
    Free Space =      5.69 Megabytes
```

The amount of free space in the repository can also be determined from the cache statistic FreePages (see page 240). To obtain the free space, multiply FreePages by the page size, 16384.

6.3 How to Add Extents

GemStone provides two ways to add extents:

- You can add new extents at startup by editing your GemStone configuration file and adding extent names and sizes to the DBF_EXTENT_NAMES and DBF_EXTENT_SIZES configuration options (page 378). Append the new values to the existing entries, just before the semicolon (;) delimiter. The new extents will be created the next time the Stone starts up.

- You can add extents while the Stone is running by invoking the Smalltalk methods described in this section. These methods are especially useful in avoiding or resolving low disk space conditions because the change takes effect immediately.

To Add an Extent While the Stone is Running

To prevent the repository from becoming full, you can dynamically add another extent specification (a file or a raw partition) to the configuration file for the Stone. This section describes the Smalltalk methods that allow you to do this.

For general information about multiple extents, see "To Configure the Repository Extents" on page 19.

Possible Effects on Other Sessions

When a new extent is dynamically added to the logical repository through Smalltalk, sessions that are currently logged in must have access to the new extent. The possibility exists that an online session may terminate because it cannot open a new extent. Reasons for this condition could range from the inability to start a remote page server process to file permission problems.

> *CAUTION*
> *The operating system creates the new extents with the ownership and permissions of the Stone repository monitor process. If these permissions are not the same as for other extents, you should use operating system commands to modify them as soon as possible. Such changes can be made without stopping the Stone.*

A session's view of which files make up the logical repository is updated whenever one of the following events occurs:

- Users commit or abort the session.

- The Stone repository monitor hands out disk resources to the session.

An explicit **commit** or **abort** may succeed but then cause the session to be terminated because of the inability to mount new extents immediately after the **commit** or **abort** operation.

Repository>>createExtent:

Privileges required: FileControl.

The Smalltalk method `createExtent:`*extentFilename* creates a new repository extent with the given extent file name (specified as a String). The new extent has no maximum size. The extent must be located on the machine running the Stone process. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository createExtent: '$GEMSTONE/data/extent2.dbf'
%
```

You can execute this method when other users are logged in.

The Stone creates the new extent file, and it also appends the augmented extent list to your configuration file:

```
# DBF_EXTENT_NAMES written by Stone (user Bob) on 8/12/08
12:56:18 PDT
DBF_EXTENT_NAMES = "$GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf",
"$GEMSTONE/data/extent1.dbf",
"!TCP@mozart#dbf!/users/gemstone/data/extent2.dbf;"
```

If the given file already exists, the method returns an error and the specified extent is not added to the repository.

Creating an extent with this method bypasses any setting you may have specified for the DBF_PRE_GROW option at system startup (page 379). Because extents created with this method have no maximum size, they cannot be pre-grown. If the repository is using weighted allocation, the new extent will be given a weight equal to the average weight of all other extents. (For a discussion of weighted allocation, see page 19.)

If this method is run from a session on a host remote from the Stone, *extentFilename* must include a Network Resource String (NRS) specifying the Stone host. The syntax is shown above in the excerpt from the augmented configuration file. For information about NRS syntax, see Appendix C.

Repository>>createExtent: withMaxSize:

Privileges required: FileControl.

The Smalltalk method `createExtent:`*extentFilename* `withMaxSize:`*aSmallInteger* creates a new repository extent with the specified *extentFilename* and sets the maximum size of that extent to the specified size. You can execute this method when other users are logged in.

The size must be a non-zero positive integer representing the maximum physical size of the file in MB.

If the specified extent file already exists, this method returns an error and the extent is not added to the logical repository.

If the configuration file option `DBF_PRE_GROW` is set to True (page 379), this method will cause the newly created extent to be pre-grown to the given size. If the pre-grow operation fails, then this method will return an error and the new extent will not be added to the logical repository.

6.4 How to Remove an Extent

The only way to remove an extent file is by first performing a Smalltalk full backup and restore to move the contents of that extent to other extents.

Privileges required: FileControl.

Reducing the number of existing extents requires special steps to ensure data integrity. If you must remove an extent file, follow this procedure:

Step 1. Back up your repository using the Smalltalk full backup procedure described on page 284.

You cannot use an online or offline extent backup to shrink extents.

Step 2. Shut down the Stone repository monitor.

Step 3. Modify the `DBF_EXTENT_NAMES` configuration parameter (page 378) to show the new extent structure.

Step 4. Restore the repository from your Smalltalk full backup. Follow the GemStone restore procedure described on page 290.

6.5 How To Reallocate Existing Objects Among Extents

If you want to reallocate existing objects among two or more extents, the procedure depends in part on whether you are also changing the number of extents. Because changes to DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE directly affect only the subsequent allocation of pages for new or modified objects, additional steps are necessary.

To Reallocate Objects Among a Different Number of Extents

If you are increasing or decreasing the number of extents and want to change allocation of existing objects as part of that operation, perform a Smalltalk full backup, then restore the backup after setting appropriate weights in the DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE configuration option (page 378).

For example, suppose your existing repository contains 800 MB and you want to divide them about equally between the existing extent and a new one. To populate each extent with about 400 MB, follow this procedure:

Step 1. Back up your repository, using the Smalltalk full backup procedure described on page 284.

Step 2. Shut down the Stone repository monitor.

Step 3. Modify the DBF_EXTENT_NAMES configuration parameter to show the new extent structure.

```
DBF_EXTENT_NAMES = $GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf,
$GEMSTONE/data/extent1.dbf;
```

Step 4. Edit the DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE configuration option to reflect the intended distribution of pages (see "Allocating Data to Multiple Extents" on page 23). For example:

```
DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE = 10, 10;
```

Step 5. Restore the repository from your Smalltalk full backup, using the procedure beginning on page 290.

If objects in the repository were explicitly clustered using instances of ClusterBucket that explicitly specified the first extent, those objects may tend to migrate back to that extent over time. You can prevent such migration by placing size limits on the existing extent, or by explicitly reclustering those objects in the new extent using a ClusterBucket that specifies either an extentId of nil or the extentId of the new extent. For information about clustering, refer to the *GemStone/S 64 Bit Programming Guide*.

To Reallocate Objects Among the Same Number of Extents

Changes to DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE (page 378) directly affect only the subsequent allocation of pages for new or modified objects. When you restore into a repository with the same number of extents, the distribution of the original repository will be used in the restored repository, regardless of the DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE.

To change the allocation of existing objects, you can either restore into a repository with a different number of extents (as discussed on page 184) or you can specify a maximum size on the extent files, to force objects to be distributed as you want them.

For example, suppose your existing repository has three extents, and that you are running in sequential allocation mode. The first extent has 600 MB, while the second and third extents are 1 MB each (the minimum size). You now want to redistribute the objects so they are spread evenly over all three extents. You cannot simply change the DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE, and restore a backup into three extents; existing objects would be distributed according to the original allocation mode, that is, entirely in the first extent. Only new objects created after the restore would be created evenly over the three extents.

To populate the three extents evenly, you can follow this procedure:

Step 1. Back up your repository, using the Smalltalk full backup procedure described on page 284.

Step 2. Shut down the Stone repository monitor.

Step 3. Edit the DBF_EXTENT_SIZES configuration option (page 378) to limit the size of the first extent temporarily to 200 MB. For example:

```
DBF_EXTENT_SIZES = 200, , ;
```

Step 4. Edit the DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE configuration option (page 378) to reflect the intended distribution of pages (see "Allocating Data to Multiple Extents" on page 23). This setting determines the distribution of new or modified objects. For example:

```
DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE = 10, 10, 10;
```

Step 5. Restore the repository from your Smalltalk full backup, using the procedure beginning on page 290.

Step 6. If you want the first extent to grow beyond the temporary limit you set in Step 3, stop the Stone after you restore the repository. Edit the configuration file again, either specifying a higher limit or no limit. For example:

```
DBF_EXTENT_SIZES = , ,  ;
```

If objects in the repository were explicitly clustered using instances of ClusterBucket that explicitly specified the first extent, those objects may tend to migrate back to that extent over time. You can prevent such migration by maintaining the size limit set in Step 3, or by explicitly reclustering those objects in the new extent using a ClusterBucket that specifies either an extentId of nil or the extentId of the new extent. For information, refer to the *GemStone/S 64 Bit Programming Guide*.

6.6 How to Shrink the Repository

Privileges required: SystemControl, GarbageCollection, and FileControl.

To shrink the repository to its minimum size, make a Smalltalk full backup. Then take the repository offline and restore the backup into a copy of the GemStone distribution repository. Use the following procedure, which compacts the repository into the minimum set of consecutive pages.

Step 1. Mark your repository for garbage collection. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository markForCollection
%
```

For further information about this method, see "markForCollection" on page 345.

Alternatively, you can run the FDC/MGC two-step process, which performs the same function as `markForCollection` but may be more suitable for large production systems. For details, see page 350.

Step 2. Wait for GemStone to complete the garbage collection and reclaim the space. The time required depends on several factors: the size of the repository, the number of Reclaim GcGems currently running, and (in multi-user mode) the status of other sessions. For details, see "Reclaiming Pages" on page 354.

If other users are logged in, space will not be reclaimed until all sessions have committed or aborted any transactions concurrent with the

markForCollection or FDC/MGC process. For further information, see
"To Identify Sessions Holding Up Page Reclamation" on page 360.

Step 3. Make a Smalltalk full backup of your repository by sending it the message
fullBackupTo:*fileOrDevice* MBytes:*byteLimit.*

For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository fullBackupTo: '/users/bk/oct31'
  MBytes: 0
%
```

This example writes the backup to a single disk file. If you need to write
multiple files or multiple tapes, see "To Create a Backup in Multiple Files" on
page 287.

Step 4. Take the repository offline:

```
topaz 1> printit
System shutDown
%
```

Step 5. Remove the existing repository extents. Obtain a copy of the distribution
repository as the first (primary) extent by using the **copydbf** command. For
example, assuming that all of your GemStone extents are in
$GEMSTONE/data:

```
% cd $GEMSTONE/data
% rm extentNames
% copydbf $GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf primaryExtentName
```

Use **chmod** to set the extent permission to what you ordinarily use for your
repository.

Step 6. To put the repository back online, issue the **startstone** command:

```
% startstone gemStoneName
```

If you do not specify *gemStoneName*, **startstone** defaults to gs64stone.

Step 7. Log in to linked Topaz again.

NOTE
*To perform the remaining parts of this procedure, you must be the only
user logged in to GemStone. Logins will be disabled when you start the
next step.*

Step 8. Restore the repository by using the method
Repository>>restoreFromBackup:*fileOrDevice*, using the same file or
device as in Step 3. Because it is being restored into a copy of the initial
repository, the restored repository will be compressed to the minimum space.
This example restores the backup from a single disk file:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromBackup: '/users/bk/oct31'
%
```

If you need to restore multiple files or multiple tapes, use the method
Repository>>restoreFromBackups:*fileOrDeviceArray* instead:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromBackups:
#( '%/backups/July_1.1'
   '%/backups/July_1.2' )
%
```

(For more information, see "To Restore Multiple-File Backups" on page 299.)

GemStone reads the backup(s) and rebuilds the repository in a "shadow"
object space that is invisible to users at this time. If the restore succeeds,
GemStone commits the restore and returns a summary in the form of a
nonfatal error message like the following:

```
Restore from full backup completed with 30569 objects
restored and 0 corrupt objects not restored.
```

Each restore operation, on completion, terminates its GemStone session. You
will need to log in again before performing the next restore operation.

Step 9. Between the time the full backup was started (Step 3) and the time the
repository was shut down (Step 4), there may have been transactions on your

repository. To ensure that no work is lost, restore from transaction logs and commit the restore. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromCurrentLogs
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded. [null]

topaz> login
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login

topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository commitRestore
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded. commitRestore
succeeded
```

6.7 How to Check Page Fragmentation

Space within the repository is managed in pages having a fixed size of 8 KB. It is possible for these pages to become *fragmented*—that is, only partially filled with objects. GemStone automatically schedules reclamation of pages with greater than 10% free space as part of its garbage collection activity.

You can inquire about the amount of fragmentation in the repository by executing the following expression.

SystemRepository pagesWithPercentFree: *aPercentage*

(Typical values of *aPercentage* range from 10 to 25.)

This method returns an array containing the following statistics:

- The total number of data pages processed

- The sum (in bytes) of free space in all pages

- The page size (in bytes)

- The number of data pages having at least the specified percentage of free space

- The number of data pages having at least the specified percentage of free space, that contain only a single object

- The total number of pages in the repository that contain only a single object

6.8 How to Recover from Disk-Full Conditions

The Stone repository monitor has two critical needs for disk space. It must be able to:

- Append to the transaction log as sessions commit changes.

- Expand the repository as necessary to allocate free pages to current sessions or to sessions logging in.

Whenever the Stone cannot log transactions or cannot find sufficient free space in the repository, it issues an error message to any session logged in as DataCurator or SystemUser. If users report that GemStone appears to be hung or that they get a disk-full error while logging in, you should check one of these administrative logins for such a message. The message is also written to the Stone's log file.

The following topics explain the Stone's actions in greater detail and describe steps you can take to provide sufficient space.

For details on how tranlog full conditions are handled, see "How to Recover from Tranlog-Full Conditions" on page 205

Repository Full

The Stone takes a number of actions to prevent the repository from becoming completely full. If the free space remaining in the repository falls below the level set by the STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD configuration option (page 395) and the Stone cannot allocate more space in any extent, it takes the following actions to prevent a system crash:

1. It becomes more aggressive about disposing of commit records so that garbage collection can proceed. (If the Stone is very busy, a backlog of commit records can accumulate.)

2. It starts a checkpoint if there isn't one in progress and reduces the checkpoint interval to three minutes until the condition clears. (This checkpoint may free pages that have been reclaimed.)

3. It writes a message to the Stone log to indicate the condition.

4. It prevents new logins except for DataCurator and SystemUser accounts. It issues a disk-full error to other sessions attempting to log in.

5. It sends error `#rtErrFreeSpaceThreshold` to any sessions logged in (or logging in) as DataCurator or SystemUser so that they know disk space is becoming critical.

6. It signals Gem session processes to return all except five free pages per extent. It responds to requests for additional pages by allocating only five pages at a time.

7. If the free space available drops below 400 KB (50 pages), the Stone stops responding to page requests from sessions that are not logged in as DataCurator or SystemUser. This action prevents users from acquiring all of the available space, which would cause the system to crash. Gem session processes appear to "hang" while they are waiting for pages. The unhonored page requests are granted when the free space goes back above the threshold.

8. If the previous steps do not solve the problem within the time specified by the STN_DISKFULL_TERMINATION_INTERVAL (page 393), then the Stone begins to terminate sessions holding on to the oldest commit record *even if the session is in a transaction*. This action applies to any user session, including logins as SystemUser and DataCurator. Allowing the Stone to dispose of the commit record allows additional garbage collection.

> *NOTE*
> *You can configure the Stone to never terminate sessions by setting* STN_DISKFULL_TERMINATION_INTERVAL *to 0; however, doing so increases the risk of GemStone shutting down because of a lack of free space in the repository.*

9. When the condition clears, another message is written to the Stone log and operation returns to normal.

If you see a message like the following while logged in as DataCurator or SystemUser or in the Stone log, disk space is becoming critical:

```
The repository is currently running below the
freeSpaceThreshold.
```

When the system must dynamically expand the repository, it checks one extent at a time, in the order dictated by the allocation strategy, to see if that extent can be expanded to create more space. When no extents can be extended and the free space is below STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD, the Stone takes the actions described above.

Failure to expand an extent has two possible causes: either the disk containing the extent is full, or the extent has reached its maximum size as set by the DBF_EXTENT_SIZES configuration option.

There are a number of things you can do to create more space in an existing extent, or you can create a new extent. Each of these actions may create sufficient additional space for immediate needs:

- Warn the current users about the problem, and have them log out until enough space is made available.

- Remove any non-essential files to create enough space for expanding the repository.

- Create a new extent through Smalltalk with `Repository>>createExtent:`*extentFileName* or `createExtent:`*extentFileName* `withMaxSize:` *aSmallInteger*. If the Stone has stopped, you can edit the parameters in the configuration file before restarting it. See "How to Add Extents" on page 181.

Chapter

7

Managing Transaction Logs

7.1 Overview

A transaction log contains the information necessary to redo transactions to the repository that have been committed by GemStone/S 64 Bit sessions since the last checkpoint or orderly shutdown. This log is used to recover from crashes such as those caused by a power failure, an operating system failure, or the killing of GemStone monitor processes.

If you need to restore the repository from a backup, transaction logs written in the optional full-logging mode can be used to recreate all transactions committed since the most recent backup was written.

The transaction log is implemented as a sequence of files having names of the form `tranlog0.dbf ... tranlogNNN.dbf`. The numeric `fileId` starts at 0 when the Stone starts with a copy of the initial repository extent (`$GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf`), and there are no existing transaction logs with that tranlog id in any transaction log directories. If the Stone starts on an existing repository without any logs present, the `fileId` will be one greater than when the repository was last shut down cleanly. You can control the filename prefix by setting the STN_TRAN_LOG_PREFIX configuration option (page 404).

These logs are written to a list of directories (or raw partitions) specified by the STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES configuration option (page 404), which is treated

as a circular list. Each log is limited to the size set for that directory or raw partition by STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES (page 405). When one log is full, logging switches to the next directory or raw partition. (What happens when logs have been created in all directories is discussed in Table 7.1 on page 196.) Collectively, the transaction log files logically form an extremely large sequential file with a maximum size of 4×10^{6} GB.

Between checkpoints, GemStone writes each committed transaction to a transaction log *(*Figure 7.1*)*.

Figure 7.1   Normal Operation
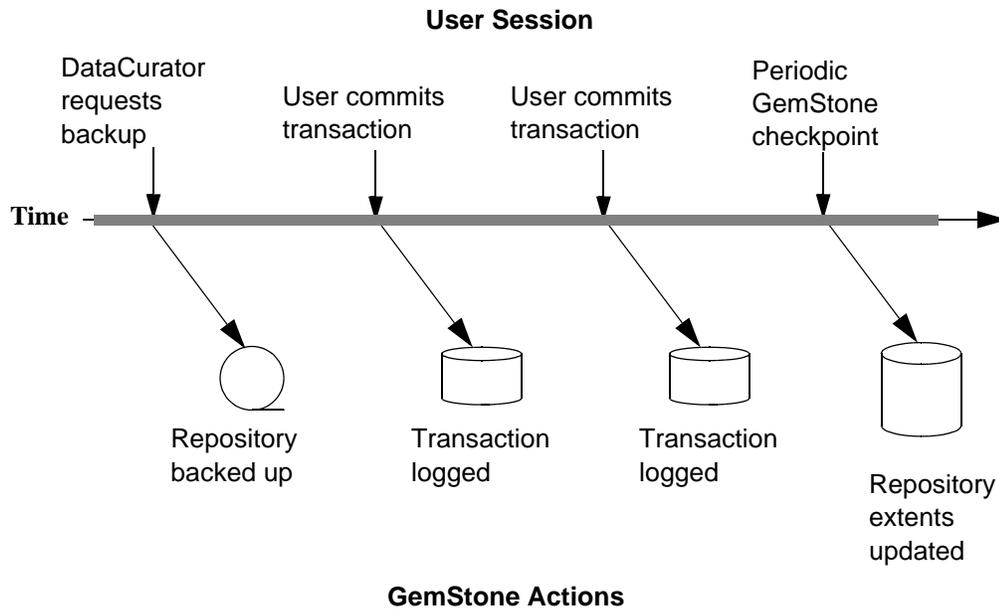
Use ordinary UNIX utilities to backup the transaction logs in the file system. To backup a transaction log that is on a raw disk partition, use **copydbf** to copy it to a file system. You'll also need to use **removedbf** to clear the partition for reuse.

Logging Modes

GemStone provides two modes of transaction logging, selected by setting the STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING configuration option:

- To provide real-time incremental backup of the repository, set STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING to True. All transactions are logged regardless of their size. This mode is recommended for deployed GemStone systems.

- To allow a simple operation to run unattended for an extended period, set STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING to False (the initial setting). This mode, known as *partial* logging, provides limited backup that ordinarily permits automatic recovery from system crashes that do not corrupt the repository.

Table 7.1 compares full and partial transaction logging.

Table 7.1   Comparison of Full and Partial Transaction Logging

Characteristic	STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING =TRUE (Full Logging)	STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING =FALSE (Partial Logging)
Type of transaction logged	All transactions	Only those transactions smaller than STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT; successful commits of larger transactions cause an immediate checkpoint
Recovery from system crash (extents are OK)	Yes, automatic during restart using checkpoint and log	Yes, automatic during restart using checkpoint and log
Recovery of transactions since last backup (as after media failure)	Yes—can carry forward GemStone backup by recreating subsequently committed transactions	No—cannot recover transactions since the backup
Action when current log is full	Logging moves to the next directory or to the head of the list. If it is a file system directory, the Stone opens a new log file there; existing transaction logs are retained. If it is a raw partition, a new log can be opened only if the previous one has been archived and removed. The maximum number of file system logs online at one time depends on disk space. The maximum number of raw partition logs depends on the number of partitions listed in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES.	Logging moves to the next directory or to the head of the list. The Stone removes the existing transaction log before opening a new one. The maximum number of logs on line at one time depends on the number of directories or raw partitions in the list.
Action when log space becomes full	The Stone pauses execution if it cannot find space in any of the specified directories or raw partitions.	The Stone deletes log files from the circular list of directories and keeps running.
Administrative task	Monitor log space; archive log files and delete them as necessary	None

Recovering from an Unexpected Shutdown

In the event of a system crash, GemStone can recover by automatically reapplying transactions from the log to the latest checkpoint (Figure 7.2). This allows you to restart from where you were at the time of the crash.

Figure 7.2   System Crash

GemStone Actions
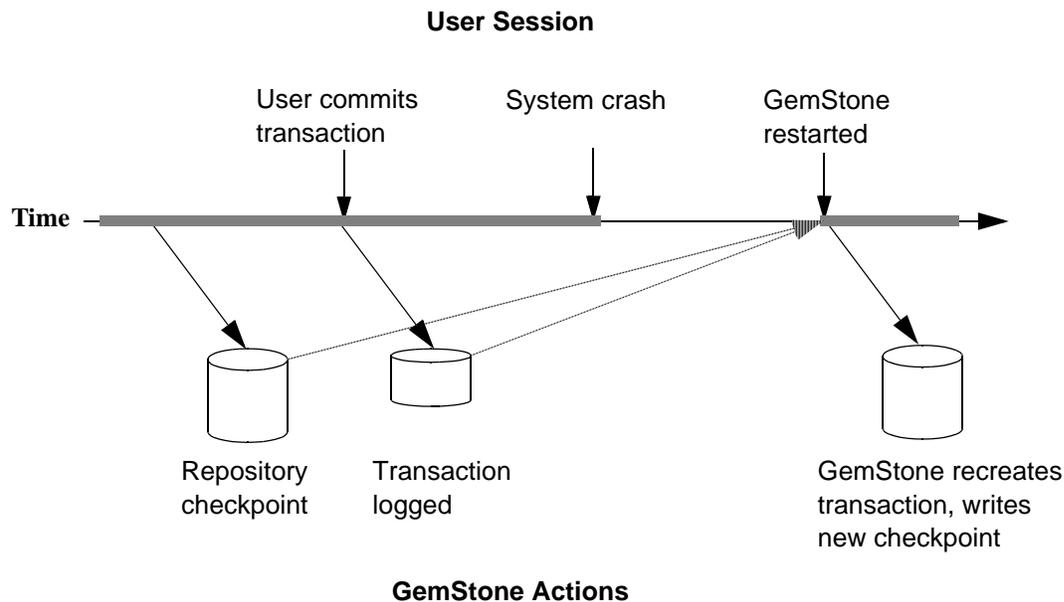
Restoring Transactions to a Backup

An important use of transaction logs is to restore transactions that were committed between the last full backup and a system failure. If you experience system failure and your current extents are no longer usable, you can still recover all data, provided that the repository already is in full transaction logging mode and that the backup was made in that mode.

You can use the transaction logs to restore transactions committed since the last GemStone online extent backup or a Smalltalk full backup. The following steps show what you must do to prepare:

Step 1. Change the STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING configuration option to True.

Step 2. Restart GemStone.

Step 3. Make a GemStone online extent backup (page 279) or a Smalltalk full backup (page 284).

How the Logs Are Used

The GemStone restore procedure (Figure 7.3) starts by copying any good repository, preferably the initial repository extent that is distributed with GemStone. That repository contains the GemStone kernel classes and base system, which serve as a starting point for the restore.

Next, you restore the full backup, using the appropriate procedure:

*   To restore from an online extent backup, see page 283.

*   To restore from a Smalltalk full backup, see page 290.

Finally, if the repository was in full transaction logging mode, you restore transactions committed since the backup by reading the transaction logs in the order in which they were generated. The restore procedures in Chapter 9 (listed above) tell how to restore transactions committed since the backup.

NOTE
Restoring a repository resets its origin to the time of the backup that was restored. Subsequent transactions can be restored only by starting with that backup or a more recent one.

Figure 7.3   Applying Transaction Logs to a GemStone Backup

Administrator Actions

Restart repository monitor

Restore from GemStone backup

Apply transaction logs

Ready for
ordinary
activity

Time
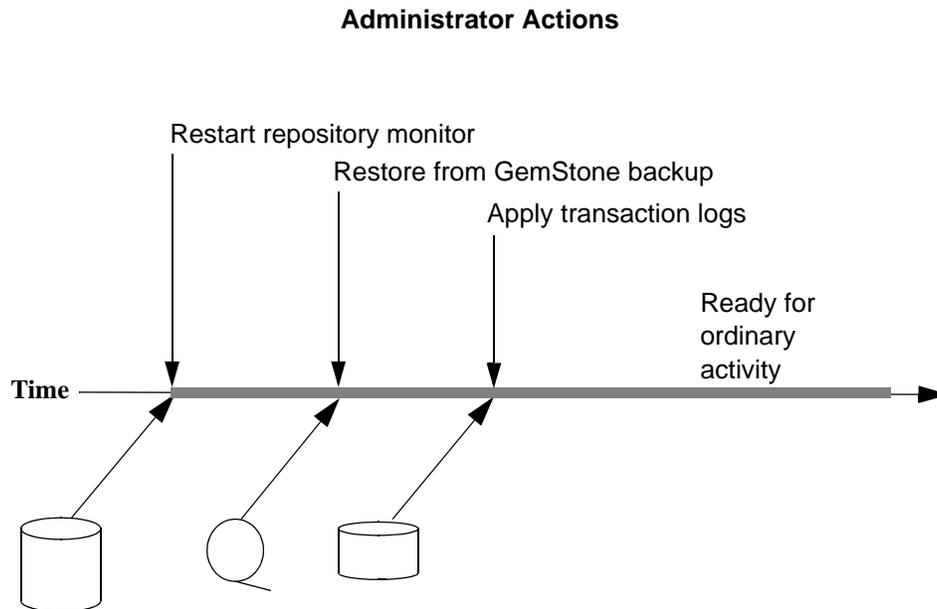
7.2 How to Manage Full Logging

When the system is operating with the STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING configuration
option set to True, you (as system administrator) should monitor the available log
space. If the log space defined by STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES becomes full,
users will be unable to commit transactions to the repository until space is made
available.

For transaction logs in file system directories, "full" means that there is no free
space in the file systems containing those directories.

For transaction logs in raw partitions, "full" means that all partitions listed already
contain a GemStone transaction log or other repository file. After archiving an
existing log, you must invoke **removedbf** (page 418) before that partition can be
reused.

There are two recovery situations to consider in managing transaction logs under full logging:

- Recovery from a system crash requires logs for all transactions committed since the last *checkpoint.* Because of the way GemStone logs changes involving large objects, parts of these transactions may be in earlier logs. The method `Repository>>oldestLogFileIdForRecovery` returns the fileId of the oldest log that would be needed if a crash were to occur at that point. All logs needed for crash recovery should be kept online.

- Recovery from damaged extents, such as a media failure, requires all transaction logs since the last *backup,* and earlier logs may be needed if lengthy transactions were in progress at the time the backup started. Log files not needed for crash recovery may be archived offline, although restoring them will take longer.

To Archive Logs

Ordinary UNIX tools, such as **tar** and **cp**, can be used to move log files to other locations or to archival media. We recommend that you archive and free one complete log directory at a time, in the order listed in the STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES configuration option (page 404).

> *NOTE*
> *If you must rename the log files, we recommend that you preserve the digits in the original filename as an aid to restoring the files in sequence should that become necessary. If your transaction logs are in raw disk partitions,* **copydbf** *adds the fileId when you copy a log to a file system directory.*

Two special commands are provided for working with raw disk partitions:

- The **copydbf** command copies a repository file (extent, transaction log, or full backup) to or from a raw disk partition. If the destination is a directory in the file system, **copydbf** generates a filename that includes the file type and its internal fileId.

- The **removedbf** command writes over a raw partition so that GemStone will no longer think it contains a repository file.

Both the **copydbf** and **removedbf** commands can be used with a remote node even if it is not running NFS (a NetLDI must be running on that node). For further information about **copydbf** and **removedbf**, see the command descriptions in Appendix B.

To determine the current size of a transaction log that is in a raw partition, use the method `Repository>>currentTranlogSizeMB`. This method returns the log size (in MB) as an Integer.

To determine the oldest transaction log that would be needed to recover from the most recent checkpoint, use the method `Repository>>oldestLogFileIdForRecovery`. This method returns the internal fileId, which is part of the filename for transaction logs in the file system. If a session was in a lengthy transaction at the time of a system crash, the oldest log needed during recovery may be one that was written before the last checkpoint occurred.

You can obtain similar information by applying **copydbf** **-i** to an extent. For example:

```
% copydbf -i extent0.dbf
Source file: extent0.dbf
   file type: extent  fileId: 0
   byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first)
   Last checkpoint written at: 06/24/08 15:30:30 PDT.
   Oldest tranlog needed for recovery is fileId 5 (
   tranlog5.dbf ).
```

To determine the oldest transaction log needed to roll forward from a backup, apply `copydbf -i` to the backup:

```
% copydbf -i backup.dat
Source file: backup.dat
   file type: backup  fileId: 0
   byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first)
   The previous file last recordId is  -1.
Destination file:  /dev/null
   byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first)
   Full backup started from checkpoint at: 06/24/08 15:28:37
   PDT.
   Oldest tranlog needed for restore is fileId 5 (
   tranlog5.dbf ).
```

For an example script showing how to archive transaction logs out of raw partitions, see `$GEMSTONE/examples/archivelog.sh.` You will need to edit the script to conform to your own partition names and archive location, and then test it.

To Add a Log at Run Time

Privileges required: FileControl.

You can add a directory or a raw partition for transaction logs to the existing list without shutting down the Stone repository monitor. When you do this, the repository monitor also records the change in its configuration file so that the addition becomes permanent. Send the following message:

SystemRepository addTransactionLog: *deviceOrDirectory* size: *aSize*

For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository addTransactionLog: '/users/tlogs2' size: 8
%
```

The argument *aSize* sets the maximum log size (in MB) for *deviceOrDirectory*. It will be added to the list in STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES (page 405).

You can use the method System class>>stoneConfigurationAt: to examine the contents of STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES at run time. For information, see "How to Access the Server Configuration at Run Time" on page 38. The Repository methods in Table 7.2 return other information that is helpful in managing transaction logs.

Table 7.2   Repository Methods for Information About Transaction Logs

Method	Description
currentLogDirectoryId	Returns a positive SmallInteger, which is the one-based offset of the current log file into the list of log directory names.
currentLogFile	Returns a String containing the name of the transaction log file to which records currently are being appended.
currentTranlogSizeMB	Returns an Integer that is the size (in MB) of the currently active transaction log.
logOriginTime	Returns the log origin time of the receiver, the time when a new sequence of log files was started. For details, see the method comment in the image.
oldestLogFileIdForRecovery	Returns a positive SmallInteger, which is the internal fileId of the oldest transaction log needed to recover from the most recent checkpoint, if the Stone were to crash as of now.
restoreStatusOldestFileId	Returns a SmallInteger, which is the internal fileId of the oldest transaction log needed for the next restore from log operation.

To Force a New Transaction Log

Privileges required: FileControl.

You can force closure of the current log and opening of a new log at almost any time by using the method `Repository>>startNewLog`. The method performs the following sequential actions:

1. Starts a checkpoint.

2. Waits till the checkpoint completes.

3. Starts the new log.

4. Returns a SmallInteger, which is the `fileId` of the new log.

In the following example, the new transaction log file would be `tranlog9.dbf`.

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository startNewLog
%
9
```

If a checkpoint is already in progress when you execute `startNewLog`, the method will fail and return –1 instead. If you're using this method in an application, therefore, you need to accommodate the possibility of such a failure with code such as:

```
| id  |
id := SystemRepository startNewLog.
[ id < 0 ] whileTrue: [
  System sleep: 1.
  id := SystemRepository startNewLog ].
```

To Start Checkpoints

Privileges required: SystemControl.

Class System (category Transaction Control) provides two methods that you can use to start checkpoints manually. These methods do not commit, abort, or otherwise modify the current transaction.

`startCheckpointSync`

Starts a new checkpoint and returns when the new checkpoint has completed. If a checkpoint is already in progress, this method waits until the current checkpoint completes, then starts a new checkpoint. Returns true if a new checkpoint was successfully completed, returns false if a new checkpoint could not be started because transaction logs are full or checkpoints are suspended.

`startCheckpointAsync`

Starts a new checkpoint if a checkpoint is not already in progress and returns immediately, without waiting for the checkpoint to finish. Returns true if a checkpoint is in progress or was started; returns false if a checkpoint could not be started because transaction logs are full or checkpoints are suspended.

To Change to Partial Logging

Once the full transaction logging has been started on a repository, the STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING state of True persists regardless of later changes to the configuration file. To terminate full logging, use the following procedure:

Step 1. Perform a Smalltalk full backup using `Repository>>fullBackupTo:`. See "How to Make a Smalltalk Full Backup" on page 284.

Step 2. Edit the configuration file to set the STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING option to False.

Step 3. Stop the Stone repository monitor.

Step 4. Replace the first (primary) extent file with a copy of `$GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf`. Delete any other extent files.

Step 5. Restart GemStone.

Step 6. Restore the backup using `Repository>>restoreFromBackup:` or `restoreFromBackups:`. See "How to Restore from a Smalltalk Full Backup" on page 290.

7.3 How to Manage Partial Logging

Partial logging is GemStone's default mode because it provides ease of administration with protection against loss of data from system crashes. The Stone repository monitor treats the log directories as a circular list. If the file in the current directory reaches the limit set by STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES, the Stone switches to the next directory in the list that does not contain a transaction log. In the process of creating log *n*, the Stone attempts to find and delete log (*n* – size_of_STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES); for example, if the new log will be `tranlog7.dbf` and there are three elements in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES, the Stone searches all three in attempting to delete `tranlog4.dbf.`

You should ensure that there always is sufficient disk space for at least two log files (their default size is 10 MB each), so that one can be preserved when the next is opened.

To Change to Full Logging

To change a repository from partial to full logging, simply change the STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING setting to True (page 403) and restart the Stone repository monitor.

CAUTION
Be sure to make a new GemStone full backup in full-logging mode so that you will be able to restore from the transaction logs if necessary. Transaction logs cannot be restored to backups that were made in partial-logging mode.

7.4 How to Recover from Tranlog-Full Conditions

Transaction Log Space Full

If the space for transaction logs becomes full, the Stone stops processing commits or other requests that initiate a write to the transaction log. Sessions performing these operations are blocked until the condition is resolved and may appear to the user to be hung. The Stone writes a message like the following in its log:

```
The tranlog directories are full and the stone process is
waiting for an operator to make more space available by
either cleaning up the existing files (copying them to
archive media and deleting them) or by adding a new tranlog
directory.
```

Also, the error `#rtErrTranlogDirFull` is sent to any sessions that have enabled receipt of this error by sending `System enableSignalTranlogsFull`, and setting up a handler for this error.

Once enabled, you can disable receipt of this error by sending `System disableSignalTranlogsFull`, and determine the current status by `System signalTranlogsFullStatus`.

If the transaction log space is full, you have the following options:

* You can free space by taking some existing log files offline. Archive them using operating system utilities and then remove them. GemStone can reuse that slot in the circular list of log directories. (To archive and remove a log file from a raw partition, use **copydbf** and then **removedbf**.)

* You can increase the available log space by adding a raw partition or a directory on another disk drive to the STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES configuration option (page 404). Add its maximum file size to STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES. For information on how to make these changes while GemStone is running, see "To Add a Log at Run Time" on page 202.

When transaction log space becomes available, waiting sessions can complete operations that were blocked.

Monitoring GemStone

This chapter tells you:

- Where to look for the log files that GemStone/S 64 Bit processes create

- How to audit the repository

- How to monitor the performance of the GemStone server and its clients using GemStone Smalltalk methods

If you decide to keep a GemStone session running for occasional use, be careful not to leave it in an active transaction. A prolonged transaction can cause an excessive commit record backlog and impede garbage collection activity, resulting in undesirable repository growth, until you either commit or abort.

NOTE
For sessions that are not committing changes to the repository, we
recommend that monitoring be done in manual transaction mode. For
details on entering and using manual transaction mode, see page 122.

8.1 GemStone System Logs

In addition to transaction logs, GemStone creates three types of log files:

- Logs for GemStone object server processes (page 208)

- Logs for processes related to individual GemStone sessions (page 213)

- Logs for GemStone network server processes, NetLDIs (page 215)

If a GemStone server is running, you can use the **gslist** utility to locate its logs. Use **gslist -x** to display the location of the current log file for Stones, NetLDIs, and the shared page cache monitors.

The logs for the AIO page servers, Free Frame page servers, SymbolGem, Page Manager, and Admin and Reclaim GcGems are in the same location as the corresponding Stone's log.

> *WARNING*
> *The Stone writes several files to the* /opt/gemstone/locks
> *directory. To avoid system failure, do not remove these files*
> *manually.Use* **gslist -c** *to remove unnecessary files from the*
> /opt/gemstone/locks *directory.*

For more about the **gslist** command, see page 415.

GemStone Server Logs

The Stone repository monitor and its child processes each create a log file in a single location. By default, the files are in $GEMSTONE/data and have a name beginning with the name of the repository monitor. Table 8.1 shows typical log names for a repository monitor with the default name of gs64stone. Log names for child processes also include the process id and a descriptive suffix.

Table 8.1   Representative Log Names for GemStone Server Processes

`gs64stone.log`	Stone repository monitor
`gs64stone_14033admingcgem.log`	Admin GcGem
`gs64stone_2963pcmon.log`	Shared page cache monitor
`gs64stone_2967pgsvrff.log`	Free Frame page server
`gs64stone_2984pgsvraio.log`	AIO page server
`gs64stone_2987pagemanager.log`	Page Manager
`gs64stone_2992reclaimgcgem0-6.log`	Reclaim GcGem
`gs64stone_2994symbolgem.log`	Symbol Gem

Several factors can alter the name and location of these logs. The precedence is

1. A path supplied by **startstone** **-l** *logFile.* If *logFile* is relative (that is, not a complete path preceded by a /), *logFile* is created in a current directory. Logs for the child processes in Table 8.1 are placed in the same directory.

2. A path specified by the GEMSTONE_LOG environment variable. If *logFile* is relative (that is, not a complete path preceded by a /), *logFile* is created in a current directory. Logs for the child processes in Table 8.1 are placed in the same directory.

3. `$GEMSTONE/data/`*gemStoneName*`.log.`

Stone Log

The log for the Stone repository monitor is cumulative across runs. This log is the first one you should check when a GemStone system problem is suspected. In addition to possible warnings and error messages, the log records the following useful information:

•   The GemStone version.

•   The configuration files that were read at startup and, if DUMP_OPTIONS is set to True (page 380), the resulting Stone configuration.

•   Each startup and shutdown of the Stone, the reason for the shutdown, and whether recovery from transaction logs was necessary at startup.

•   Each expansion of a repository extent and its current size.

•   Each opening of a new transaction log.

- Each startup and shutdown of the GcGem(s), and the corresponding processId.

- Each #abortErrLostOtRoot sent to a Gem.

- Each suspension and resumption of logins.

- Certain changes to the login security system.

Admin GcGem Logs

Each time the Stone repository monitor starts a new administrative garbage collection (Admin GcGem) session process, a new log is created in the same location as the Stone's log. If the Admin GcGem exits normally, the current log is automatically removed. When GcUser logs in again, a new log is opened under a name that includes the process ID of the new Admin GcGem.

These logs show the startup value of the Admin GcGem parameters that are stored in GcUser's UserGlobals and any changes to them.

If you want to retain this log even when the Admin GcGem process exits normally, edit the shell script `$GEMSTONE/sys/rungcgem`. Make sure that the following line is not commented out:

`unset GEMSTONE_CHILD_LOG`

CAUTION
*Any changes that you make to the `rungcgem` script will also apply to
the Page Manager and to all other GcGems.*

Shared Page Cache Monitor Log

The log for the shared page cache monitor is located in the same directory as the Stone's log and is for a particular process (in Table 8.1, it is for processId 2963). Check this log if other messages refer to a shared page cache failure.

When a session logs in from another node, a log is created for the shared page cache monitor on that node. By default, this log is named `startshrpcmon`*PidNode*`.log`, where *Pid* is a process Id and *Node* is the name of the node. The default location is the home directory of the account that started the Stone.

Among the items included in the log for the shared page cache monitor are:

- Its configuration (for remote nodes, this may be different from the configuration on the Stone's node).

- The number of processes that can attach (which can limit the number of logins).

- The UNIX identifiers for the memory region and the semaphore array (these identifiers are helpful in the event you must remove them manually using the **ipcrm** command).

Free Frame Page Server Log

The log for the repository monitor's private free frame page servers are located in the same directory as the Stone's log. Each log is for a specific free frame page server process and is automatically removed if the page server exits normally.

These logs ordinarily are not of interest unless they contain an error message.

If you want to retain this log even when a free frame page server process exits normally, edit the shell script $GEMSTONE/sys/runpgsvrmain. Make sure that the following line is *not* commented out:

```
unset GEMSTONE_CHILD_LOG
```

CAUTION
Any changes that you make to the runpgsvrmain *script will also*
apply to all other free frame and AIO page server processes.

AIO Page Server Log

The logs for the repository monitor's private AIO page servers are located in the same directory as the Stone's log. Each log is for a specific page server process and is automatically removed if the page server exits normally.

These logs ordinarily are not of interest unless they contain an error message.

If you want to retain this log even when an AIO page server process exits normally, edit the shell script $GEMSTONE/sys/runpgsvrmain. Make sure that the following line is *not* commented out:

```
unset GEMSTONE_CHILD_LOG
```

CAUTION
Any changes that you make to the runpgsvrmain *script will also*
apply to all other AIO and free frame page server processes.

Page Manager Log

The Page Manager log is located in the same directory as the Stone's log. This log is for a specific page manager process, and is automatically removed if the page manager exits normally.

These logs ordinarily are not of interest unless they contain an error message.

If you want to retain this log even when the Page Manager process exits normally, edit the shell script `$GEMSTONE/sys/rungcgem`. Make sure that the following line is not commented out:

```
unset GEMSTONE_CHILD_LOG
```

CAUTION
Any changes that you make to the `rungcgem` *script will also apply to all GcGem processes.*

Reclaim GcGem Logs

Each time a new Reclaim GcGem session process is started, a new log is created in the same location as the Stone's log. (For details about Reclaim GcGems, see Chapter 10, "Managing Growth.") If the Reclaim GcGem exits normally, the current log is automatically removed. When GcUser logs in again, a new log is opened under a name that includes the process ID of the new Reclaim GcGem.

These logs show the startup value of the Reclaim GcGem parameters that are stored in GcUser's UserGlobals and any changes to them.

A Reclaim GcGem acts on a range of extent files. The digits in the log file name represent the start and stop indices (starting with 0) of the range for this Reclaim GcGem. In Table 8.1, the log name (`gs64stone_2992reclaimgcgem0-6.log`) indicates that the Reclaim GcGem is running on the first seven extents of the repository (0–6).

If you want to retain this log even when a Reclaim GcGem process exits normally, edit the shell script `$GEMSTONE/sys/rungcgem`. Make sure that the following line is not commented out:

```
unset GEMSTONE_CHILD_LOG
```

CAUTION
Any changes that you make to the `rungcgem` *script will also apply to the Page Manager and to all other GcGems.*

Symbol Gem Log

The Symbol Gem log is located in the same directory as the Stone's log. This log is for a specific Symbol Gem process, but is not removed when the symbol Gem exits.

These logs are not ordinarily of interest unless they contain an error message.

Logs Related to Gem Sessions

Sessions frequently depend on NetLDI services to spawn one or more supporting processes. In each case, the NetLDI creates a log file that includes in its name the identity of the node on which the process is running. Typical processes are:

*   A Gem session process to serve an RPC application (linked Gem session processes do not produce logs).

*   A page server (for the session) to access a repository extent on the server node.

*   A page server (for the Stone) to start or access a shared page cache on the client's node.

*   A shared page cache monitor (for the Stone) to manage the cache on the client's node.

When the application is running on the same node as the Stone repository monitor, only the Gem session process is needed, and only then to serve an RPC application.

These log files ordinarily are located in the home directory of the account that owns the corresponding process. For the Gem session process and the page server on the server node, that account ordinarily is the application user. For the shared page cache monitor and page server on the client node, that account is the one that invoked **startstone**.

Table 8.2 shows typical log names for session-related processes, given a Stone and repository on *node1* with a login from a Gem session process on *node2.*

Table 8.2   Typical Logs Supporting Gem Sessions

Typical Name	GemStone Process
`gemnetobject27853`*node2*`.log`	Gem session process on *node2* (serves an RPC application)
`pgsvrmain27819`*node2*`.log`	Page server on *node2* that the repository monitor uses to create and access its shared page cache on *node2*
`startshrpcmon27820`*node2*`.log`	Shared page cache monitor on *node2*
`pgsvrmain12397`*node1*`.log`	Page server on *node1* that the Gem session process uses to access the repository extents on *node1*

If a process shuts down normally, the log file is automatically removed. After an abnormal shutdown, any log files that remain can provide helpful information.

You can change the default location by setting **#dir** or **#log** in the GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL environment variable for the NetLDI itself or for individual clients (see "To Set a Default NRS" on page 79). Alternatively, when you log in to GemStone, you can specify a different network resource string (NRS) in your login parameters.

The log for a Gem session process ordinarily is not of interest unless it contains an error message. The other logs have the same content as their counterparts for the object server child processes, above.

If you want to retain the log even when a Gem session process exits normally, edit the shell script `$GEMSTONE/sys/gemnetobject`. (For remote page servers, edit the shell script `$GEMSTONE/sys/runpgsvr` instead.) Make sure that the following line is *not* commented out:

`unset GEMSTONE_CHILD_LOG`

CAUTION
Any changes that you make to these scripts will apply to all other Gem sessions or remote page server processes, respectively.

NetLDI Logs

Each NetLDI creates a log file (*netLdiName*.log) in /opt/gemstone/log on the node on which it runs. (For compatibility with previous GemStone/S products, these directories can be in /usr.) This location and name can be overridden by including the option **-l***logname* when starting the NetLDI. Each NetLDI you start with the same name appends to one log, so it's a good idea to remove outdated messages occasionally.

By default, the NetLDI log contains only configuration information and error messages. The configuration information reflects the environment at the time the NetLDI was started and the effect of any authentication switches specified as part of the startup command. The following log description for the default configuration may be helpful for comparison:

```
System password authorization is permitted.
Authentication is required only to create processes.
Process creation is permitted through user's HOME directory.
Created processes belong to client's account.
```

The preceding lines map to NetLDI options in this way:

Line 1   Authentication is not restricted.

Line 2   Guest mode is not in use (-**g**), but authentication is not required for all NetLDI services (-**s**).

Line 3   Services are not restricted to those listed in $GEMSTONE/bin/services.dat (-**n**).

Line 4   Captive accounts are not in use (-**a***name*).

In some cases it is helpful to log additional information by starting the NetLDI in debug mode (**startnetldi** -**d**). The debug log records each exchange between the NetLDI and a client. Because the log becomes much larger, you probably won't want to use this mode routinely.

8.2 How to Audit the Repository

This section describes two levels of checks that you can perform on the repository.

• A *page audit* (page 216) typically is invoked only to ensure page-level consistency after some kind of system failure, such as a read-write error or a cache coherency error. In these cases, a successful page audit indicates that the

problem did not affect the committed repository. GemStone must be halted when you perform a page audit.

- An *object audit* (page 218) checks the consistency of the repository at the object level and generates useful statistics in the process. An object audit can be performed as part of routine maintenance and is always performed while GemStone is running.

To Perform a Page Audit

Page audits allow you to diagnose problems in the system repository by checking for consistency at the page level. You do not need to run this utility as part of routine maintenance of the repository.

The **pageaudit** utility can be run only on a repository that is not in use.

Page audits scan the rootpages in a repository, along with those pages used in the bitmap structures referenced by the rootpage. Many pages, including data pages, are not actually checked during a page audit. To check the integrity of all repository pages, perform a page audit, then perform an object audit as described on page 218.

To check for page-level problems, run **pageaudit** on the repository defined in your ordinary GemStone configuration by issuing this command at the operating system level:

% **pageaudit** [*gemStoneName*] [**-z***systemConfig*] [**-e***exeConfig*] [-**h**]

where:

- *gemStoneName* is the name of the GemStone repository monitor.
- *systemConfig* is the system configuration file (page 368).
- *exeConfig* is the executable configuration file (page 371).

All of these arguments are optional in a standard GemStone configuration. If these options are not supplied, **pageaudit** uses gs64stone for *gemStoneName*.

- For more about the **pageaudit** command and its options, see page 417.
- For online documentation, type **pageaudit -h** or **man pageaudit**.

As **pageaudit** runs, it prints repository statistics to the screen. For example:

```
PAGE AUDIT STATISTICS paris sun4u (Solaris 2.9
Generic_117171-08) - 08/25/08 08:55:16 PDT
16384 bytes = 1 GemStone Page
1048576 bytes = 1 Mbytes
Repository Size                              53 Mbytes
Data Pages                                    6 Mbytes
Meta Information Pages                         1 Mbytes
Shadow Pages                                  0 Mbytes
Free Space in Repository                     44 Mbytes
**** Number of differences found in page allocation = 0.


Page Audit of Repository completed successfully.
```

The report contains the following statistics:

Repository Size   The total physical size of the repository; this is the same size
                      that the operating system reports for an extent file.

Data Pages   This includes all pages referenced from the object table.

Meta Information Pages
                      Pages that contain only internal information about the
                      repository, such as the object table.

Shadow Pages   Pages scheduled for scavenging by the reclaim task.

Free Space in Repository
                      Free space in the repository is computed as the number of free
                      pages times the size of a page (16 KB). That value reflects the
                      number of pages available for allocation to Gem session
                      processes. It excludes space fragments on partially filled data
                      pages.

If the page audit finds problems, the message to the screen ends with a message
like this:

```
-------------- PAGE AUDIT RESULTS --------------
**** NumberOfFreePages = 980 does not agree with audit
      results = 988

**** Problems were found in Page Audit.
**** Refer to recovery procedures in System Administrator's
Guide.
```

If there are problems in the page audit, you will need to restore the repository file from backups. (See the section "How to Restore from a Smalltalk Full Backup" on page 290.)

To Perform an Object Audit and Repair

Privileges required: GarbageCollection.

Object audits check the consistency of the repository at the object level. The output includes a description of any errors found and, depending on the particular method invoked, statistics about the Repository.

Before audit can execute, there must be no objects waiting for reclaim. Unreclaimed objects result in unreliable audit results. Object audit methods perform a reclaimAll as part of execution. Reclaim GcGems and the Admin GcGem must be running to allow reclaimAll to execute. In addition, if you are auditing with other users logged in, the other logged-in sessions must vote in order for reclaimAll to complete. Inactive sessions, which do not commit or abort, may hold up voting and prevent the objectAudit from completing.

GemStone provides several choices about how the audit is conducted:

- The level of consistency checking required
- The minimum object size for which statistics are generated
- Whether the audit is optimized for speed on large repositories

All of these approaches abort the current transaction, and garbage collection and other administrative sessions are shut down for their duration.

To have the highest degree of confidence in the audit results, perform the object audit in single-user mode. Logins are disabled for the duration of the audit, and additional consistency checks are made. When multiple users are logged in and creating objects that may or may not be committed later, the system cannot reliably check for errors such as objects that do not exist.

```
Repository>>auditWithLimit: sizeLimit
```

where *sizeLimit* is the object size threshold (bytes or Oops) below which statistics are not reported. The *sizeLimit* does not affect which objects are audited; it only affects reporting.

```
Repository>>objectAudit
```

objectAudit is the simplest method to use. It reports all errors it encounters, but statistics are reported only for objects larger than 100000 bytes or Oops. If the system is in single-user mode, detailed checks are performed,

otherwise the method performs more general checks. The output will indicate whether run in single-user mode with more checks, or in multi-user with fewer checks

The audit results and object statistics are written to standard output. If you execute the audit from an RPC session, the statistics output will written to the gem log, and this method will return true or false.

If you want to save the statistics, use `output push` within linked Topaz to redirect output to a log file. For information about the report, see "Understanding Object Audit Statistics" on page 222. If errors are detected, GemStone ordinarily re-scans the repository to provide detailed information.

Quick Audits

The optimized method `Repository>>quickObjectAuditWithLevel:` *anInt* is intended for use with large repositories, where it runs substantially faster than `objectAudit` and `auditWithLimit:`. However, this method must be run in single-user mode, and the Admin GcGem must have had time to complete dead object finalization following any garbage collection activity. Object statistics are not reported in the interest of attaining the fastest performance.

`quickObjectAuditWithLevel: 1` is optimized to find the most common types of errors. The object table is not audited by this method, but most other checks done in the standard object audit (`Repository>>auditWithLimit:`) are performed. References to any non-existent, free or dead oops are reported as errors.

`quickObjectAuditWithLevel: 2` performs the same integrity audits as a level-1 quick audit. In addition, all object table entries are audited to verify the disk address of each object. On large repositories, this method takes longer to complete than a level-1 quick audit.

Performing the Object Audit

To perform an object audit:

Step 1. Log in to GemStone using linked Topaz (**topaz -l**).

Step 2. Verify that the Admin and Reclaim GcGems are running.

```
topaz 1> printit
System hasMissingGcGems
%
false
```

If this method returns true, start both an Admin GcGem and Reclaim GcGems for your system.

```
topaz 1> printit
System startAdminGcSession
%

topaz 1> printit
System startAllReclaimGcSessions
%
```

Step 3. Ensure that the system is in single-user mode:

```
topaz 1> printit
System stopUserSessions
%
```

For each active session (other than the one invoking it), this method aborts the transaction and terminates the session. It also suspends further logins. If you prefer, you can use stopSession: *aSession* to stop individual sessions by number.

> *NOTE*
> *If the Gem is responsive, it usually terminates within milliseconds of either* stopUserSessions *or* stopSession:*. However, if a Gem is not active (for example, sleeping or waiting on I/O), the stone waits for STN_GEM_TIMEOUT seconds before forcibly stopping the session. If STN_GEM_TIMEOUT is set to 0, it will wait for 5 minutes.*

Step 4. Send one of the audit messages to the repository. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository objectAudit
%
```

Errors During the Object Audit

If errors are reported during the object audit, do the following to determine if there is a problem:

❒   Make sure you are the only user logged in (other than GcUser).

❒   Make sure that the Admin GcGem and any Reclaim GcGems are running to complete processing of dead objects.

❒ Run `markForCollection` (see page 345):

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository markForCollection
%
```

(Alternatively, you can run the FDC/MGC process, as described on page 350.)

❒ Wait for the reclaim process (page 354) to complete.

❒ Repeat the object audit.

The audit involves a number of checks and specific error messages. The following categories illustrate their nature:

- Object corruption — The object header should contain valid (legal) information about the object's tag size, body size (number of instance variables), and physical size (bytes or OOPs). Errors of this type prevent a rescan for details.

- Object reference consistency — No object should contain a reference to a nonexistent object, including references to a nonexistent class.

- Identifier consistency — OOPs within the range in use (that is, up to the high-water mark) should be in either the Object Table or the list of free OOPs, and OOPs for objects existing in data pages should be in the Object Table. The exceptions should be dead objects in the process of being reclaimed.

Error Recovery

If the errors are a few invalid object references, you may choose to repair them yourself. Use the Topaz object identity specification format *@identifier* to substitute nil or an appropriate reference for an invalid reference. For example, to replace an invalid reference in an instance of Array:

topaz 1> **send @119873 at: 3 put: nil**

You can have GemStone attempt appropriate repairs during the re-scan by invoking `Repository>>repairWithLimit:`. The following repairs illustrate their nature:

- OopNil is substituted for an invalid object reference.

- Class String is substituted for an invalid class of a byte object, class Array for a pointer object, or class IdentitySet for a nonsequenceable collection object.

- Oops in the Object Table for which the referenced object does not exist are inserted into the list of free Oops. Oops for which an object exists but which are also in the list of free Oops are removed from the free list.

A descriptive message is displayed for each repair.

To have GemStone make the repairs, do the following:

Step 1. Log in to GemStone using linked Topaz (**topaz -l**).

Step 2. Make sure you are the only user logged in, other than administrative sessions. (See page 220, Step 3.) The next step will stop the GcUser session and disable logins for its duration.

Step 3. Send the message `repairWithLimit:`*sizeLimit* to the repository, specifying an appropriate threshold for reporting object statistics. For example, to use the same reporting limit as `objectAudit`:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository repairWithLimit: 100000
%
```

Because `repairWithLimit:` includes an object audit, some administrators prefer to use this method initially rather than repeating the audit in the process of repairing errors found by a previous audit. However, `repairWithLimit:` requires that you be the only user logged in.

Understanding Object Audit Statistics

Figure 8.1 shows a representative set of statistics resulting from an object audit. The report is in three parts:

1. A list of all objects (including private ones) that exceed a certain size limit, which in this example is 5000 bytes or Oops. The method `objectAudit` has a preset limit of 100000 as the smallest object to be included in the list.

    Inspect this list for large objects created by your application.

2. Statistics about invisible (private) classes that are reserved for GemStone's use. The number of these classes varies from release to release, and some may not be used in a particular release.

3. Statistics about instances of visible classes, including instances within the kernel.

    Of particular interest are the number of objects (which you can compare with the number reported by an audit of the initial GemStone repository) and the average size of an object's value. The size statistic may be helpful in estimating the eventual size of your repository (see "Estimating Extent Size" on page 19). In this example, the objects occupy an average of 75.9 bytes each plus an overhead of 26 bytes each.

Object tags are hidden instance variable slots in all objects except SmallIntegers, Booleans, and UndefinedObjects (nils). For further information, see the comment for `Object>>tagAt:` and `tagAt:put:` in the image.

Figure 8.1   Statistics from an Object Audit

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository auditWithLimit: 5000
%
--reclaimAll: changed StnSignalAbortCrBacklog from 20 to 3
--setGcConfig: set reclaimMinPages to 1
--reclaimAll: changed reclaimMinPages from 40 to 1
--reclaimAll: using reclaimDeadEnabled true
Object audit as of 08/25/08 11:39:05 PDT
Summary of objects whose sizes exceed 5000 Bytes or Oops:

  ObjectID      Class ClassName                     LogicalSize
-------------------------------------------------------------------
   105809      105881 WidgetCollection                  22340 Oops
    49007         523 Array                              6011 Oops
    82621         585 String                             6387 Bytes
    32025         585 String                             5747 Bytes
   149093      105881 WidgetCollection                   9113 Oops
    40977         585 String                             6029 Bytes
    90861         585 String                             8122 Bytes
 ...
 ----------- Object Statistics Summary ----------------

----- Instances of invisible (private) classes ------
   Number of instances:          22
            Total size:      155 K Bytes
          Average size:        7.0 Bytes

          Class: 1635 Instances:          0 Total Size:     0 K Bytes
          Class: 1636 Instances:          0 Total Size:     0 K Bytes
          Class: 1637 Instances:         22 Total Size:   155 K Bytes
          Class: 1638 Instances:          0 Total Size:     0 K Bytes
          Class: 1639 Instances:          0 Total Size:     0 K Bytes
          Class: 1640 Instances:          0 Total Size:     0 K Bytes
          Class: 1641 Instances:          0 Total Size:     0 K Bytes
      ...
----- Instances of visible classes ------------------
   Number of objects      :       72081
   Total Size             :        6781 K Bytes
   size of Object Headers :        1407 K Bytes
   size of Object Values  :        5344 K Bytes
   size of Object Tags    :           0 K Bytes
   average of Object Value:        75.9 Bytes

Object Audit: Audit successfully completed; no errors were detected.
--setGcConfig: set reclaimMinPages to 40
--postReclaimAll: restored reclaimMinPages to 40
true
topaz 1>
```

Larger Application Objects

Private Classes Reserved for Gem and Stone

Instance Statistics

8.3 Monitoring Performance

As part of your ongoing responsibilities, you may find it useful to monitor performance of the object server or individual session processes. You can obtain information separately about page reads and writes, or you can obtain more detailed cache statistics about that session.

This section discusses two ways in which GemStone supports monitoring:

- Command-line facilities to determine the general status.

- Smalltalk messages to access statistics maintained in the shared page cache.

In addition, GemStone provides two applications—*statmonitor* and VSD (Visual Statistics Display)—that allow you to monitor performance in depth. For details, see Appendix G.

To Monitor Page Reads and Writes by a Session

Privileges required: Statistics.

You can obtain information about session I/O by invoking the methods `System class>>pageReads` and `System class>>pageWrites` from that session. These methods return the number of reads and writes performed by that session since its start. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
System pageReads
%
19
topaz 1> printit
System pageWrites
%
0
```

To Monitor Cache Statistics

As mentioned above, the utility programs `statmonitor` and VSD allow you to examine cache statistics, the latter in a graphical way. For details on their use, see Appendix G.

A set of methods on the System class provide a way for you to analyze performance by programmatically examining the statistics that are collected in the shared page cache. (This is the same data that is visible using VSD.)

A process can only access statistics that are kept in the shared page cache to which it is attached. This means that processes that are remote from the Stone, and are thus attached to a local shared page cache, cannot access statistics for the Stone or for other server processes that are attached to the Stone's shared page cache.

Within the shared page cache, GemStone statistics are stored as an array of *process slots,* each of which corresponds to a specific process. To find the value of a particular statistic, you must first determine the process slot for that server process and the index of the statistic within the process slot. Based on this information, you can then locate the data of interest.

Process slot 0 is the shared page cache monitor. On the Stone's shared page cache, process slot 1 is the Stone; on remote caches, slot 1 is the page server for the Stone that started the cache. Subsequent process slots are the page servers, Page Manager, Admin and Reclaim GcGems, and Symbol Gems, and user Gems. The order of these slots depends on the order in which the processes are started up, and is different on remote caches.

You can use the method `System class >> myCacheProcessSlot` to return the process slot in the shared page cache that corresponds to the calling process.

To determine the index of a particular cache statistic, use the method `System Class >> cacheStatisticsDescription`. This method returns an array containing the names of all the statistics. The offsets given in this method may change with each release, so it is not a good idea to hard-code this, although you may wish to cache the descriptions. The statistic names won't change, so looking up via the name is safe.

You can use the method `System class >> cacheStatistics:` *aProcessSlot* to obtain an array of statistics for the process assigned to the specified slot.

For Gem processes, you can use the alternative methods `System class >> cacheStatisticsForSessionId:` or `System class >> cacheStatsForGemWithName:` to look up the statistics for a Gem process by sessionId or name, respectively. These methods return nil if the process with that sessionId or Gem name is not attached to the same cache as the calling process.

Each of these methods returns an array containing the current values for all statistics for the given process. Each statistics value is at the same offset as its name in the `cacheStatisticsDescription` array. Since not every process type records values for every statistic, the unused elements will have 0 value at that offset.

For example, to find out the index for the PossibleDeadKobjs, you could use this code:

```
topaz 1> printit
System cacheStatisticsDescription indexOf:
'PossibleDeadKobjs'.
%
113
```

The following code illustrates one way to look up the value for the Stone's PossibleDeadKobjs:

```
topaz 1> printit
| index |
index := System cacheStatisticsDescription indexOf:
'PossibleDeadKobjs'.
(System cacheStatistics: 1 "Stone" ) at: index.
%
0
```

This example shows how you might go about finding the calling session's PageReads:

```
topaz 1> printit
| index |
index := System cacheStatisticsDescription indexOf:
'PageReads'.
(System cacheStatistics: System myCacheProcessSlot) at:
index.
%
966
```

To make it easier for you to track cache statistics for specific Gems, you can explicitly give each Gem a unique name. The private method `System _cacheName:` *aString* sets the name for the current Gem session in the cache statistics, thus making it much easier to read the statistics in VSD. Note that `_cacheName:` is a private method; as such, it is provided here only for your convenience, and is subject to change in future releases.

Session Statistics

In addition to the system-generated statistics listed below, GemStone provides a facility for defining session statistics — user-defined statistics that can be written and read by each session, to monitor and profile the internal operations specific to your application.

There are 48 session cache statistic slots available, with names of the form
SessionStat0...SessionStat47.

You can use the following methods to read and write the session cache statistics:

System Class >> _sessionCacheStatAt: *anIndex*

> Returns the value of the statistic at the designated index (must be in the range
> 0..47).

System Class >> _sessionCacheStatAt: *anIndex* put: *aValue*

> Assigns a value to the statistic at the designated index (must be in the range
> 0..47) and returns the new value.

System Class >> _sessionCacheStatsForProcessSlot: *aProcessSlot*

> Return an array containing the 48 session statistics for the given process slot,
> or nil if the process slot is not found or is not in use.

System Class >> _sessionCacheStatsForSessionId: *aSessionIdt*

> Return an array containing the 48 session statistics for the given session id, or
> nil if the session is not found or is not in use.

Global Session Statistics

In addition to the gem session statistics, GemStone/S 64 Bit provides global
session statistics — user-defined statistics that can be written and read by any Gem
on any Gem server. Unlike Session Cache Statistics, which are stored in the shared
page cache of the machine that the gem is running on, Global session statistics are
stored in the shared page cache of the Stone. Global session statistics are not
transactional. For a given statistic, every session sees the same value, regardless of
its transactional view.

There are 48 global cache statistic slots available, with names of the form
GlobalStat0...GlobalStat47.

You can use the following methods to read and write the global cache statistics:

System Class >> globalSessionStatAt: *aProcessSlot*

> Returns the value of the statistic at the designated slot (must be in the range
> 0..47).

System Class >> globalSessionStatAt: *aProcessSlot* put: *aValue*

Assigns a value to the statistic at the designated slot (must be in the range 0..47) and returns the new value. The value must be a SmallInteger in the range of -2147483648 to 2147483647.

```
System Class >> incrementGlobalSessionStatAt: aProcessSlot by:
anInt
```

Increments the value of the statistic at the designated slot by *anInt* and returns the new value of the statistic. The value *anInt* must be a SmallInteger in the range of -2147483648 to 2147483647.

OS level statistics

While most monitoring is of the object server and session processes, it is also useful to monitor the performace of the operating system that is running GemStone. On host platforms that support it, the following methods return statistics provided by the operating system. This is the same information that is available in statmonitor; see page 479.

System class>> fetchSystemStatNames
Return an array of Strings with the names of the available OS level statistics. The length is host dependent. If the host system does not support system statistics, this method returns nil.

System class >> fetchSystemStats
Return an array of Numbers corresponding to the names returned by he #fetchSystemStatNames method. The length of the result array is host dependent. While most elements in the result array will be SmallIntegers, the result may also contain other types of Numbers such as SmallDoubles, Floats, LargePositiveIntegers, etc. If the host system does not support system statistics, this method returns nil.

Cache Statistics

This section lists the GemStone/S 64 Bit statistics in alphabetical order. The heading indicates the processes for which the statistic is applicable: Stone, Gem, SPC (shared page cache) monitor, Pgsvr (AIO page server), or all.

NOTE
Certain statistics not listed in this chapter, but visible in VSD displays,
are for internal purposes only.

AbortCount (Gem)

The number of aborts executed by a Gem process (or by an application linked to a Gem) since the Gem was most recently started.

AioCkptCount (Pgsvr)

The number of dirty pages written from the shared page cache to disk to satisfy a checkpoint.

AioDirtyCount (Pgsvr)

The number of dirty pages written from the shared page cache to disk by Stone's AIO page server during normal operation.

AioNumBuffers (Stone)

The current setting of STN_MAX_AIO_REQUESTS

AioNumEmptyBuffers (Stone)

The number of internal AIO buffers that are currently empty. The stone will block when starting a tranlog write unless at least 3 buffers are empty.

AioRateLimit (Pgsvr)

The current I/O rate being used by the page server, expressed in I/O operations per second. The page server will perform no more than this number of I/O operations per second on average.

AioRateMax (Pgsvr)

The current maximum I/O rate being used by the page server, expressed in I/O operations per second. The page server will perform no more than this number of I/O operations per second on average.

AioWriteFailures (Pgsvr)

Total number of write errors detected by this page server, including write errors that succeeded on retry.

AsyncFlushesInProgress (Pgsvr)

The number of pending extent flush operations.

BackupHighWaterPage (Stone)

The first page ID which reclaim gems are allowed to reclaim during a full backup.

BackupRecordPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
BackupRecordPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of backup record pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

BitlistPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
BitlistPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of bitlist pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively. A bitlist page is a form of a bit array.

BitmapPageReads (all)

The number of bitmap pages read by the process since it was last started. These page reads are actual disk reads and not reads from the shared page cache.

BmCHeapPages (Gem, Stone)

The number of temporary bitmap pages allocated on the C heap of the process.

BmInternalPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
BmInternalPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of bitmap internal pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

BmLeafPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
BmLeafPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of bitmap leaf pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

CacheSlotIndex (all)

Index of the slot in the shared page cache used by this process.

CHeapSizeKB (all)

The size (in KB) of the C heap area; that is, the total size of results of UtlMalloc for which UtlFree has not been called. This statistic is computed only in slow or fastdebug executables.

CheckpointCount (Stone)

The number of checkpoints that have been written since the Stone repository monitor was last started. Writing a checkpoint implies that all of the data and meta information needed to recover the data corresponding to the commit record associated with the checkpoint have been written to the disk(s) containing the extent(s) that make up the repository. Thus, the last checkpoint in the transaction log determines how much data in the log must be recovered when there is a system crash.

In full logging mode, the checkpoints are controlled completely by the STN_CHECKPOINT_INTERVAL configuration parameter (page 391). In partial logging mode, a checkpoint may be written more often if the size of the transaction exceeds the value set by the configuration parameter STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT (page 404). If partial logging is in use, a rapidly increasing CheckpointCount indicates that STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT may be set too small.

CheckpointState (Stone)

This internal statistic indicates the state of the checkpoint process:

    0 — checkpoint not active

    1 — AIO servers writing pages

    2 — pre-fsync processing

    3 — synchronous fsync

    4 — asynchronous fsync

    5 — second fsync

    6 — dispose alloc pages shadowed

    7 — write log record

These values are provided for information only and are subject to change without notice.

ClassesRead (Gem)

The number of classes copied into VM memory since the start of session.

CleanSlotsInRecoveryCount (SPC monitor)

The current number of slots being recovered which were owned by a process which shutdown cleanly.

CleanSlotsRecoveredCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of slots the shared cache monitor has recovered because a client process shutdown cleanly.

CleanSlotThreadTimeRunningMs (SPC monitor)

Approximate real time in milliseconds that the clean slot recovery thread in the shared page cache monitor has spent doing work.

ClientLostOtsSent (Pgsvr)

The number of Lost OT root signals sent from the stone to the page server's client.

ClientPageReads (Pgsvr)

The number of pages that have been transmitted by a page server to its client. This statistic is implemented only for cache slots used by a page server.

ClientPageWrites (Pgsvr)

The number of pages that have been transmitted by a client to its page server. This statistic is implemented only for cache slots used by a page server.

ClientPid (Pgsvr)

The process ID of the client process associated with this AIO page server process.

ClientSigAbortsSent (Pgsvr)

The number of SigAborts sent from the stone to the page server's client.

ClockHandFrameId (Pgsvr)

The shared page cache frame ID that the page server clock hand currently references.

CodeCacheSizeBytes (Gem)

The total size in bytes of copies of GsMethods that are in the code generation area and ready for execution, as of the end of mark/sweep.

CodeGenClearSendCachesCount (Gem)

Total number of times the gem has cleared all method send caches in code gen.

CodeGenGcCount (Gem)

The number of times the code generation area has been garbage collected.

CommitCount (Gem)

The number of commits executed by a Gem process (or application linked to a Gem) since the Gem was most recently started.

CommitQueueAddedToRunQueueCount (Stone)

The number of times sessions from the commit queue were added to the run queue.

CommitQueueAddedToRunQueueSessionCount (Stone)

The number of sessions from the commit queue which were added to the run queue.

CommitQueueSessionNotReadyCount (Stone)

The number of times the stone was ready to assign the commit token to a session in the commit queue but no session was not ready to receive the token.

CommitQueueSize (Stone)

The number of Gem session processes waiting for the commit token.

CommitQueueThreshold (Stone)

The current setting of the STN_COMMIT_QUEUE_THRESHOLD configuration parameter. This setting determines how large the commit queue must be before the stone will defer commit record disposal. A value of -1 indicates this feature is disabled and commit record disposal will never be deferred.

CommitRecordCount (Stone)

The number of outstanding commit records that are currently being maintained by the system. A number larger than the STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG configuration option (page 403) indicates that there is a process in a transaction that is preventing the Stone from reclaiming (garbage collecting) the resources associated with those commit records. Large values are usually accompanied by continuing growth in the size of the repository.

CommitRecordDisposalsDeferredCount (Stone)

The number of times the stone deferred commit record disposal because the number of sessions in the commit queue exceeded the STN_COMMIT_QUEUE_THRESHOLD setting.

CommitRecordDisposalState (Stone)

An internal statistic used to analyze the commit record disposal routines.

CommitRecordPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
CommitRecordPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of commit record pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

CommitRecordsDisposedCount (Stone)

The total number of commit records disposed by the Stone.

CommitRecordsReadAbortCount (Gem)

The number of commit records read while processing an abort.

CommitRecordsReadCommitWithoutTokenCount (Gem)

The number of commit records read while processing a commit and the Gem is waiting for the commit token.

CommitRecordsReadCommitWithTokenCount (Gem)

The number of commit records read while processing a commit and the Gem has the commit token.

CommitRetryFailureCount (Gem)

The number of commits that failed after exceeding the retry count.

CommitsSinceLastEpoch (Stone)

Number of commits, excluding reclaim commits by GcGems, since the start of the currently open epoch.

CommitTokenSession (Stone)

The session ID of the gem holding the commit token. If no gem is holding the commit token, the value will be zero.

CountBagInteriorPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
CountBagInteriorPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of count bag interior pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

CountBagLeafPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
CountBagLeafPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of count bag leaf pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

CountMapLeafPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
CountMapLeafPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

These statistics are obsolete; the page kind is no longer used.

CrashedSlotsInRecoveryCount (SPC monitor)

The current number of slots being recovered which were owned by a crashed process.

CrashedSlotsRecoveredCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of slots the shared cache monitor has recovered because a client process shutdown abnormally.

CrashedSlotThreadTimeRunningMs (SPC monitor)

Approximate real time in milliseconds that the crashed slot recovery thread in the shared page cache monitor has spent doing work.

CrPageLocateForDisposeCount (Stone)

Number of times a commit record page was not found in the stone's commit record cache at commit record disposal time.

DataPageReads (all)

The number of data pages read by the process since it was last started. These page reads are actual disk reads and not reads from the shared page cache.

DataPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
DataPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of data pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

DeadDataPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
DeadDataPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of dead data pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively. Dead data pages are intended for disposal.

DeadNotReclaimedKobjs (Stone)

The number of objects that have been determined to be dead (current sessions have indicated they do not have a reference to these objects) but have not yet been reclaimed. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

DeadObjsReclaimedCount (Stone)

The total number of dead objects reclaimed since the Stone repository monitor process was last started. For a system in "steady state" for a particular application, look for a uniform discovery rate per garbage collection epoch. Increasing the duration of the epoch should increase this value, but that could also cause larger swings in the amount of free space in the repository.

DeferCkptCompleteCount (Stone)

The number of pending commit operations for which the checkpoint will allow itself to be deferred before it completes.

DepMapKeysChanged (Gem)

The total number of objects with DependencyMap changes committed by this session.

DirtyListSize (Gem)

The number of modified committed objects in the temporary object memory dirty list.

DirtyPageSweepCount (Pgsvr)

The number of times the page server has swept the cache for dirty pages or frames to add to the free list.

EmptyBmLeafPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)

The number of empty bitmap leaf pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem.

EmptyBmLeafPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of empty bitmap leaf pages in the cache because of a write done by the Stone.

EpochForceGc (Stone)

This statistic is 1 when a user has requested that Epoch garbage collection be started manually, and is otherwise zero.

EpochGcCount (Stone)

The number of times that the Epoch garbage collection process was run by the GcGem since the GcGem was started. For a system in steady state, look for uniform periods between runs or a uniform run rate.

EpochLastDuration (Stone)

The duration of the last completed epoch garbage collection operation in seconds.

EpochNewKobjs (Stone)

The number of new objects that were created during the last epoch. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

EpochPossibleDeadKobjs (Stone)

The number of possible dead objects found by the last Epoch garbage collection. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

EpochScannedKobjs (Stone)

The number of objects scanned by the last Epoch garbage collection. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

ExportedSetSize (Gem)

The number of objects in the ExportSet. The ExportSet is a collection of objects for which the Gem process has handed out an Oop to GemBuilder or Topaz. Objects in the ExportSet are prevented from being automatically garbage collected in the Gem's temporary object memory (see page 329). The ExportSet is used to

guarantee referential integrity for objects only referenced by an application, that is, objects that have no references to them within the Gem.

The application program is responsible for timely removal of objects from the ExportSet. The contents of the ExportSet can be examined using hidden set methods defined in class System. In general, the smaller the size of the ExportSet, the better the performance is likely to be. There are a couple of reasons for this relationship. The ExportSet is one of the root sets used for garbage collection. The larger the ExportSet, the more likely it is that objects that would otherwise be considered garbage are being retained. One threshold for performance is when the size of the export set exceeds 2K objects. When its size is smaller than 2K objects, the export set is stored as a single disk page. When its size is larger than 2K, the export set occupies more than one page and is likely to cause additional I/O.

ExtentFlushCount (all)

The cumulative number of file flush operations performed on any extent by the process. Note that extents residing on raw partitions do not require flushing. On UNIX systems, file flushes are performed by calling the fsync() function. During a checkpoint, each extent is flushed once, except for the primary extent which is flushed twice. Most extent flushes are performed by the AIO page servers.

FailedCommitCount (Gem)

The number of attempts to commit that failed due to concurrency conflicts.

FragmentBmPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
FragmentBmPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of bitmap fragment pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

FrameCount (SPC monitor)

The size of the shared cache in frames.

FramesAddedToFreeList (all)

The number of frames added to the free list since the session (for Gems), shared page cache, or Stone started.

FramesFromFreeList (all)

The number of times the process acquired a page frame in the shared page cache from the list of free frames.

FramesFromFindFree (all)

The number of times the process acquired a page frame in the shared page cache by scanning the cache entries. The process tries to find free frames this way instead of taking them from the free list when the number free is below the value set by the GEM_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT configuration option (page 380). While scanning for free frames under those conditions is desirable from a system perspective, it represents additional overhead for the particular session.

FreeFrameCacheNumFrames (all)

The number of frames present in the free frame cache for the process.

FreeFrameCacheSize (all)

The number of frames that the process will add or remove from the shared free frame list in a single operation. A value of zero indicates that free frames are not cached and will be added or removed from the shared free frame list one at a time.

FreeFrameCount (SPC monitor)

The number of unused page frames in the shared page cache. This statistic gives some indication of the utilization of the cache, but it is not tunable. This statistic is valid (non-zero) only for the shared page cache monitor process slot.

FreeFrameLimit (all)

When the number of free frames in the shared page cache is less than the FreeFrameLimit, the Gem scans the cache for a free frame rather than use one from the free frame list, so that the Stone process can use the remaining free frames.

FreeOopsK (Stone)

The number of free OOPs in the free list that have not been allocated to a Gem *and* committed. (Units: 1000s of OOPs.)

FreePages (Stone)

The size of the free page pool for the repository. Free space in the repository is calculated at 16 KB for each page in the free pool.

GarbageCollectionState (Gem)

The state of a garbage collection task in the Admin GcGem or a user performing a garbage collection operation. Values are defined as follows:

0 - Garbage collection not active
1 - Initialization
2 - Mark-sweep
3 - Compute dead objects
4 - Remove not dead objects
5 - Finalize weak references
6 - Start record dead
7 - Write possible dead objects to tranlog
8 - Finish record dead
9 - Write not dead objects to tranlog
10 - Send not dead objects to stone

GcHighWaterPage (Stone)

The first page ID which reclaim gems are allowed to reclaim during garbage collection or other repository scan.

GciBytesRcvd (Gem)

Number of bytes received from the RPC GCI client.

GciBytesSent (Gem)

Number of bytes sent to the RPC GCI client.

GciPhysBytesRcvd (Gem)

Number of bytes received from the RPC GCI client before decompression.

GciPhysBytesSent (Gem)

Number of bytes sent to the RPC GCI client after compression.

GciRpcCommandsServiced (Gem)

The number of GCI RPC commands serviced by this Gem.

GcVoteState (Stone)

GcVoteState tracks the progress of a number of phases within garbage collection. Possible values are:

- 0 – Not voting

- 1 – Gems are voting on the possible dead set

- 2 – Vote completed, awaiting start of Possible Dead Write-Set Union Sweep (PDWSUS).

- 3 – PDWSUS in progress

- 4 – PDWSUS completed

Note that all of these phases must complete before the PossibleDead objects can be "promoted" to DeadNotReclaimed objects. The Admin GcGem is responsible for performing the possible dead write set union sweep, and must be running for this to occur.

For details about the voting phase of garbage collection, see "What Happens to Garbage?" on page 324.

GcWsUnionSize (Stone)

The number of objects in the write set union used to finalize possible dead objects. All objects in the WSU must be scanned to determine if any objects reference one or more possible dead objects.

GcWsUnionSweepCount (Stone)

The total number of sweeps of the possible dead write set union that have been done by the Admin GcGem since it started.

GemFreePages (Gem)

The number of free pages that the VM or Gem has acquired but has not yet used.

GemHasCommitToken (Gem)

A boolean that indicates whether the Gem holds the commit token.

GemsInCacheCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of Gems using the shared page cache whose process slot you are viewing. This is useful for distinguishing Gems using a local shared page cache from those using a remote shared page cache.

GemTempObjCacheSizeKb (Gem)

The value of the session's GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE_KB configuration parameter.

GlobalDirtyPageCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of pages in the shared cache that are dirty but not yet eligible for asynchronous writing to the disk because they have not yet been committed. If this value is very large, then very large transactions may be filling the cache. Otherwise, if the Stone repository monitor is running on this cache, the Stone's private page cache size may be too small. This statistic is available only for the shared page cache monitor's slot (currently Slot 0).

GlobalStat0 — GlobalStat47 (Stone)

User-defined statistics that can be written and read by any Gem on any Gem server; that is, these statistics are stored in the shared page cache of the Stone, rather than that of the machine on which the Gem is running. There are 48 global cache statistic slots available. For details, see "Global Session Statistics" on page 228.

GsMsgCount (Stone)

The number of messages processed by the Stone on behalf of Gems. This statistic can help determine how busy the Stone is.

GsMsgKind (Stone)

An integer identifying the kind of message the Stone is currently processing.

GsMsgSessionId (Stone)

The session identifier of the Gem for which the Stone is currently processing a message.

InvalidPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
InvalidPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of invalid (i.e. empty) pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

LastSessionFatalError (Stone)

The session ID of the last session that reported a fatal error to the stone.

LastSessionIdStopped (Stone)

The session ID of the last session that was sent a stop session message.

LastSessionIdTerminated (Stone)

The session ID of the last session that was forcibly logged off by the stone.

LastSessionLostOt (Stone)

The session ID of the last session that was sent a SigLostOtRoot signal.

LastSessionSigAbort (Stone)

The session ID of the last session that was sent a SigAbort.

LastWakeupInterval (SPC monitor)

The average number of milliseconds that the shared page cache monitor is pausing between recalculations. If this value is low, the monitor is relatively busy; if high (for example, greater than 500 ms), the monitor is relatively quiet.

LdiThreadOperations (Stone)

The number of wakeups from semaphore wait in stone NetLdiCall Thread.

LocalCacheAllocatedPceCount (Gem, Stone)

The number of page cache entries that the process has allocated for collision chains.

LocalCacheFreeFrameCount (Gem, Stone)

The number of frames in the private page cache that are free.

LocalCacheFreePceCount (Gem, Stone)

The number of page cache entries in the free pool.

LocalCacheOverflowCount (Gem, Stone)

The number of times that a page was moved from private cache to the shared cache because the private cache was full.

LocalCachePceCountLimit (Gem, Stone)

The maximum number of page cache entries that the process will allocate before performing a reclaim.

LocalCachePceReclaimCount (Gem, Stone)

The number of page cache entry reclaim operations performed by the process.

LocalCacheStalePcesRemovedCount (Gem, Stone)

The number of stale page cache entries that the process has removed from its private page cache lookup table. Stale PCEs occur when a reference to page in the shared cache becomes invalid because the page is removed from the cache by another process.

LocalCacheValidPcesRemovedCount (Gem, Stone)

The number of valid page cache entries removed by a reclaim operation.

LocalDirtyPageCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of pages in the shared cache that are dirty and eligible for asynchronous writing to the disk. The Stone's AIO page server will write these pages to the disk. This statistic is available only for the shared page cache monitor's slot (currently Slot 0).

LocalPageCacheHits (all)

The number of times a page lookup found the page in the shared page cache. No I/O was required to access the page.

LocalPageCacheMisses (all)

The number of times a page was not found in the shared cache and a read operation was required to get the page.

LocalPageCacheWrites (all)

The number of times a page had to be written. With the shared page cache enabled, this statistic counts the writes from the private cache to the shared cache. If the shared page cache is disabled, it counts the pages written to disk.

LockReqQueueSize (Stone)

The number of Gem session processes waiting for a commit to complete so that their lock request can be serviced.

LockWaitQueueSize1 — LockWaitQueueSize10 (Stone)

The number of sessions waiting for the Application object lock with the given number. (System waitForApplicationWriteLock:queue:autoRelease:)

LogHighQueueAdds (Stone)

Number of additions to the LogHighQueue. See LogHighQueueSize.

LogHighQueueSize (Stone)

The number of sessions waiting for transaction log writing to be not saturated. This queue holds mostly committing sessions

LoginQueueSize (Stone)

The number of sessions waiting for login completion.

LoginRequestsCount (Stone)

The total number of login requests processed since the Stone started.

LogLowQueueAdds (Stone)

Number of additions to the LogLowQueue. See LogLowQueueSize.

LogLowQueueSize (Stone)

The number of lower priority sessions waiting for transaction log writing to be not saturated. This queue holds primarily sessions logging resourceIds such as possibleDead or notDead.

LogRecordPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
LogRecordPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of transaction log record pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

LogRecordsIoCount (Stone)

The number of physical write operations performed on the transaction logs since the Stone repository monitor process was last started. The minimum write to a transaction log is 512 bytes (one log record). The maximum number of bytes written in a single I/O to the transaction log is 64K. The implication for performance tuning is that to achieve the best throughput (in transactions per second) you would like to have as few as possible writes to the transaction logs.

The technique for achieving this is to tune the size of the transactions so that each transaction writes one or more completely filled 64K records.

LogRecordsWritten (Stone)

The number of log records that have been written to the transaction logs since the Stone repository monitor process was last started. The size of a log record is 512 bytes.

LogWaitQueueSize (Stone)

The size of the queue that holds sessions waiting for space to become available in a transaction log. This queue should be empty or nearly so unless the space for logging transactions has been exhausted.

LostOtPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
LostOtPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of lost OT pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

LostOtsReceived (Gem)

The number of Lost OT Root signals received and recognized by this session.

LostOtsSent (Gem)

The number of Lost OT Root signals the Stone has sent to this session, although the session may be in a sleep or I/O wait state and not yet aware of having received the signal. (See LostOtsReceived (Gem), above.)

MainThreadTimeRunningMs (SPC monitor)

Approximate real time in milliseconds that the main shared page cache monitor thread has spent doing work.

MarkSweepCount (Gem)

The number of mark/sweeps executed by the in-memory garbage collector.

MaxVotingSessions (Stone)

Maximum number of sessions that can concurrently vote on possible dead objects at the end of an MFC (`markForCollection`) or Epoch garbage collection.

MeSpaceAllocatedBytes (Gem)

The number of bytes allocated for remSet, in-memory oopMap, and map entries.

MeSpaceUsedBytes (Gem)

The number of bytes occupied by remSet, in-memory oopMap, and in-use map entries.

MessageKindToStone (Gem)

The message type of the most recent message sent to the Stone.

MessagesToStnProcessingCommit (Gem)

The number of messages sent to the Stone while the gem is processing its part of the commit.

MessagesToStnStoneCommit (Gem)

The number of messages sent to the Stone while the Stone is processing its part of the commit.

MessagesToStnWaitingForCommit (Gem)

The number of messages sent to the Stone while waiting for the commit token.

MessagesToStone (Gem)

The number of messages sent by the Gem session process to the Stone repository monitor using shared memory as the channel.

MethodsRead (Gem)

The number of GsMethods copied into VM memory since the start of this session.

MilliSecPerIoSample (all)

MilliSecPerIoSample is used as a parameter to implement the configurable I/O limit for GemStone processes. Because a process's I/O rate currently is sampled every five I/O operations, this statistic is computed as $1000/(ioLimit * 5)$. A value of 1 means that the process has no I/O limit. If the time in milliseconds since the last sample equals or exceeds MilliSecPerIoSample, the process can perform another I/O operation; if not, the process sleeps. MilliSecPerIoSample is particularly useful in limiting I/O rate of a process that is executing a long-running operation. If you want to calculate the current I/O limit, it is given by $1000/(MilliSecPerIoSample * 5)$.

MultObjPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
MultObjPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of multiple object pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

NetWriteThreadSocketWrites (Stone)

The number of socket write operations attempted in stone NetWrite thread.

NetWriteThreadWakeups (Stone)

The number of wakeups from semaphore wait in stone NetWrite thread.

NewGenSizeBytes (Gem)

The number of used bytes in the new generation at the end of mark/sweep.

NewObjsCommitted (Gem)

The number of new objects committed by the most recent transaction committed by this process.

NewSymbolRequests (Gem)

The number of symbol creation requests by a session to the symbol creation Gem.

NewSymbolsCount (Gem)

The number of new symbols created by this session.

NextSleepTime (Pgsvr)

The number of milliseconds that the page server will sleep during the next sleep period. This value is adjusted to regulate the IO rate of the page server.

NotifyQueueSize (Stone)

The number of Gem session processes using notifiers.

NumCacheWarmers (Stone)

The number of cache warmer gem processes currently operating on the shared cache.

NumInLdiQueue (Stone)

The number of uncompleted requests in the stone NetLdiCall thread input list.

NumInMainInpQueue (Stone)

The number of requests from other threads in the stone main thread input list.

NumInNetReadWorkList (Stone)

The number of tasks in the NetRead thread work list, produced by NetPoll action functions and not yet processed by the NetRead thread.

NumInNetWriteQueue (Stone)

The number of uncompleted requests in the input list to the stone NetWrite thread.

NumLiveSoftRefs (Gem)

The number of instances of SoftReference in temporary object memory found during an attempt to clear SoftReferences. This counter remains at zero until temporary object space grows to at least GEM_SOFTREF_CLEANUP_PERCENT_MEM (page 383).

NumNonNilSoftRefs (Gem)

The number of instances of SoftReference in temporary object memory with non-nil, non-special values, that were found during an attempt to clear SoftReferences. This counter remains at zero until temporary object space grows to at least GEM_SOFTREF_CLEANUP_PERCENT_MEM (page 383).

NumRefsStubbedMarkSweep (Gem)

The number of references contained in copies of committed objects that were stubbed (converted to a Pom objectId) by in-memory mark/sweep.

NumRefsStubbedScavenge (Gem)

The number of in-memory references that were stubbed (converted to a Pom objectId) by in-memory scavenge.

NumSharedCounters (SPC monitor)

The number of shared counters for this shared cache.

NumSoftRefsCleared (Gem)

The number of times that the in-memory garbage collector has cleared the `value` instance variable in instances of SoftReference.

NumVotingSessions (Stone)

The number of sessions that the stone has requested to vote on possible dead objects.

ObjectMemoryGrowCount (Gem)

On AIX and HPUX only, the number of times object memory was grown or shrunk by allocating a new virtual memory region with mmap().

ObjectsRead (Gem)

The number of committed objects copied into VM memory since the start of this session.

ObjectsReadInBytes (Gem)

Total size in bytes of committed objects copied into VM memory since start of session.

ObjectsRefreshed (Gem)

The number of committed objects in VM memory that have been re-read from the page cache after transaction boundaries, since the start of this session.

ObjectTablePageReads (all)

The number of object table pages read by the process since it was last started. These page reads are actual disk reads and not reads from the shared page cache.

ObjsCommitted (Gem)

The number of objects committed by the most recent transaction committed by this process.

OldestCrSession (Stone)

The session ID of a session referencing the oldest commit record. Note that more than one session may reference a commit record. A value of -1 indicates that the oldest commit record is not referenced by any session.

OldestCrSessNotInTrans (Stone)

The session ID of a session that is not in a transaction that is currently referencing the oldest commit record, which may be preventing it from being reclaimed.

OldGenSizeBytes (Gem)

The number of used bytes in the old generation at the end of mark/sweep.

OmBytesFlushed (Gem)

The total number of temporary object memory bytes flushed to Pom during commit attempts for this session.

OopNumberKHighWaterMark (Stone)

The highest number of object identifiers allocated by the system. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

OopsReturnedByGemsCount (Stone)

The total number of free oops returned to the stone by any gem.

OtherPageReads (all)

The number of pages read by the process that were not object table, data, or bitmap pages since the process was started. These page reads are actual disk reads and not reads from the shared page cache.

OtInternalPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
OtInternalPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of object table internal pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

OtLeafPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
OtLeafPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of object table leaf pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

PageDisposesDeferred (Stone)

The number of times a page disposal had to be deferred. This deferral can be caused by an asynchronous operation (checkpoint) being in progress on the page or by the page being attached or locked.

PageIoCount (all)

The number of page I/O (page read or page write) calls done by the process since it was last started.   Each I/O call may read or write more than one page.

PageIoTimeOverallAvg (all)

The average duration of a page I/O (page read or page write) call in microseconds.

PageIoTime10SampleAvg (all)

The average duration of a page I/O (page read or page write) call in microseconds. The average is computed for the last ten I/O operations, and is updated every ten I/O operations.

PageIoTime100SampleAvg (all)

The average duration of an I/O call (page read or page write) in microseconds. The average is computed for the last 100 I/O operations, and is updated every ten I/O operations.

PageLocateCount (all)

The number of times that the process located a page. The page may have been read from disk or found in the cache.

PageMgrPagesNotRemovedFromCachesCount (Stone)

The total number of pages that the Page Manager was unable to remove from one or more shared page caches.

PageMgrPagesPendingRemovalRetryCount (Stone)

The current number of pages that could not be removed from shared page caches by the page manager on the first attempt and are waiting to be retried.

PageMgrPagesReceivedFromStoneCount (Stone)

The total number of pages that the Page Manager session received from the Stone to remove from shared page caches.

PageMgrPagesRemovedFromCachesCount (Stone)

The total number of pages that the Page Manager has successfully removed from all shared page caches.

PageMgrRemoveFromCachesCount (Stone)

The total number of times that the Page Manager has attempted to remove pages from shared page caches.

PageMgrRemoveFromCachesPageCount (Stone)

The total number of pages that the Page Manager has attempted to remove from shared page caches. This statistic includes pages processed by page removal retry operations, which occur whenever a page cannot be removed from a shared page cache on the first attempt.

PageMgrRemovePagesFromCachesPollCount (Stone)

The number of times that the Page Manager called poll() or select() to determine which cache page servers have completed removing pages from their shared caches. This statistic represents the value during the most recent page disposal operation and is not cumulative. It varies between zero (when there are no remote shared caches on the system) and the number of remote shared page caches.

PageMgrTimeWaitingForCachePgsvrs (Stone)

The total amount of real time in milliseconds that the page manager has spent waiting to receive data from remote cache page servers.

PageReads (all)

The number of pages read by the process since it was last started. These page reads are actual disk reads and not reads from the shared page cache.

PageReadsProcessingCommit (Gem)

The number of pages read while the Gem is processing its part of the commit.

PageReadsStoneCommit (Gem)

The number of pages read while the Stone is processing its part of the commit.

PageReadsWaitingForCommit (Gem)

The number of pages read while waiting for the commit token.

PageServersInCacheCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of page servers attached to the shared cache.

PagesNeedReclaimSize (Stone)

The amount of reclamation work that is pending, that is, the backlog waiting for the GcGem reclaim task.

PagesNeedRemovingThreshold

Threshold for page manager to process the backlog described by PagesWaitingForRemovalInStoneCount. The current value of the STN_PAGE_REMOVAL_THRESHOLD configuration parameter

PagesNotFoundInCacheCount (SPC monitor)

The number of pages needing to be removed from the cache that were not found in the cache. This statistic is updated by the cache page server on remote caches, or by the page manager on the Stone's shared page cache.

PagesNotRemovedFromCacheCount (Pgsvr)

The number of pages the page server was unable to remove from the cache. Requests to remove pages come from the stone. This statistic is updated by the cache page server on remote caches, or by the page manager on the Stone's shared page cache.

PagesRemovedDirtyFromCacheCount (SPC monitor)

The number of pages successfully removed from the cache by the cache page server or the Page Manager at the Stone's request. This statistic is updated by the cache page server on remote caches, or by the page manager on the Stone's shared page cache.

PagesRemovedFromCacheCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of pages successfully removed from the cache by the cache page server or the Page Manager at the stone's request.

PagesReturnedByGemsCount (Stone)

The total number of free pages returned to the Stone by any Gem.

PagesWaitingForRemovalDeferred (Stone)

Number of deferred persistent pages waiting to be processed by the Page Manager gem.

PagesWaitingForRemovalInStoneCount (Stone)

The number of pages in the Stone that are waiting to be removed from the shared page cache by the Page Manager.

PagesWaitingForRemovalPersist (Stone)

Number of persistent pages waiting to be processed by the Page Manager gem.

PagesWaitingForRemovalTemp (Stone)

Number of temporary pages waiting to be processed by the Page Manager gem.

PageWaitQueueSize (Stone)

The size of the queue that holds sessions waiting to be allocated free pages. This queue should be empty or nearly so unless the repository is below its free space threshold.

PageWrites (all)

The number of pages written by the process since it was last started. These page writes are actual disk writes and not just writes into the shared page cache. Unless a large data load is in process, the number should be low for all processes except the Stone's AIO page server process.

PermGenSizeBytes (Gem)

The number of used bytes in the perm generation at the end of mark/sweep. Perm generation holds copies of Classes.

PersistentPagesCommittedCount (Gem)

The total number of pages made persistent (committed) by the session. This statistic is updated during commit processing.

PersistentPagesDisposed (Stone)

The number of persistent pages (pages already checkpointed) that have been disposed of while in the Stone's private cache.

PgsvrCheckpointState (Pgsvr)

The state of checkpoint processing within an AIO pgsvr:
    0=not active
    1=writing dirty pages

       2=finished write dirty
       3=in fsync

PgsvrWaitQueueSize (Stone)

The number of remote sessions waiting on page server before reclaiming session resources.

PinnedDataPagesCount (SPC monitor)

The number of pinned data pages found in the cache.

PinnedOtPagesCount (SPC monitor)

The number of pinned object table pages found in the cache.

PinnedPagesCount (all)

The number of pages the process has pinned (locked) in the shared cache. Pages may be pinned by more than one process at the same time.

PinnedPrivatePagesCount (all)

The number of pages that the process has pinned (locked) in its private page cache.

PinnedSharedCount (SPC monitor)

The number of pages pinned by more than one process.

PinnedTotalCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of pinned pages found in the cache.

PomGenScavCount (Gem)

The number of times scavenge has thrown away the oldest pom generation space.

PomGenSizeBytes (Gem)

The number of used bytes in the pom generation at the end of mark/sweep. Pom generation holds clean copies of committed objects.

PossibleDeadKobjs (Stone)

The number of objects previously marked as dereferenced in the repository, but for which sessions currently in a transaction might have created a reference in their

object space. (Units: 1000s of objects.) An object is not declared ("promoted to")
dead until each active session verifies the absence of such references during its next
commit or abort.

PostCheckpointPages (Pgsvr)

The count of pages written out by the page server during post-checkpoint
processing.

PreemptedBitmapPages (Pgsvr)

The number of bitmap pages removed from the shared page cache by this page
server.

PreemptedCommitRecordPages (Pgsvr)

The number of commit record pages removed from the shared page cache by this
page server.

PreemptedDataPages (Pgsvr)

The number of data pages removed from the shared page cache by this page
server.

PreemptedObjectTablePages (Pgsvr)

The number of object table pages removed from the shared page cache by this page
server.

PreemptedOtherPages (Pgsvr)

The number of pages removed from the shared cache by this page server that were
not data, object table, commit record, or bitmap pages.

PrimitiveNumber (Gem)

The primitive number currently being executed by the session, or 0 if the session
is not in a primitive. The session only sets this value for long-running primitives.
A non-zero value also indicates the session is immune from termination due to the
STN_GEM_TIMEOUT mechanism.

Note: the PrimitiveNumber stat is set to 9999 if the session has executed System
class >> disableStoneGemTimeout

ProcessId (all)

The operating system processId for the process associated with this shared page cache process slot.

ProcessName (all)

This statistic identifies the process kind (Gem, Stone, page server, or shared page cache monitor).

ProgressCount (Gem)

You can use this statistic to monitor the progress of certain Repository methods that may run for extended periods.

This statistic is used in the following cases. For other cases, see the statistic **ProgressKobjs** on page 259.

- During objectAudit, ProgressCount is set to the number of live data pages at end of the object table scan, then decremented as data pages are scanned.

- During _findPagesContainingOops:, ProgressCount is set to the total number of pages in the repository and decremented as pages are processed.

- During _readObjectTableFromOopNum:toOopNum:..., ProgressCount is incremented as object table pages are read, reset to zero, then incremented again as dataPages (if any) are read.

- During readPageRangeForGem:..., ProgressCount is incremented as pages are read, then reset to zero.

ProgressKobjs (Gem)

You can use this statistic to monitor the progress of certain Repository methods that may run for extended periods. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

This statistic is used in the following cases. For other cases, see the statistic **ProgressCount** on page 259.

- During markForCollection, ProgressKobjs is incremented as live objects are marked during the marking phase, reset to zero, and incremented as possible dead objects are computed.
- During epoch garbage collection, ProgressKobjs is incremented as live objects within epoch are marked, then reset to zero.
- During fullBackupTo: and restoreFromBackup:, ProgressKobjs tracks the number of objects written to or restored from the backup file(s).
- During objectAudit, ProgressKobjs is incremented as the object table is scanned, then decremented as data pages are scanned.
- While reading and writing an FDC file of OOPs, ProgressKobjs is incremented as OOPs are read or written.

RcConflictCount (Gem)

The number of commits that resulted in an RC conflict.

RcRetryQueueSize (Stone)

The number of sessions waiting for the RcRetry object lock. (System waitForRcWriteLock:)

RebuildScavPagesForCommitCount (Gem)

The total number of times the gem rebuilt its list of scavengeable pages while processing a commit.

RecentActiveProcessCount (SPC monitor)

The number of active processes attached to the shared page cache. This statistic is computed more often than ActiveProcessCount and has decays quickly.

ReclaimCount (Stone)

The number of reclaims performed by a Reclaim GcGem process since the Stone repository monitor was last started.

ReclaimedPagesCount (Stone)

The number of pages reclaimed by a Reclaim GcGem process since the Stone repository monitor process was last started. The count indicates the number of

pages that have been or will soon be placed back into the repository's pool of free pages.

RecoverFreeFrameWaitTime (Stone)

The time in seconds spent by the main recovery thread waiting for free frames in the shared page cache. Recovery performance may be improved by increasing the size of the shared page cache.

RecoverNumBufs (Stone)

The total number of logEntryBuffers allocated in the heap.

RecoverNumBufsForSessions (Stone)

The number of logEntryBuffers used to hold records for sessions not yet committed.

RecoverNumBufsInFreeList (Stone)

The number of logEntryBuffers currently in the freeList.

RecoverNumBufsInWorkQueue (Stone)

The number of logEntryBuffers currently in the workQueue.

RecoverReadThreadWaitTime (Stone)

The time in seconds that the reader thread spent waiting for the main recovery thread to catch up processing the log buffers.

RecoverReclaimOopsWaitTime (Stone)

The time in seconds spent by the main recovery thread waiting for oops to be reclaimed. Recovery performace may be improved by adding more reclaim gems.

RecoverTranlogBlockId (Stone)

The block ID of the transaction log currently being replayed during system recovery or restore.

RecoverTranlogFileId (Stone)

The file ID of the transaction log currently being replayed during system recovery or restore.

RejectedProcsCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of processes which attempted to connect to the shared page cache but were rejected because the maximum number of processes had already attached.

RemoteCachesNeedServiceCount (Stone)

The number of remote caches that require service from the Page Manager. Caches need service when they are starting or shutting down.

RemoteSharedPageCacheCount (Stone)

The total number of remote shared page caches attached to the system.

RemoteSharedPageCacheMax (Stone)

Current setting of the STN_MAX_REMOTE_CACHES configuration parameter

RepBkupRestPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
RepBkupRestPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

These statistics are obsolete; the page kind is no longer used.

ReposSizeMB (Stone)

The size of the stone's repository in MB.

Root40PagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
Root40PagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of root 4.0 pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

RootPagesWrittenByGem (SPC monitor)
RootPagesWrittenByStone (SPC monitor)

The number of root pages in the cache because of a write done by a Gem or by the Stone, respectively.

RunQueueSize (Stone)

The number of Gem session processes waiting for service from the Stone repository monitor.

ScavengeCount (Gem)

The number of scavenges executed by the in-memory garbage collector.

ScavengeOverflows (Gem)

The number of scavenges that overflowed in the in-memory garbage collector.

SessionId (all)

The GemStone sessionId associated with this client.

SessionStat0 — SessionStat47 (Gem)

These are computed by user code to define statistics associated with a session. There are 48 session cache statistic slots available. For details, see "Global Session Statistics" on page 228.

SessionWithGcLock (Stone)

The sessionId of the session holding the GcLock. A value of 1 indicates that the lock is held by Stone recovery or restore; 0 means that the lock is not issued.

ShadowedPagesCount (Gem)

The number of data pages added to the reclaim list due to commits by this Gem. This statistic is only updated during a commit.

SigAbortsReceived (Gem)

The number of times the Stone has signaled this session to abort, that it has received and recognized.

SigAbortsSent (Gem)

The number of times the Stone has signaled this session to abort, although the session may be in a sleep or I/O wait state and not yet aware of having received the signal. (See SigAbortsReceived (Gem), above.)

SleepDuringDisposeTempPageCount (Gem)

Total number of times the Gem slept while waiting to dispose of a temporary page. Each tick of the counter represents 5 milliseconds of sleep. If you encounter excessive counts, please report them to GemStone Technical Support.

SlotsCrashedCount (SPC monitor)

The total number of slots for which the shared cache monitor has attempted recovery because a client process shutdown abnormally.

SlotsFreeCount (SPC monitor)

The number of free process slots currently available in the cache.

SlotsTotalCount (SPC monitor)

The maximum number of processes that can concurrently attach to the shared page cache.

SpinLockCount (SPC monitor)

The current setting of the SHR_SPIN_LOCK_COUNT parameter.

SpinLockFreeFrameSleepCount (SPC monitor)

The number of times the process was forced to sleep on a semaphore while attempting to acquire the free frame list spin lock. Available only for shared page cache monitor slot.

SpinLockFreePceSleepCount (SPC monitor)

The number of times the process was forced to sleep on a semaphore while attempting to acquire the free page cache entry spin lock. Available only for shared page cache monitor slot.

SpinLockHashTableSleepCount (SPC monitor)

The number of times the process was forced to sleep on a semaphore while attempting to acquire a hash table spin lock. Available only for shared page cache monitor slot.

SpinLockNewSymSleepCount (SPC monitor)

The number of times a process was forced to sleep on a semaphore waiting for the NewSymbols spinLock.

SpinLockOtherSleepCount (SPC monitor)

The number of times the process was forced to sleep on a semaphore while attempting to acquire either the AllSymbols or shared counter spin lock. Available only for shared page cache monitor slot.

SpinLockPageFrameSleepCount (SPC monitor)

The number of times the process was forced to sleep on a semaphore while attempting to acquire a page frame spin lock. Available only for shared page cache monitor slot.

SpinLockSmcQSleepCount (SPC monitor)

The number of times the process was forced to sleep on a semaphore while attempting to acquire the SMC (shared memory communication) queue spin lock. The SMC queue allows Gems to communicate with the Stone process via shared memory. Available only for shared page cache monitor slot.

StatsThreadTimeRunningMs (SPC monitor)

Approximate real time in milliseconds that the statistics thread in the shared page cache monitor has spent doing work.

StnAioCompleted1Suspend (Stone)

Number of AIO requests completed after one call to aio_suspend().

StnAioCompletedNoSleep (Stone)

Number of AIO requests that were completed without sleeping. The AIO thread in stone will sleep for a short time if aio_suspend() returns prematurely several times.

StnAioCompletedNoSuspend (Stone)

Number of AIO requests completed without calling aio_suspend().

StnAioCompletionFailures (Stone)

The number of aio_write() operations for which either aio_error() or aio_return() reported that the AIO failed.

StnAioFsyncFailures (Stone)

The number of fsync() operations in AioWait thread which failed.

StnAioLastSuspendCount (Stone)

Number of times that aio_suspend() was called to complete the last AIO request.

StnAioMainTimeInAioWrite (Stone)

Total real time in milliseconds that the main thread spent executing the aio_write() call. aio_write() is used to initiate asynchronous writes to the tranlog and should not block.

StnAioSuspendTimeoutCount (Stone)

The number of times that aio_suspend() in the Stone's AIO wait thread returned EAGAIN error. A non-zero value indicates that some aio_write() operations are failing to complete within 15 seconds.

StnAioSuspendPrematureReturn (Stone)

The number of times that aio_suspend() returned prematurely with EINPROGRESS. This has been seen on AIX.

StnAioSyncWritesAfterCancel (Stone)

The number of AIOs initiated by aio_write() that failed to complete within 60 seconds, and were cancelled and written synchronously by the Stone's AIO wait thread. This should normally be zero.

StnAioTotalSleepCount (Stone)

Total number of times the Stone's AIO wait thread went to sleep while waiting for an AIO to complete.

StnAioWaitLastTime (Stone)

Time in microseconds that it took the AIO thread to complete the last AIO request.

StnAioWaitsForWork (Stone)

The number of times the Stone's AIO wait thread waited on semaphore for more work.

StnAioWaitTotalTime (Stone)

Approximate total real time in milliseconds that the AIO wait thread spent waiting for asynchronous I/O requests to complete.

StnAioWriteEAGAIN (Stone)

The number of times aio_write() returned EAGAIN error due to lack of resources. This should normally be zero.

StnAioWriteFailures (Stone)

The number of aio_write() calls by the Stone main thread which failed with other than EAGAIN. Stat should normally be zero.

StnCrBacklogThreshold (Stone)

Current setting of the STN_CR_BACKLOG_THRESHOLD Stone configuration parameter.

StnGetLocksCount (Stone)

The total number of times the Stone retrieved the lock set and passed it to a remote gem.

StnLoopCount (Stone)

The total number of times the Stone has executed its service loop. If this number remains unchanged for a significant period (for example, ten seconds or so), the Stone has hung.

StnLoopHibernateCount (Stone)

The total number of times the Stone went to sleep waiting for a network event to occur. This state occurs when StnLoopState is set to 17.

StnLoopNoWorkThreshold (Stone)

Current setting of the STN_LOOP_NO_WORK_THRESHOLD stone configuration parameter.

StnLoopsNoWork (Stone)

Number of times the stone has executed its main service loop and found no work to perform. This counter is reset to zero each time the stone performs work.

StnLoopsSinceSleep (Stone)

Number of times the stone has executed its main service loop since sleeping. This counter is reset to zero each time the stone sleeps while waiting for work.

StnLoopState (Stone)

An integer that identifies where, in the Stone control loop, the Stone process is currently executing. For a meaningful statistic, set your sample rate to faster than a second. For state definitions, consult GemStone technical support.

StnMainWaitsForFreeAio (Stone)

The number of times the stone main thread waited for free AIO buffers to become available.

StnTranQToRunQThreshold (Stone)

Current setting of the STN_TRAN_Q_TO_RUN_Q_THRESHOLD stone configuration parameter.

StoneCommitState (Stone)

This internal statistic is used to determine the state of the Stone's commit processing.

SymbolCreationQueueSize (Stone)

The number of sessions waiting for a Symbol creation request to be processed.

TargetFreeFrameCount (SPC monitor)

The minimum number of unused page frames the free frame page server(s) will attempt to keep in the cache. The free frame count can still fall below this value if the cache contains mostly dirty pages, which free frame page servers cannot preempt.

TargetPercentDirty (Pgsvr)

The percent of dirty pages that AIO page servers try to maintain in the shared cache. If the dirty pages are below this target then the I/O rate will be limited on the next scan. If the dirty pages are above this target then the I/O rate will be set to AioRateMax.

TempObjSpacePercentUsed (Gem)

The approximate percentage of the total reserved temporary object memory for this session which is in use. Sessions are likely to encounter an out of memory error if this value approaches or exceeds 100%. This statistic is only updated at the end of a mark/sweep operation.

TempPagesDisposed (Stone)

The number of temporary pages (pages allocated since the last checkpoint) that have been disposed.

TimeInCommitRecordDisposal (Stone)

The total amount of real time in milliseconds that the Stone has spent disposing commit records. Commit records disposed during repository startup are not included in this statistic.

TimeInFramesFromFindFree (all)

The cumulative number of milliseconds that the Gem or Stone has spent scanning the shared page cache for a free frame since the session (for Gems) or Stone started.

TimeInMarkSweep (Gem)

The real time in milliseconds spent in in-memory garbage collector mark/sweeps.

TimeInPgsvrNetReads (Stone, Gem)

The cumulative amount of real time in milliseconds that a session or Stone has spent reading network data from a page server.

TimeInPgsvrNetWrites (Stone, Gem)

The cumulative amount of real time in milliseconds that a session or Stone has spent writing network data to a page server.

TimeInScavenges (Gem)

The real time in milliseconds spent in in-memory garbage collector scavenges.

TimeInStnGetLocks (Stone)

The total time spent by the Stone retrieving the lock set and passing it to a remote gem.

TimeInStonePageDisposal (Stone)

The elapsed real time in milliseconds the Stone spent performing page disposal operations.

TimeInUpdateUnionsCommit (Gem)

The total real time the gem spent updating its unions while waiting for the commit token.

TimeLastEpochGc (Stone)

Time at which the Admin GcGem finished computing dead objects for the last epoch. Time to end of the currently open epoch is computed from here.

TimePerformingCommit (Stone)

The number of milliseconds of real time the Stone has spent performing commit processing, not including time taken by asynchronous writes to the transaction log.

TimePerformingReadIo (Pgsvr)

The total amount of real time in milliseconds the page server has spent reading pages from disk.

TimePerformingReadRequests (Pgsvr)

The total amount of real time in milliseconds the page server has spent performing read requests for its client. This statistic includes time reading pages from disk and time searching the shared page cache for pages.

TimeProcessingCommit (Gem)

The cumulative amount of time in milliseconds that the Gem session process has spent doing the processing for commits while it has the commit token.

TimerThreadWakeups (Stone)

The number of wakeups from sleep in stone Timer thread.

TimeSleepingMs (Pgsvr)

Total real time the process has spent sleeping, in milliseconds.

TimeStoneCommit (Gem)

The cumulative amount of time in milliseconds that the Gem session process has waited for the Stone repository monitor to complete commits by this session.

TimeWaitingForCommit (Gem)

The cumulative amount of time in milliseconds that the Gem session process has spent waiting for its turn to commit, that is, the time waiting for the commit token and the Stone's processing time for serialization.

TimeWaitingForIo (all)

The total real time in milliseconds that the process has spent waiting for I/O calls that read or write pages to complete. Only page I/O is included in this statistic. Other types of I/O (such as transaction log writes by the Stone process) are not included.

TimeWaitingForStone (Gem)

The total time the Gem spent waiting for a response from the Stone.

TimeWaitingForSymbols (Gem)

Cumulative elapsed time in milliseconds waiting for symbol creation requests to be processed.

TotalAborts (Stone)

The number of abort operations performed system-wide since the Stone was started.

TotalBmPageReads (SPC Monitor)

Total number of bitmap pages read by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalCommits (Stone)

The total number of commits (excluding read-only commits) performed by all processes since the Stone repository monitor was last started.

TotalDataPageReads (SPC Monitor)

Total number of data pages read by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalFramesFromFindFree (SPC Monitor)

Total number of frames found by scanning the cache for all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalGemFatalErrors (Stone)

The total number of fatal errors reported to the stone by all gems.

TotalKFramesAddedToFreeList (SPC Monitor)

Total number of frames (expressed in thousands) added to the free list by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalKFramesFromFreeList (SPC Monitor)

Total number of frames (expressed in thousands) taken from the free list by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalLocalPageCacheKHits (SPC Monitor)

Total number of local page cache hits (expressed in thousands) for all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalLocalPageCacheKMisses (SPC Monitor)

Total number of local page cache misses (expressed in thousands) for all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalLostOtsSent (Stone)

The total number of SigLostOtRoot signals sent by the stone.

TotalMiscPageReads (SPC Monitor)

Total number of miscellaneous pages read by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalNewObjsCommitted (Stone)

The total number of new objects committed by all Gems.

TotalOtPageReads (SPC Monitor)

Total number of object table pages read by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalPageReads (SPC Monitor)

Total number of pages read by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalPageWrites (SPC Monitor)

Total number of pages written by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TotalProcsInCacheCount (SPC monitor)

he total number of processes currently connected to the cache, including crashed processes that have not yet had their cache slot recovered.

TotalSessionsCount (Stone)

The total number of sessions currently logged in to the system.

TotalSessionsStopped (Stone)

The total number of stop session requests initiated by a gem or by the stone.

TotalSessionsTerminated (Stone)

The total number of sessions forcibly logged off by stone.

TotalSigAbortsSent (Stone)

The total number of SigAborts sent by the stone.

TotalWaitsForOtherReader (SPC Monitor)

Total number of PageRead operations avoided by all processes currently attached to the shared page cache.

TrackedSetSize (Gem)

The number of objects in the Tracked Objects Set, as defined by the GCI.

TranlogFileId (Stone)

The file id of the transaction log to which the most recent tranlog entry was written.

TranlogKBytesWritten (Gem)

Total number of kilobytes written to the tranlog by stone on behalf of this session.

TranlogRecordId (Stone)

The record id of the most recent transaction log entry to be written.

TranlogRecordKind (Gem)

The kind of tranlog record last written to the tranlog by stone on behalf of this session.

TranlogRecordsWritten (Gem)

Total number of physical tranlog records written to the tranlog by stone by this session.

TranlogsFull (Stone)

A flag indicating if all configured tranlog partitions or directories are full; 1 means full.

TransactionLevel (Gem)

This statistic describes the state of the Gem: 1 (in a transaction), 0 (outside a transaction), or –1 (a transactionless state in which the Stone will never signal the Gem to abort).

TteCrPageFreeCount (Stone)

Total number of free commit record page entries in the stone's internal commit record cache.

TteCrPageFreePoolSize (Stone)

Total number of commit record page entries allocated in the stone's internal commit record cache.

TteFreeCount (Stone)

Total number of free TTEs (transaction table entries) in stone.

TteFreePoolSize (Stone)

Total number of TTEs (transaction table entries) allocated by stone.

UpdateUnionsCommitCount (Gem)

The total number of times the gem updated its unions while waiting for the commit token. This count will be at least one for every commit.

VoteNotDead (Gem)

The number of objects that the Gem process removed from the possible dead set the last time that it voted on the possible dead.

VoteNotDeadKobjs (Stone)

The number of objects that the Gem process removed from the possibleDead set the last time that it voted on the possible dead. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

WaitingForSessionToVote (Stone)

The sessionId of a session which the system is waiting for to complete the voting on possible dead objects. A zero value indicates that it is not waiting.

WaitsForOtherReader (all)

The number of PageRead operations avoided by waiting for read already in progress by another process.

WorkingSetSize (Gem)

The number of objects in memory that have an object Id assigned to them. Approximately the number of committed objects that have been faulted in plus the number that have been created.

Chapter

9 *Making and Restoring Backups*

This chapter explains describes how to make backups of your GemStone/S 64 Bit repository and, should it become necessary, how to use the backups to restore the repository.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- How to Make an Online Extent Backup (page 279)

- How to Restore from an Online Extent Backup (page 279)

  An online extent backup is, essentially, a snapshot copy of the repository extents with the system running. Online extent backup is the primary means of performing repository backups and can be run during production hours.

- How to Make a Smalltalk Full Backup (page 284)

- How to Restore from a Smalltalk Full Backup (page 290)

  As an alternative, you can perform full backups during non-production hours, using backup and restore methods provided as part of the GemStone kernel. Full backups are required if you want to reduce the number of extents in the repository.

- How to Make an Offline Extent Backup (page 309)

- How to Restore from an Offline Extent Backup (page 309)

  It is also possible to use an offline extent file, using a snapshot obtained while GemStone is shut down.

- How to Recover After Repair of the File System (page 279)

  This section presents procedures for recovery from a disk failure or corrupted file system.

  > *NOTE*
  > *To ensure protection from disk failure, we recommend that you either use mirrored disks or operating system mirroring. For more information, see "Developing a Failover Strategy" on page 11.*

- How To Manage a Warm Standby System (page 317)

  To maximize system availability, you can run a second GemStone installation on standby, ready to take over in case of any failure of the primary system.

9.1 Overview

One way of safeguarding your repository is to create a GemStone backup periodically and then store the backup in a secure place. It's best to establish a regular backup schedule that fits your application and to keep system users informed of that schedule.

Also back up transaction logs, especially if you have enabled full transaction logging. These logs allow you to roll forward from a backup to the state of the last committed transaction. Transaction logs in the file system can be backed up as part of a regularly scheduled system backup using operating system utilities. For a related discussion, see "To Archive Logs" on page 200.

Because backup files do not include the object table, they are typically 15–20% smaller than the running repository, not including any free space in the extents.

9.2 How to Make an Online Extent Backup

Privileges required: SystemControl.

An online extent backup is, essentially, a snapshot copy of the repository extents with the system running. Online extent backup is the primary means of performing repository backups and can be run during production hours.

Three steps are involved in an online extent backup:

1. Suspend checkpoints.

    Checkpoints are not permitted while the online backup is in progress. There must not be a checkpoint in progress when the online backup begins, and no checkpoints are allowed to begin until the online backup has finished. All other database operations (including commits and aborts) are permitted during the online backup.

    To suspend checkpoints for a specified number of minutes, call `System class >> suspendCheckpointsForMinutes:`. If this method is called while a checkpoint is in progress, it will block until the current checkpoint completes. If one session attempts to suspend checkpoints and is blocked while the current checkpoint completes, and then a second session attempts to suspend checkpoints, the second session fails and the method returns false.

    You cannot suspend checkpoints while in partial transaction log mode or while the repository is in restore mode. However, you can start a new transaction log while checkpoints are suspended. To do so, call `Repository >> startNewLog`.

    To query the current status of checkpoints, call `System class >> checkpointStatus`. This method returns an Array object containing a Boolean that indicates whether checkpoints are suspended as well as an Integer that indicates the number of seconds remaining in the suspension.

For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
System checkpointStatus
%
an Array
  #1 false
  #2 0

topaz 1> printit
System suspendCheckpointsForMinutes: 15
%
true

topaz 1> printit
System checkpointStatus
%
true 900
```

2. Copy the repository extents.

   Once checkpoints are suspended, the session requesting the suspension can log out from GemStone and start the extent copy, using operating system commands.

3. Resume checkpoints.

   Once the extent copy has completed, a session will log in to GemStone and request the Stone to resume checkpoints (System class >> resumeCheckpoints). The result of this method is false if checkpoints were not previously suspended before executing System class >> suspendCheckpointsForMinutes: (as in step 1), and true if they were previously suspended.

```
topaz 1> printit
System resumeCheckpoints
%
false
```

   From this result, you can determine if the online extent backup was completed while checkpoints were still suspended. If the backup was completed in time, no further action is required and the backup is complete. If the backup did not complete before checkpoints were resumed, then the backup must be discarded and another online extent backup must be taken.

If the system is shut down while checkpoints are suspended, checkpoints will be reenabled and a final checkpoint will be written during the clean shutdown process. Any online backups in progress during system shutdown must be discarded.

Methods to Perform Checkpoints

To support the use of checkpoints, the following methods in class System (category Online Backup Support) are provided:

`suspendCheckpointsForMinutes:` *minutes*

Suspends all checkpoints for the given number of minutes or until the `resumeCheckpoints` method is executed, whichever occurs first. Calling this method while checkpoints are already suspended changes the duration of the suspension. If a checkpoint is in progress when this method is called, the call blocks until the current checkpoint completes, at which time checkpoints are suspended. If any session has made this call and is waiting for the current checkpoint to complete, calls to this method by other sessions will fail. Returns true if checkpoints were successfully suspended.

`resumeCheckpoints`

Resumes regular checkpoints if they were previously suspended by `suspendCheckpointsForMinutes:`. Returns true if checkpoints were previously suspended, returns false if checkpoints were not suspended.

`checkpointStatus`

Returns an Array of two elements: a Boolean that indicates if checkpoints are currently suspended, and an Integer indicating the number of seconds before checkpoints will be resumed by the stone.

In addition, two methods in class System (category Transaction Control) are provided for starting checkpoints:

`startCheckpointAsync`

Starts a new checkpoint if a checkpoint is not already in progress and returns immediately, without waiting for the checkpoint to finish. Returns true if a checkpoint is in progress or was started; returns false if a checkpoint could not be started because transaction logs are full or checkpoints are suspended. Does not commit, abort, or otherwise modify the current transaction.

`startCheckpointSync`

Starts a new checkpoint and returns when the new checkpoint has completed. If a checkpoint is already in progress, this method waits until the current

checkpoint completes, then starts a new checkpoint. Returns true if a new checkpoint was successfully completed, returns false if a new checkpoint could not be started because transaction logs are full or checkpoints are suspended. Does not commit, abort, or otherwise modify the current transaction.

An Example Script

As part of a complete backup strategy, you can create an online extent backup script for your system. Your GemStone installation directories include the example script $GEMSTONE/examples/admin/onlinebackup.sh. You can customize this script for your own system; you must add the necessary code to perform the file system copies of your extents.

NOTE
The example script onlinebackup.sh *is unsupported. It is provided here for your convenience, and is subject to change in future releases.*

Be sure to review and test your script adequately to ensure the integrity of your backups.

As shown in onlinebackup.sh, your script must perform the following actions:

1. Suspend checkpoints. For example:

    ```
    topaz 1> printit
    System suspendCheckpointsForMinutes: minutes
    %
    ```

2. Perform a file system backup of live extents.

    The actual backup may be as simple as using the UNIX cp command for each of the extent files. However, on production systems, this may involve breaking a disk mirror and subsequently resynchronizing. The example script does not include code for this step.

3. Resume checkpoints after the backup.

    ```
    topaz 1> printit
    System resumeCheckpoints
    %
    ```

9.3 How to Restore from an Online Extent Backup

To restore the repository from an online extent backup to the last committed transaction, the online backup files must be available, along with all transaction logs written since the backup was started. (The previous transaction log may also be required.)

The restore procedure includes these steps:

1. Copy the extents from the backup to the location where the repository extents reside. This is essentially the reverse of Step 2 on page 280.

2. Use **startstone** **-R** **-N** to restart GemStone. These options start the Stone in restore mode, but do not attempt to automatically recover by replaying all transaction logs. (For more about these options, see page 423.)

3. Restore all transaction logs written since the online extent backup was performed. You can query the Stone to determine the sequence number of the first transaction log required for the restore.

    Each restore operation, on completion, terminates its GemStone session. You will need to log in again before performing the next restore operation.

    ```
    topaz 1> printit
    SystemRepository restoreStatusOldestFileId
    %
    6


    topaz 1> printit
    SystemRepository restoreFromCurrentLogs
    %
    Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded.
    ```

4. When all transaction logs have been restored, commit the restore.

    ```
    topaz 1> printit
    SystemRepository commitRestore
    %
    Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded. commitRestore
    succeeded
    ```

5. The repository is now ready for use.

9.4 How to Make a Smalltalk Full Backup

Privileges required: FileControl.

As an alternative to online extent backups, you can perform Smalltalk full backups during non-production hours, using backup and restore methods provided as part of the GemStone kernel. Smalltalk full backups are required if you want to reduce the number of extents in the repository or redistribute objects within the repository. During a Smalltalk full backup, dynamic internal data structures are copied and will be restored, improving performance of such routine maintenance tasks as garbage collection.

In a Smalltalk full backup, the method `Repository>>fullBackupTo:` saves the most recently committed version of the repository in a way that is consistent from a transaction viewpoint. The method `fullBackupTo:` forces a checkpoint of the repository at the time the method is executed and then creates a backup from that checkpoint, copying all objects in the repository and arranging them in a compact form. (An alternate method, `Repository>>fullBackupTo:mBytes:`, lets you create a multiple-file backup by limiting the size of each part.)

As with online extent backups, you can make Smalltalk full backups while the repository is in use. Other sessions can continue to commit transactions, but those transactions are not included in the backup.

With full transaction logging enabled, all work committed since the backup is saved in a set of transaction logs. In the event of a subsequent repository failure, the backup file together with the set of logs created since the backup contain all information necessary to restore the repository to its current committed state. In the absence of full transaction logging, a media failure can cause the loss of all updates since the last backup.

A Smalltalk full backup includes these three steps:

1. The Gem performing the backup scans the object table, building a list of objects to back up. This step runs in a transaction and can therefore cause a temporary commit record backlog in systems with high transaction rates. However, this step usually lasts ten minutes or less.

2. The Gem performing the backup next writes all shadow objects to the backup file. This step also runs in a transaction; furthermore, backing up shadow objects requires more disk I/O than backing up live objects, so the rate of objects backed up per second is slower in this step than in the next.

    (For definitions of shadow and live objects, see "Basic Concepts" on page 320.)

3. In the final step, all live objects are written to the backup file. This step is performed outside a transaction; if the Stone signals the session to abort, it will do so. For most systems, this step takes the longest of the three.

The fullBackupTo: methods

Repository>>fullBackupTo: *fileOrDevice*
Repository>>fullBackupTo: *fileOrDevice* MBytes: *mByteLimit*

fileOrDevice specifies the file or device where the backup is to be created. You must specify the name of a file or device, not a directory name.

You can create backups on a remote node by using a network resource string (NRS) to specify the node name as part of *fileOrDevice*. For an example, see "To Create a Backup on a Remote Node" on page 287.

WARNING
If the specified fileOrDevice *runs out of space, such as off the end of a tape, the backup will terminate with a system I/O error at that point, and will be unusable. To avoid having to repeat the entire backup, make sure that the device has sufficient space or set* mByteLimit *appropriately.*

mByteLimit lets you create a multiple-file backup by limiting the size of each part. This argument is especially useful when the size of the backup exceeds the capacity of a single tape. For further information and an example, see "To Create a Backup in Multiple Files" on page 287. If you don't want to limit the size of the backup file, specify a *mByteLimit* of 0 or use the simpler Repository>>fullBackupTo: message, omitting MBytes: entirely. A value of *mByteLimit* less than 0 or greater than 4096000 generates an error.

NOTE
We recommend that individual backup files be no greater than 16 GB. If your repository backup would be greater than 16 GB, use the MBytes: *argument to create four or more backup files.*

To perform a Smalltalk full backup, send your repository the message fullBackupTo: *fileOrDevice.* For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
"Create a full backup of SystemRepository in the file
      '/users/backups/july15.08'"
SystemRepository fullBackupTo:'/users/backups/july15.08'
%
true
```

The backup file named **july15.08** is created.

During the backup, the session is put into manual transaction mode so the backup won't interfere with ongoing garbage collection. When the backup completes, the session is left outside of a transaction. If you want to make changes to the repository, send System beginTransaction or System transactionMode: #autoBegin.

If the backup file already exists, or if the *fileOrDevice* argument is an empty string, the method returns an error.

Additional Performance Tips

For the session performing the backup, the statistic ProgressCount (described on page 259) indicates the number of objects written to the backup file thus far. If you know the number of objects in the repository, you can use this statistic to determine how far the backup has progressed.

Backup and restore operations accessing tape drives are usually slower than those accessing a hard disk.

You can often improve both backup and restore performance by increasing the size of the shared page cache.

You can usually improve restore performance if you also increase the size of the private page cache for the Gem performing the restore. For example, in that Gem's configuration file, include the line:

```
GEM_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB = 65536;
```

Backups and Garbage Collection

NOTE
You will find it easier to understand the following discussion if you have first read and understood the section "Basic Concepts" on page 320.

Because shadow objects must be backed up, it is more efficient to run a Smalltalk full backup when there are few shadow objects. If possible, first check the statistic PagesNeedReclaimSize (page 255). If that statistic is high, run one or more Reclaim GcGems before performing the backup. (See "Admin and Reclaim GcGems" on page 326.)

Dead objects waiting to be reclaimed (measured by the statistic DeadNotReclaimedKobjs, described on page 237) are not backed up, as these objects are going to be deleted anyway.

Possibly dead objects are included in the backup file. (Possibly dead objects are defined in "What Happens to Garbage?" on page 324). However, the possible dead set is not backed up. So if a markForCollection or other garbage-marking operation completed before the backup, but the possibly dead objects had not yet been promoted to dead, the garbage-marking operation will have to be repeated.

To avoid this, therefore, if you back up your repository after a markForCollection or other garbage-marking operation, wait until the statistic PossibleDeadKobjs (page 257) falls, and the statistic DeadNotReclaimedKobjs (page 237) rises.

To Create a Backup on a Remote Node

The following example uses an NRS to access a tape drive located on another node. You can use the same approach to access a remote disk. Of course, performing a backup across the network is likely to take much longer than writing it to a local device.

```
topaz 1> printit
"Access a tape device on node flute"
SystemRepository fullBackupTo:'!@flute!/dev/rst0'
%
```

A GemStone NetLDI must be running on the remote node. The user performing the backup must provide authentication for that node, such as an entry in a .netrc file. The requirements are similar to those given in Chapter 3 for starting an RPC Gem session process on a remote node.

To Create a Backup in Multiple Files

To create a multiple-file backup, include the argument MBytes:*mByteLimit.* For example, MBytes:10 tells GemStone to limit the size of the backup file to 10 MB. When backing up to tape, use the tape's available space (in MB) as the MBytes: argument.

NOTE
Writing a backup to multiple files takes longer than writing it to one file.

If a backup requires more space than you specified in *mByteLimit*, the backup stops
after creating one file and returns a result similar to this:

```
topaz 1> printit
"Start a full backup of SystemRepository in the file
      '/users/backups/july15.08'"
SystemRepository fullBackupTo: '/users/backups/july15.08'
MBytes: 10
%
Finished writing backup file 0 of a multifile backup
```

To create the next file in the backup, send your repository the message
`continueFullBackupTo:`*fileOrDevice* `MBytes:`*mByteLimit.*

For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
"Continue a full backup by writing a second file to
      '/users/backups/july15.08_2'"
SystemRepository continueFullBackupTo:
'/users/backups/july15.08_2' MBytes: 10
true
```

If the backup is suspended because it reached the specified byte limit, the session
may or may not be in a transaction, depending on how far the backup has
progressed. The `continueFullBackupTo:` method operates properly in either
case.

Commits and aborts by the session doing a multiple-file backup are disallowed
until the backup completes. If you need to cancel the backup, use the method
`Repository>>abortFullBackup.` The session can then commit or abort its
current transaction.

When backing up to multiple disk files, be sure to specify a unique file name for
each continuation. If you need to verify the file sequence later, each file contains a
sequential fileId, which you can examine using **copydbf -i** *fileName*.

To Create Compressed Backups

It is possible to write and read full backup files in compressed mode.

Writing to, and reading from, a compressed file can be performed only to a local
file system file or to a file system that is NFS-mounted.

Backup files written in compressed mode are automatically appended with the suffix `.gz` if you do not specify that suffix and if the backup is being written to a file system file.

All restore methods automatically detect whether a file is compressed or not and read the file accordingly. Even a backup originally created in uncompressed mode, then later compressed externally with gzip, is readable by `restoreFromBackup:`.

> *NOTE*
> *Transaction logs are always written in uncompressed format. These files may be compressed with **gzip** before archiving them to tape or to other disks. Such archived tranlogs can be restored directly, without having to run **gunzip** on them, although the process is less efficient.*

To support compression, the following methods in class Repository (category Backup and Restore) are provided:

`continueFullBackupCompressedTo:` *fileOrDevice* `MBytes:` *mByteLimit*

This method is similar to `continueFullBackupTo:MBytes:` except that the output file is written compressed in gzip format. The output file must be on a local file system or accessible via NFS. Backup files written to a file system in compressed mode are automatically appended with the suffix `.gz` if that suffix is not specified by the user.

`fullBackupCompressedTo:` *fileOrDevice*

This method backs up the receiver to a single backup file or tape in gzip format. The output file is written compressed in gzip format and cannot be written to a raw device. The output file must be on a local file system or accessible via NFS. Backup files written to a file system in compressed mode are automatically appended with the suffix `.gz` if that suffix is not specified by the user.

`fullBackupCompressedTo:` *fileOrDevice* `MBytes:` *mByteLimit*

This method is similar to `fullBackupTo:MBytes:` except that the output file is written compressed in gzip format. See `fullBackupCompressedTo:`

To Verify a Backup is Readable

To verify that a backup file is readable, use the GemStone utility **copydbf**. You can conserve disk space and reduce disk activity by specifying /dev/null as the destination. For instance:

```
% copydbf /users/backup/july15.08 /dev/null
```

To Examine the Backup Log

The path of the backup file and starting time are written to UserGlobals at:#BackupLog. To see a listing of previous backups performed by the current userId, execute the following (which returns an error if the repository has never been backed up):

```
topaz 1> level 2
topaz 1> printit
BackupLog
%
fullBackup to /users/backups/july15.08 started at
Jul/15/2008 13:22
```

9.5 How to Restore from a Smalltalk Full Backup

Privileges required: FileControl.

NOTE
To avoid failure of the restore operation, after a repository conversion or upgrade, you must run the restore from the SystemUser account.

Restoring the repository from a Smalltalk full backup ordinarily takes place in two phases:

1. Restore the repository from the last GemStone backup file or tape.

   - For a step-by-step description, see "Phase 1: Restore to the Point of the Backup" on page 292.

2. Apply transaction logs to restore transactions that were committed after the backup was started. (The backup must have been made while the repository was in full transaction logging mode.)

   - For a step-by-step description, see "Phase 2: Restore Subsequent Transactions" on page 295.

Figure 9.1 illustrates the restore process for Smalltalk full backups.

Figure 9.1   System Timeline: Restoring from a Smalltalk Full Backup

User Steps

cp `$GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf`

   startstone

          `restoreFromBackup:`

              `restoreToEndOfLog:`

                 `restoreFromCurrentLogs`

                    `commitRestore`

Stone starts with	GemStone	Off-line logs	Online		Ready for
fresh primary	backup	restored	logs		ordinary
extent	restored	(if any)	restored		commits

GemStone Actions
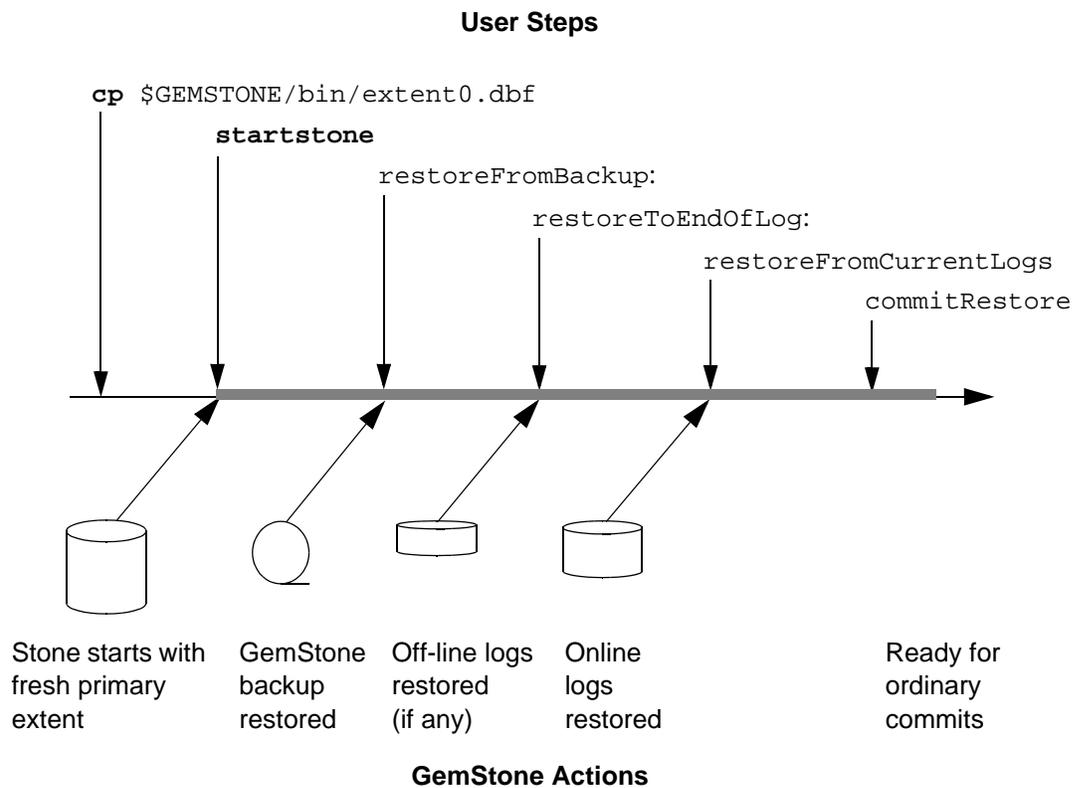
Before you begin, make sure you have a Smalltalk full backup of the system repository, created by GemStone with the method `fullBackupTo:`. (See "How to Make a Smalltalk Full Backup" on page 284.)

If full backups of your repository require more than one tape, restoring tape 1 without tape 2 does not give you a usable version of the repository. The objects on tape 1 are copied, but the transaction cannot be committed until you restore tape 2. (The Topaz **commit** command does not commit a partial restore, even though the message may say the commit was successful.)

After the backup has been restored, the repository reflects its state at the time of the backup. All the objects are intact and ordinarily are clustered in a way similar,

but not identical, to their organization in the original repository. This clustering reflects both explicit clustering of objects by the application and default clustering into the generic "don't care" cluster bucket.

If the number of extents during restoration is the same as when the backup was started, such clustering in the original repository takes precedence over the DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE configuration setting used by the Stone performing the restore operation. If the number of extents differs, then the DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE setting at the time of the restore controls the distribution of objects across extents.

Phase 1: Restore to the Point of the Backup

To begin, you need a file copy (*not* a GemStone backup) of a good repository. We recommend that you use a copy of the extent0.dbf that was shipped in $GEMSTONE/bin, although any extent file that is a complete, uncorrupted repository will work. If you are using the backup/restore process to reduce the size of your extent, the new extent file must be smaller than your current extent.

NOTE
Make sure that you have full backups of good repository files. If the backup consists of multiple files, the complete set must be available.

The user restoring the backup must be the only user logged in to the server. The method that starts the restoration will suspend other logins.

NOTE
We recommend that you log in as DataCurator or SystemUser to restore the backup. If you start the restore as another user and that UserProfile disappears as a result of the restore, Topaz will see a fatal error.

To restore your repository from a Smalltalk full backup, perform the following procedure:

Step A1. If GemStone is still running, tell all users to log out and use **stopstone** to stop the system. Certain file system failures while the Stone is running may make it necessary to use **kill** *processid* to kill the Stone process.

Step A2. If you are restoring the repository because of a suspected GemStone failure, preserve a copy of the extents in case Technical Support wants to examine them.

> *WARNING*
> *Do NOT delete the transaction log files up to the time of the crash—leave them online in their current locations.*

Step A3. Delete all extent files specified in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES in your configuration file.

Step A4. Copy the distribution extent to the location of your primary extent, which is the extent listed first in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES.

Make sure there are no other extent files in that location. Do not copy any other extent files to the location of the *new (second)* extent; the Stone repository monitor will create the new extent at startup.

We recommend that you use the GemStone **copydbf** command to create the copy, rather than using the UNIX **cp** command; **copydbf** must be used if you are copying to or from a raw partition.

For example:

```
% copydbf $GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf \
  $GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf
% chmod 600 $GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf
```

Use **chmod** to give the copy the same permissions you ordinarily assign to your repository files.

Step A5. Ensure that there is space to create a log file during recovery. At least one of the directories specified by STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES must have space available or one of the raw partitions must be empty. You may need to add entries to STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES and STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES in your configuration file.

GemStone starts a new transaction log file when you start the restore process (Step A8). In addition, you can force closure of the current log and opening of

a new log at any time by using the method `Repository>>startNewLog`. That method returns a SmallInteger, which is the *fileId* of the new log.

Step A6. Use **startstone** to restart the Stone.

Step A7. Log in to GemStone as DataCurator or SystemUser using linked Topaz (**topaz** -**l**). Remember that the password will be the original one supplied when you installed GemStone, not necessarily the one you have been using.

> *NOTE*
> *To perform the following steps, you must be the only user logged in to GemStone. Once you start the next step, other logins will be suspended.*

Step A8. Restore the most recent full backup to the new repository by sending the message `restoreFromBackup:` *fileOrDevice*. The argument *fileOrDevice* can be the name of a file or tape device. This method automatically detects whether a backup is compressed or not and reads it accordingly.

The following example restores the repository from a backup that consists of a single disk file.

- For information about using tapes, see "To Restore Backups from Tape" on page 300.
- For information about restoring backups from more than one file, see "To Restore Multiple-File Backups" on page 299.

The message `restoreStatus` can return helpful information at any point in the restore process. This status is an attribute of the repository, not of the session, and persists across login sessions and stopping and starting of the Stone repository monitor.

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreStatus
%
Restore is not active
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromBackup: 'backup.dat'
%
```

If the full backup is contained in one file, the system commits the restore and returns a summary and status. For instance:

```
[restore info]:GemStone attempting to open backup.dat .
[restore info]:GemStone reading from       backup.dat .
The restore from full backup completed, with
SmallInteger(40417) objects restored and
  SmallInteger(0) corrupt objects not restored.
```

❐   If partial logging was in effect (STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING = false) at the time the backup was made, the final status line reads:

```
Restore complete. (Backup made while in partial
logging mode.)
```

This status means that transaction logs cannot be restored. The repository is ready for ordinary use, and logins have been enabled.

❐   If full logging was in effect (STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING = true), the status line is similar to this:

```
Ready for restore from transaction log(s).
```

Continue with "Phase 2: Restore Subsequent Transactions" on page 295.

> *CAUTION*
> *Although you can end the restore process before restoring from all*
> *transaction logs, doing so can make it impossible to restore the omitted*
> *logs later by repeating the process. If you plan to terminate the restore*
> *prematurely, first read "Precautions When Restoring a Subset of*
> *Transaction Logs" on page 306.*

Phase 2: Restore Subsequent Transactions

If full transaction logging was in effect, the second phase of restoring the repository is to roll forward from the state of the last backup to the state of the last committed transaction. This action repeats the transactions in the order in which they were committed. You can do this only if the STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING configuration option was set to True at the time the backup was made. You can only restore transactions committed within a single backup-restore cycle; that is, the transactions being restored cannot span a more recent restore.

> *CAUTION*
> *Ordinarily, you will restore transactions from all log files written since*
> *the backup. If for some reason you plan to omit one or more log files, first*

read "Precautions When Restoring a Subset of Transaction Logs" on page 306.

Step B1.   Before continuing the restore process, you must log in again. (The `restoreFromBackup:` method (Step A8) terminated the session when it completed.)

```
topaz> login
```

Step B2.   Determine the location of all needed transaction logs. The method `restoreStatus` identifies the oldest transaction log that is needed, or you can use **copydbf -i** *backupName*. If a session was in a lengthy transaction at the time of the backup, that log may be one that was written before the backup started. In this example, it is `tranlog6.dbf`:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreStatus
%
```
<u>Restoring from Transaction Log files,</u>
<u>   restored to 07/02/08 13:26:31 PDT</u>
<u>   next fileId = 6, record = 9.</u>

Compare the fileId in the message with the names of the transaction log files in the directories specified in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES. For transaction logs in the file system, fileId forms the numeric portion of the file name, tranlog*NN*.dbf. For transaction logs in raw partitions, use **copydbf -i** *fileName* to display the fileId.

The methods in category Configuration File Access of class System allow you to inspect the log directory paths and file name prefixes for the current configuration. (For information, see "How to Access the Server Configuration at Run Time" on page 38.)

Step B3.   Restore the transaction logs in time sequence, beginning with the log identified by `restoreStatus`. How you restore the logs depends on where the oldest logs are located. If you encounter a failure because of a truncated or corrupted transaction log, refer to "Errors While Restoring Transaction Logs" on page 302.

❒   If all transaction log files beginning with `tranlog`*fileId*`.dbf` are in the locations specified by the STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES configuration option, skip to Step B4.

❒   If several of the older transaction logs have been moved to a different disk location, send the messages

```
Repository>>setArchiveLogDirectories: and
Repository>>restoreFromArchiveLogs to restore those log files.
```
The following example restores logs archived in /GS-archive, which is
not one of the active locations listed in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository setArchiveLogDirectories:
  #( 'GS-archive' )
SystemRepository restoreFromArchiveLogs
%
```

See the method comments in the image for details. A directory location can
include an NRS for a remote node, but a NetLDI must be running on that
node.

Continue with the next substep if it applies; otherwise continue with
Step B4.

❏ If individual transaction logs need to be restored, execute
Repository>>restoreToEndOfLog: *fileId* for each file or raw partition
in time sequence. (If the files are on tape, the files must first be restored to
a disk drive, but they do not need to be in their original location.) For
example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreStatus
%
Restoring from Transaction Log files,
  restored to 07/02/08 13:51:19 PDT
  next fileId = 7, record = 10.
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreToEndOfLog: 7
%
[Info]: Logging out at 07/24/08 14:37:07 PDT
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded.
```

As mentioned previously, each restore operation, on completion,
terminates its GemStone session. You will need to log in again before
performing the next restore operation.

Continue with Step B4 to restore from online logs.

Step B4. Restore transactions from all remaining online log files by executing the
method Repository>>restoreFromCurrentLogs. The remaining log
files (all log files beginning with the *fileId* currently returned by

restoreStatus) must be online and in the directories or raw partitions specified by STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES.

```
topaz> login
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromCurrentLogs
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded. [null]
```

Step B5. Send the message commitRestore, which tells the system you are finished restoring transaction logs.

```
topaz> login
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository commitRestore
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded. commitRestore
succeeded
```

At this point, restore mode is no longer active, and no further logs can be restored. Logins have been enabled, and ordinary user commits will be allowed.

If you send commitRestore earlier in the restore process (prior to restoreFromCurrentLogs), a warning is issued because all previously committed transactions may not have been restored. However, this usage provides a way to recover as much as is available when a log file has been corrupted or lost.

This step completes the restore process. Make a new full backup as soon as operational circumstances permit.

Other Considerations

Performance Tips

Restoring from backup usually takes at least 10-30% longer than the full backup took.

For the session performing the restore, the statistic ProgressCount (described on page 259) indicates the number of objects restored from the backup file thus far. If

you know the number of objects in the backup file, you can use this statistic to determine how far the restore has progressed.

You can improve restore performance by using one page server for every extent that resides on its own dedicated disk drive, but only if the repository uses weighted extent allocation mode. For example, if you are restoring a repository with six extents, each on its own separate physical hard drive, the following parameters, set in the restoring Gem's configuration file for the duration of the restore, would improve performance:

```
STN_NUM_LOCAL_AIO_SERVERS = 6;
DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE = 10,10,10,10,10,10;
```

Here are some tips on getting restores completed as soon as possible:

* Use `restoreFromBackups:` or `restoreFromBackupsNoShadows:` methods, rather than restoring backups one by one. These methods require you to specify all backup files in the correct order in an Array.

* A large shared page cache will improve performance.

* Set the Gem's free frame limit to be very low (for example, 500).

* Restore from uncompressed files rather than compressed files. The decompression libraries are slow and do very inefficient I/O. Backups created from `fullBackupCompressedTo:` can be uncompressed using **gunzip** *before* the restore operation for best performance. This makes a big difference.

* Place extents on striped file systems.

* Make sure the backup files being restored are not on the same disk spindles as the extents or transaction logs.

To Restore Multiple-File Backups

If you are restoring a backup that occupies more than one file or tape, each backup file must be restored in sequence. You can determine the restore status and the internal identification of the backup file required next by using the method `restoreStatus.` If a restore process is active, the reply indicates the date and time to which the repository has been restored, and the type of file and the internal file identification number (*fileId*) of the file that must be restored next. (The *fileId* is reset to 0 at the beginning of each Smalltalk full backup.)

For each part of the backup, repeat Step A8 on page 294, using the next file in sequence. If you are uncertain of the sequence in which to restore a particular file, use **copydbf** -**i** *fileName* to display its fileId.

Another way is to use `restoreFromBackups:` *arrayOfFilesOrDevices* and include all files or devices in the array in proper sequence. Since all backup files are verified for integrity at the beginning of the restore, they all must be available when this method is called. The following example restores a backup that occupies two files by placing the filenames in an array:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromBackups:
#( '%/backups/july15.08.1'
   '%/backups/july15.08.2' )
%
Opening file %/backups/july15.08.1
Opening file %/backups/july15.08.2
Restore from full backup completed with 132804 objects
restored and 0 corrupt objects not restored.
```

Another alternative is to use `restoreFromBackupsNoShadows:` *arrayOfFilesOrDevices*. This method is the same as `restoreFromBackups:` except that partially filled data pages are not added to the list of scavengeable pages upon completion of the restore. Using this method may cause the restored repository to perform faster than one restored using `restoreFromBackups:`, especially immediately following the restore.

When you restore the last backup file, GemStone either commits the restore or indicates that it is ready to restore from transaction logs, as explained on page 295.

If an error occurs, the shadow object space being built by the restore reverts to its state as of the end of the last file that was successfully restored.

If you need to cancel the process and start over while restoring a multiple file backup, use the method `Repository>>abortRestore`.

If the Topaz login session dies before the last backup file has been restored, you must start over by restoring the first file of the set.

To Restore Backups from Tape

When restoring from tape, use the device name as the argument to `SystemRepository restoreFromBackup:`. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromBackup: '/dev/rmt0.4'
%
```

Depending on your operating system and the type of tape drive, you may need to issue operating system commands first. For information, check your operating system documentation.

To access a tape device on another host, make sure that a NetLDI is running on that host and then include the host's name in *fileOrDevice* as a network resource string. For instance:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromBackup: '!@flute!/dev/rst0'
%
```

To Restore Logs to a Point in Time

Ordinarily, the methods `Repository>>restoreToEndOfLog:` and `restoreFromCurrentLogs` restore all transactions in the log file. However, you can specify an earlier stopping point by sending the message `timeToRestoreTo:` *aDateTime*. Restoration will stop at the first repository checkpoint that originally occurred at or after *aDateTime*.

To display the time a transaction log was started and the time of each checkpoint recorded in it, use **copydbf -I** *fileName*. By default, the maximum interval between checkpoints is five minutes. For example:

```
% copydbf -I tranlog2.dbf

Source file: tranlog2.dbf
  file type: tranlog   fileId: 2
  byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first)
  The file was created at:       07/25/08 14:55:59 PDT.
  The previous file last recordId is  69.
Destination file:  /dev/null
  byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first)
  Checkpoint 1 (last in file) started at: 07/25/08 14:55:59
PDT.
    oldest transaction references fileId -1 ( this file ).
  File size is 12288 bytes (24 records).
```

The following sequence restores the repository to the first checkpoint that would have included a commit on Julyt 22, 2008 at 3:35:00 p.m.:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository timeToRestoreTo:
  (DateTime fromString: '22/07/2008 15:35:00') .
SystemRepository restoreFromCurrentLogs
%
```

You can continue restoring past *aDateTime* by issuing another `restoreToEndOfLog:` or `restoreFromCurrentLogs`. If you first issue another `timeToRestoreTo:`, restoration stops at the new *aDateTime*; otherwise, restoration continues to the end of the log.

Errors While Restoring Transaction Logs

Sometimes a transaction log is inadvertently truncated or corrupted. This section discusses types of errors that can occur.

Disk-full error during a copy operation

An unnoticed disk-full error during a copy operation can result in a truncated log that goes undetected until you try to restore from it. Because of the way transaction logs are written, a truncated log may appear to restore properly, and the gap will not be detected until the next log is read.

If a message like the following appears:

```
Restore from transaction log failed.
Reason: Log with fileId 37 is truncated or corrupt.
Continue restore with complete copy of this log.
```

check the *fileId* in the message to identify the log that caused the problem, which may be either the log currently being restored or the previous one. If the transaction log is a file (not a raw partition), its default name is `tranlogfileId.dbf`.

The method `restoreStatus` returns additional information indicating the next record expected within the current log file. For instance:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreStatus
%
Restoring from Transaction Log files,
   restored to 07/02/08 13:26:31 PDT
   next fileId = 6, record = 9.
```

Retrieve a copy of the transaction log from a UNIX backup, and complete restoring it by using `restoreToEndOfLog:` *fileId.* Then continue the restore process by using either `restoreFromCurrentLogs` or another `restoreToEndOfLog:`.

Missing transaction log file

If a transaction log file in the sequence is missing, `restoreFromCurrentLogs` stops at that point. For example, if `tranlog4.dbf` is missing, `restoreFromCurrentLogs` stops after restoring from `tranlog3.dbf`.

You can execute the method `restoreStatus` to identify the next log file expected. Ensure that the missing file(s) are present and then continue the restore process with `restoreFromCurrentLogs` or `restoreToEndOfLog:`.

In the following example, `restoreFromCurrentLogs` encounters a truncated log. Invoking `restoreStatus` confirms that `tranlog6.dbf` is incomplete and shows that restoration needs to continue with record 9:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromBackup: 'backup.dat'
%
[restore info]:GemStone attempting to open backup.dat .
[restore info]:GemStone reading from        backup.dat .
The restore from full backup completed, with
SmallInteger(40483) objects restored and
  SmallInteger(0) corrupt objects not restored.
Ready for restore from transaction log(s).
topaz> login
topazm: in login, found topaz session 1 stale
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromCurrentLogs
%
-------------------------------------------------------
GemStone: Error          Fatal
Restore from transaction log failed,
  Log with fileId 6 is truncated or corrupt, or log 7 is
corrupt.
Repeat restore of complete copy of log 6, then restore log
7.
Error Category: [GemStone] Number: 4049 Arg Count: 1
Arg 1: 20
topaz> login
topazm: in login, found topaz session 1 stale
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreStatus
%
Restoring from Transaction Log files,
  restored to 07/02/08 13:26:31 PDT
  next fileId = 6, record = 9.
```

To recover, restore a complete copy of that transaction log by name (here, "tranlog6.dbf"):

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreToEndOfLog: 6
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded.
```

```
topaz> login
topazm: in login, found topaz session 1 stale
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
```

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreStatus
%
Restoring from Transaction Log files,
   restored to 07/02/08 13:51:19 PDT
   next fileId = 7.
```

The restore status now shows that you are ready for the next transaction log, `tranlog7.dbf`. Because the remaining logs are online, return to the original procedure of restoring them as a group and then commit the restored repository:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromCurrentLogs
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded.
```

```
topaz> login
topazm: in login, found topaz session 1 stale
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
```

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository commitRestore
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded., commitRestore
succeeded
```

If you cannot find an undamaged copy of the transaction log, `commitRestore` will commit as much as has been restored. However, if there is any chance of a

finding a good copy, see the following discussion, "Precautions When Restoring a Subset of Transaction Logs".

Precautions When Restoring a Subset of Transaction Logs

If, for some reason, you want to end the restore process before restoring transactions from one or more log files, be aware of the likely consequences and some precautions that may be appropriate:

• Obviously, the omitted transactions will be lost. Unless the omitted log is missing, presumably that is your intent.

• Less obvious, where the omitted logs actually are present, is that it may be difficult or impossible to reverse your action later and restore the omitted logs by repeating the entire restore process. Operations after the first restore create a time fork in the repository, and attempting to reverse the course later results in object audit errors. (For an example of this, see the following discussion, "Fork-in-Time" Scenario.)

If there is any chance that you may want to restore from the omitted transaction logs later, modify the ordinary restore procedure in this way:

1. Before starting the Stone on the fresh extent (Step A8, on page 294), move all transaction logs to another directory.

2. After restoring from the backup (`restoreFromBackup:`), restore transaction logs individually by using `restoreToEndOfLog:` (Step B2, on page 296) and providing the new path.

   Repeat `restoreToEndOfLog:` for each log file you want to restore.

3. Send the message `commitRestore` to end the restore operation.

> *CAUTION*
> *If you subsequently decide to restore logs by repeating the entire process, first remove any new log files since the start of the restore process, and then move the previous transaction logs back to their original location. Follow the ordinary restore procedure (page 290). Note, however, that you will not be able to restore any transactions committed after your initial* `commitRestore`*. That work will be lost.*

"Fork-in-Time" Scenario

In some cases, you may encounter problems when there you cannot restore from your most recent backup file and must restore from an earlier backup. This scenario presents a risk of transaction logs that are out of sequence due to a "fork-in-time." Consider the following sequence of repository events:

1. Generate backup1.

2. Generate transaction logs t1, t2, t3.

3. Generate backup2.

4. Generate transaction logs t4, t5, t6.

5. Restore backup2.

6. commitRestore (without replaying transaction logs t4, t5, t6).

   The repository is now at same state as step 3.

7. Generate transaction logs t7, t8, t9.

8. Restore backup1.

9. Replay transaction logs t1 through t9.

In terms of the repository lifecycle, this scenario has two timelines, with a fork-in-time at the end of t3:
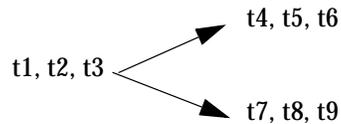
If, at step 5, we also restored the transaction logs (t4, t5, t6), the resulting sequence could be replayed without problems. The problem is caused when the continuity of the transaction log chain is broken.

After restoring backup1 in step 8, it would be possible to safely replay transaction logs t1 through t6 without problems, but any changes made in (t7, t8, t9) would be lost.

During step 9, the replay of (t7, t8, t9) is likely to produce problems. If any object changes made in (t4, t5, t6) are logically inconsistent with those made in (t7, t8, t9),

possible errors are wide-ranging, including UTL_ASSERT/UTL_GUARANTEE errors or errors of the form:

```
recovery/restore: invalid operation XXXXXXXXXX
Transaction expected to abort.
non-empty invalidObjs in recover.c:commitTran
```

In the worst case, errors may not be written to the Stone log during transaction log replay, but the final repository may be corrupted in obscure ways. If the corruption is structural, it may be detected by an object audit (page 215). Otherwise, the corruption may go undetected unless picked up by application code.

If you are presented with a situation wherein you are forced to restore from an earlier backup, keep in mind the following:

1. Be aware of the fork-in-time phenomenon and avoid restore/replay operations that would create a fork.

2. When restoring into an ongoing transaction log sequence, only restore a backup file generated earlier within that same sequence, and then replay *all* transaction logs in that sequence generated since that backup.

3. If for some reason you cannot follow guideline 2, realize that you cannot restore from an earlier backup and replay transaction logs beyond the point of the initially restored backup.

Methods for the restore process

To support the restore process, the following methods in class Repository (category Backup and Restore) are provided:

`restoreStatusOldestFileId`

This method returns the fileId of the oldest transaction log that needs to be present for the next restore from log operation, or nil if restore is not active.

`restoreToEndOfLog:` *fileId*

This method is used after a restore from an online extent backup or Smalltalk full backup, to restore all transaction logs up to and including the log with the given *fileId*. By default, the method reads log files from the directories specified by the Stone's STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES configuration file parameter. If a `setArchiveLogDirectories:` or `restoreFromArchiveLogs` method has been executed since the previous **startstone** command, the method reads log files from those directories instead.

setArchiveLogDirectories: *arrayOfDirectorySpec*

> This method specifies an Array of file system directories and/or raw devices to be used by subsequent invocation(s) of restoreFromArchiveLogs or restoreToEndOfLog:.

setArchiveLogDirectory: *aDirectorySpec*

> This method specifies a single file system directory or raw device to be used by subsequent invocation(s) of restoreFromArchiveLogs or restoreToEndOfLog:.

setArchiveLogDirectory: *aDirectorySpec* tranlogPrefix: *aPrefix*

> This method is similar to setArchiveLogDirectory: (above), except that the transaction log filenames begin with *aPrefix* rather than tranlog.

9.6 How to Make an Offline Extent Backup

To make a file system backup of the extents while GemStone is running, see page 279.

You cannot make a file system backup of a running GemStone system unless checkpoints are disabled. If you make an extent file backup while GemStone is running and checkpoints are enabled, that backup is likely to be unusable.

You can safely perform a file system backup of the extents while GemStone is shut down, provided that GemStone was shut down cleanly, such as by **stopstone** *gemStoneName.* During the shutdown process, a checkpoint is performed in which all committed transactions are written to the extents. A copy of the extents after an orderly shutdown constitutes a complete operating system backup of the repository without the necessity of backing up existing transaction logs.

To restore the repository using offline extent file backups, see the next section, "How to Restore from an Offline Extent Backup."

9.7 How to Restore from an Offline Extent Backup

Privileges required: FileControl.

This section describes how to restore the repository from an operating system backup made using **dump**, **tar**, **cp**, or similar methods. For complete recovery, this backup must have been made while the repository monitor was shut down. That

is, the backup must have been started after a **stopstone** and must have been completed before the subsequent **startstone**.

If the file system itself has been corrupted, not just the extent files, see the section "Disk Failure or File System Corruption" on page 118.

> *NOTE*
> *Before you begin, make sure that you have operating system backups of good extents and that the backups were made after an orderly shutdown of the Stone repository monitor. If a backup consists of multiple files, the complete set must be available.*

Step 1. If GemStone is still running, tell all users to log out and use **stopstone** to stop the repository monitor. Certain file system failures while the Stone is running may make it necessary to use **kill** *processid* to kill the Stone process.

Step 2. If you are restoring the repository because of a suspected GemStone failure, preserve a copy of the extents in case Technical Support wants to examine them.

> *WARNING*
> *Do NOT delete the transaction log files up to the time of the crash—leave them online in their current locations.*

Step 3. Delete all extent files specified by DBF_EXTENT_NAMES in your configuration file.

Step 4. Restore the operating system backup copies of the extent files to the locations specified by the DBF_EXTENT_NAMES configuration option.

Step 5. Ensure that there is space to create a log file during recovery. At least one of the directories specified by STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES must have space available or one of the raw partitions must be empty. You may need to add entries to STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES and STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES in your configuration file.

Step 6. The next step depends on whether full transaction logging was in effect at the time the backup was made.

❒   If partial transaction logging (STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING = False) was in effect at the time the backup was made, the restore process is complete. Restart GemStone by invoking **startstone** in the usual manner.

❐   If full transaction logging (STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING = True) was in
     effect, continue by restoring from transaction logs. Use **startstone** -**R** to
     restart GemStone.

     Continue with Step 7.

Step 7.   Determine the location of all needed transaction logs. The method
     `restoreStatus` identifies the earliest transaction log that is needed. In this
     example it is `tranlog6.dbf`:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreStatus
%
Restoring from Transaction Log files,
  restored to 07/02/08 13:26:31 PDT
  next fileId = 6, record = 9.
```

Compare the fileId in the message with the names of the transaction log files
in the directories specified in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES. For transaction
logs in the file system, fileId forms the numeric portion of the file name,
tranlog*NN*.dbf. For transaction logs in raw partitions, use **copydbf** -**i** *fileName*
to display the fileId.

The methods in category Configuration File Access of class System allow you
to inspect the log directory paths and file name prefixes for the current
configuration (for information, see "How to Access the Server Configuration
at Run Time" on page 38).

Step 8.   Restore the transaction logs in time sequence, beginning with the log
     identified by `restoreStatus`. How you do restore the logs depends on
     where the oldest logs are located and is described next. If you encounter a
     failure because of a truncated or corrupted transaction log, refer to "Errors
     While Restoring Transaction Logs" on page 302.

❐   If all transaction log files beginning with `tranlog`*fileId*`.dbf` are in the
     locations specified by the STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES configuration
     option, skip to Step 9.

❐   If several of the older transaction logs have been moved to a different disk
     location, send `Repository>>setArchiveLogDirectories:` and
     `Repository>>restoreFromArchiveLogs` to restore those log files.

The following example restores logs archived in /GS-archive, which is not one of the active locations listed in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES:

```
topaz> login
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository setArchiveLogDirectories:
  #( 'GS-archive' )
SystemRepository restoreFromArchiveLogs
%
```

See the method comments in the image for details. A directory location can include an NRS for a remote node, but a NetLDI must be running on that node.

Continue with the next substep if it applies, or else with Step 9.

❐ If individual transaction logs need to be restored, execute Repository>>restoreToEndOfLog: *fileId* for each file or raw partition in time sequence. (If the files are on tape, the files must first be restored to a disk drive, but they do not need to be in their original location.) For example:

```
topaz> login
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreStatus
%
Restoring from Transaction Log files,
  restored to 07/02/08 13:51:19 PDT
  next fileId = 7, record = 10.
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreToEndOfLog: 7
%
Restore from transaction log succeeded.
```

Continue with Step 9 to restore from online logs.

Step 9. After you restore transactions from any offline log files, restore transactions from the online log files by executing the method Repository>>restoreFromCurrentLogs. All the remaining log files

must be in directories or raw partitions specified in
STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES.

```
topaz> login
topazm: in login, found topaz session 1 stale
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository restoreFromCurrentLogs
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded. [null]
```

Step 10. If restoration from the transaction logs was successful, send the message
`commitRestore` to tell the system that you are finished restoring. No further
logs can be restored, and normal user commits will be allowed.

```
topaz> login
topazm: in login, found topaz session 1 stale
gci login: currSession 1 rpc gem processId -1
successful login
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository commitRestore
%
Restore from transaction log(s) succeeded. commitRestore
succeeded
```

Step 11. Make a new GemStone backup as soon as operational circumstances
permit.

9.8 How to Recover After Repair of the File System

In case of a disk failure or a corrupt file system, the file system must be repaired
before you can restart GemStone. The procedure you need to follow depends on
how the damage was repaired.

To Recover After a File System Repair With fsck

After a repair with **fsck** (the UNIX file system consistency check and interactive
repair utility), use **pageaudit** to check the condition of the system repository. (For
instructions, see "How to Audit the Repository" on page 215.)

• If the page audit succeeds, try to restart GemStone again. If GemStone starts,
you can resume normal operations.

- If the page audit fails or GemStone doesn't start, you will need to restore the repository file. (See "How to Restore from an Online Extent Backup" on page 283 or "How to Restore from a Smalltalk Full Backup" on page 290.)

To Recover When a File System Must Be Restored

If your system administrator intends to restore the file system from a backup device, it might be worthwhile to copy the repository to another node or to tape **before** restoring the file system. Although this copy may prove unusable, if a great deal of important data has been committed since the last backup, it may be worth a try.

To restart GemStone after the file system is restored, perform the following steps. (See Figure 9.2 on page 316.)

Step 1. If you made a copy of the repository, begin with that copy. To test the copy, use the methods discussed in the section "How to Audit the Repository" on page 215. You will need to specify the name and path of the copy using a temporary configuration file so that **pageaudit** is not performed on the extent that was restored along with the rest of the file system.

If you didn't make a copy of the repository or the copy does not pass **pageaudit**, start with the current extent file(s) that were restored from the file system backup. Review the log file and determine whether the backup was made while GemStone was running.

❐ If the Stone was running and checkpoints were not disabled and any changes were being made to the repository during the backup, the extent file(s) may be inconsistent and cannot be made to work. In that case, you must restore from a valid GemStone backup. However, the transaction logs should be usable.

❐ If the backup was done while GemStone checkpoints were suspended, continue to the next step.

Step 2. Do a **pageaudit** to check the current (restored) extent files. (For instructions, see "To Perform a Page Audit" on page 216.)

❐ If the page audit is good, try to restart the system again with **startstone**. If GemStone starts, you can resume normal operations.

❒ If the page audit fails or GemStone doesn't start, you will need to restore from a GemStone online extent backup (page 283) or from Smalltalk full backups (page 290).

NOTE
*Remember that **startstone** uses (1) a GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF environment variable or (2) $GEMSTONE/data/system.conf as the default system-wide configuration file. If you want it to use parameters from a different configuration file, be sure to specify that file with the* **startstone -z** *option. For a discussion of how* **startstone** *searches for the configuration file, see page 368.*

Figure 9.2   Recovering When a File System Must Be Restored
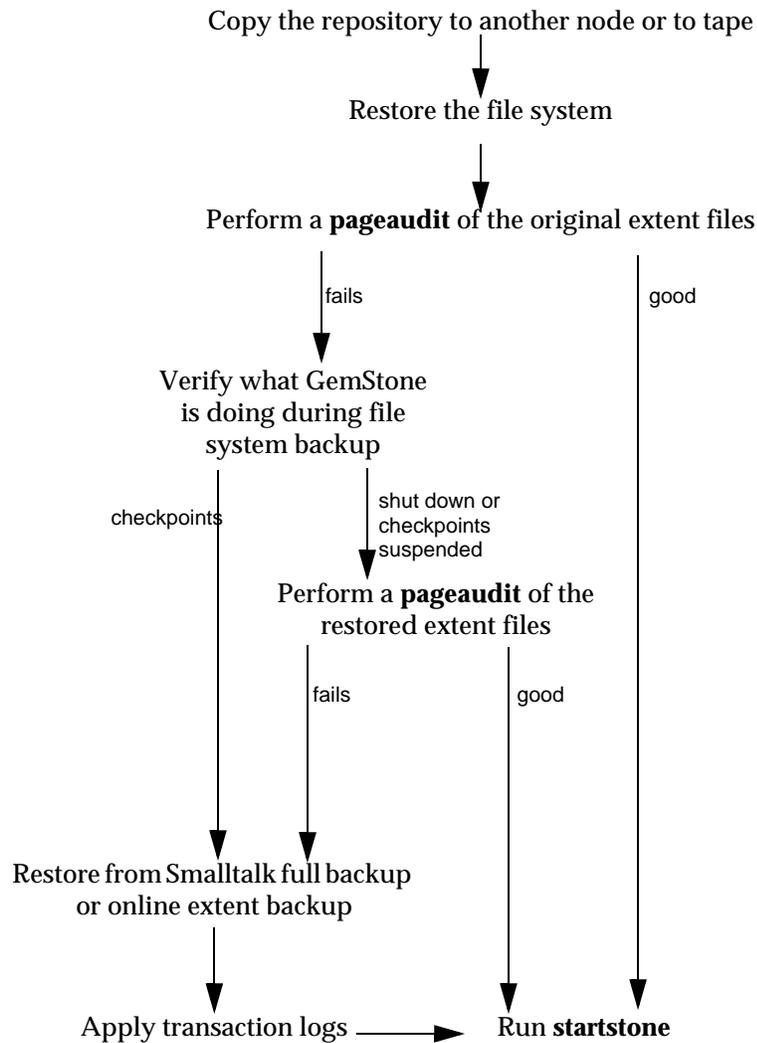
Copy the repository to another node or to tape

↓

Restore the file system

↓

Perform a **pageaudit** of the original extent files

| fails | good |

Verify what GemStone
is doing during file
system backup

checkpoints   shut down or
checkpoints
suspended

↓

Perform a **pageaudit** of the
restored extent files

fails   good

↓

Restore from Smalltalk full backup
or online extent backup

↓

Apply transaction logs ⟶ Run **startstone**

NOTE
Remember that **startstone** *uses (1) a GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF*

environment variable or (2) $GEMSTONE/data/system.conf as the
default system-wide configuration file. If you want it to use parameters
from a different configuration file, be sure to specify that file with the
startstone -z *option.*

9.9 Version compatibility

It is not always possible to restore backups made by a previous version of
GemStone into a new version.

If you archive backups of your GemStone repository over multiple upgrades of
your GemStone installation, you should also archive the GemStone executables for
each version.

9.10 How To Manage a Warm Standby System

To maximize system availability, you can run two GemStone installations, one as
the primary system and the other on standby, ready to take over as quickly as
possible in case of any failure of the primary system. To do so:

Step 1. Run the primary system using full logging as described in "Choosing a
Logging Mode" on page 27.

Step 2. To protect against hardware failure, mirror its extents and transaction
logs, as described in "Developing a Failover Strategy" on page 11.

Step 3. Make a Smalltalk full backup of the primary system. (Instructions start on
page 284.) You'll have to do this at least once, when you start this project;
however, regular backups will simplify matters when you need to synchronize
the primary and the standby systems.

Step 4. Run the standby system in restore mode. After each full backup of the
primary system, restore the full backup to the standby system, leaving it in
restore mode when you're done. (Instructions start on page 292.)

Step 5. As each transaction log completes on the primary system, move the log to
a file system accessible to the standby GemStone installation, if necessary, and
replay the transaction log. (Instructions start on page 295.)

Step 6. If the primary system fails, replay its latest transaction log on the standby
system. Client applications will have to reconnect to the standby system,

which now becomes the primary system. Applications may have to perform their own failure recovery code as necessary, as well.

NOTE
Design your applications so that, after detecting a failure, they can determine which system is the new primary and reconnect correctly.

Step 7. Correct the problem on the failed system and restart it.

Step 8. Depending on how much time has elapsed since the standby system became the primary system, either make a full backup of the new primary system and restore it on the system that failed, or replay the new primary system's transaction logs on the system that failed. Maintain that system in restore mode as the new standby.

You can limit each transaction log to a tolerable amount of information either by limiting transaction log size or starting a new log at regular time intervals:

*   *Size-based:* Limit the transaction log size, as described in "Choosing the Log Location and Size Limit" on page 29. When a transaction log grows to the specified limit, GemStone starts a new transaction log.

*   *Time-based:* Run a script at regular intervals on your primary system that terminates the current transaction log and starts a new one.

In the course of everyday operations, your GemStone/S 64 Bit repository will grow. Some of this growth will be the result of a growing business, but some will represent unreferenced or outdated objects. These objects, no longer needed, must be removed to prevent the repository from growing arbitrarily large. The process of removing unwanted objects to reclaim their storage is referred to as *garbage collection.*

GemStone implements a variety of garbage collection mechanisms, some automatic and some as a result of actions you take as you deem necessary. All these mechanisms can be tuned in various ways to best suit your operations.

This chapter describes GemStone's garbage collection mechanisms and explains how and when to use them.

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- **Basic Concepts** — the main concepts underlying garbage collection (page 320).

- **Automatic Garbage Collection —** garbage collection from local object memory (page 329), and epoch garbage collection (page 336).

- **Invoking Garbage Collection** — when, how, and why to invoke the garbage collection mechanisms that must be started by administrators (page 345).

10.1 Basic Concepts

Smalltalk execution can produce a number of objects needed only for the moment. In addition, normal business operations can cause previously committed objects to become obsolete. To make the best use of system resources, it is desirable to reclaim the resources these objects use as soon as possible. Removing unwanted objects is a two-phase process:

1. Identify—*mark*—superfluous objects.

2. *Reclaim* the resources they consume.

Together, *marking* and *reclaiming* unwanted objects is *collecting garbage.*

Complications ensue because each Gem in a transaction is guaranteed a consistent view of the repository: all visible objects are guaranteed to remain in the same state as when the transaction began. If another Gem commits a change to a mutually visible object, both states of the object must somehow coexist until the older transaction commits or aborts, refreshing its view. Therefore, resources can be reclaimed only after all transactions concurrent with marking have committed or aborted.

Older views of committed, modified objects are called *shadow objects.*

Garbage collection reclaims three kinds of resources:

*   The storage occupied by dead objects

*   The storage occupied by shadow objects

*   Object identifiers (OOPs) for dead objects

Live objects

GemStone considers an object *live* if it can be reached by traversing a path from AllUsers, the root object of the GemStone repository. By definition, AllUsers contains a reference to each user's UserProfile. Each UserProfile contains a reference to all the symbol lists for a given user, and those symbol lists in turn point to classes and instances created by that user's applications. Thus, AllUsers is the root node of a tree whose branches and leaves encompass all the objects that the repository requires at a given time to function as expected.

Transitive closure

Traversing such a path from a root object to all its branches and leaves is called *transitive closure.*

Dead objects

An object is *dead* if it cannot be reached from the AllUsers root object. Other dead objects may refer to it, but no live object does. Without living references, the object is visible only to the system, and is a candidate for reclamation of both its storage and its OOP.

Shadow objects

A *shadow object* is a committed object with an outdated value. A committed object becomes shadowed when it is modified during a transaction. Unlike a dead object, a shadow object is still referenced in the repository because the old and new values share a single object identifier.The shadow object must be maintained as long as it is visible to other transactions on the system; then the system can reclaim only its storage, not its OOP (which is still in use identifying the committed object with its current value).

Commit records

Views of the repository are based on *commit records,* structures written when a transaction is committed. Commit records detail every object modified *(the write set),* as well as the new values of modified objects. The Stone maintains these commit records; when a Gem begins a transaction or refreshes its view of the repository, its view is based on the most recent commit record available.

Each session's view is based on exactly one commit record at a time, but any number of sessions' views can be based on the same commit record.

NOTE
The repository must retain each commit record and the shadow objects to which it refers as long as that commit record defines the transaction view of any session.

Commit record backlog

The list of commit records that the Stone maintains in order to support multiple repository views is the *commit record backlog.*

Shadow or Dead?

The following example illustrates the difference between dead and shadow objects. In Figure 10.1, a user creates a SymbolAssociation in the SymbolDictionary Published. The SymbolAssociation is an object (oop 70089) that refers to two other objects, its instance variables key (#Cost, oop 76859), and value (5.75, oop 70091).

The Topaz command "display oops" causes Topaz to display within brackets ([ ]) the identifier, size, and class of each object. This display is helpful in examining the initial SymbolAssociation and the changes that occur.

Figure 10.1   An Association Is Created and Committed

```
topaz 1> display oops
topaz 1> printit
Published at: #Cost put: 5.75 .
Published associationAt: #Cost .
%
[70089 sz:2 cls: 873 SymbolAssociation] a SymbolAssociation
  key         [76859 sz:4 cls: 867 Symbol] Cost
  value       [70091 sz:8 cls: 761 Float]  5.7500000000000000E+00

topaz 1> commit
Successful commit
```
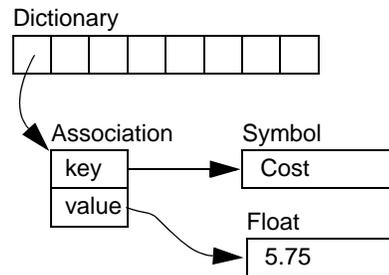

Figure 10.2 shows a second Topaz session that logs in at this point. Notice that the Topaz prompt identifies the session by displaying a digit. Because Session 1 committed the SymbolAssociation to the repository, Session 2 can see the SymbolAssociation.

Figure 10.2   A Second Session Can See the Association

```
topaz 2> display oops
topaz 2> printit
Published associationAt: #Cost .
%
[70089 sz:2 cls: 873 SymbolAssociation] a SymbolAssociation
  key         [76859 sz:4 cls: 867 Symbol] Cost
  value       [70091 sz:8 cls: 761 Float]  5.7500000000000000E+00
```

Now Session 1 changes the *value* instance variable, creating a new SymbolAssociation (Figure 10.3). Notice in the oops display that the new SymbolAssociation object has the same identifier (70089) as the previous Association.

Figure 10.3   The Value Is Replaced, Changing the Association

```
topaz 1> printit
Cost := Cost + 0.50 .
Published associationAt: #Cost .
%
[70089 sz:2 cls: 873 SymbolAssociation] a SymbolAssociation
   key          [76859 sz:4 cls: 867 Symbol] Cost
   value        [70069 sz:8 cls: 761 Float]  6.2500000000000000E+00

topaz 1> commit
Successful commit
```
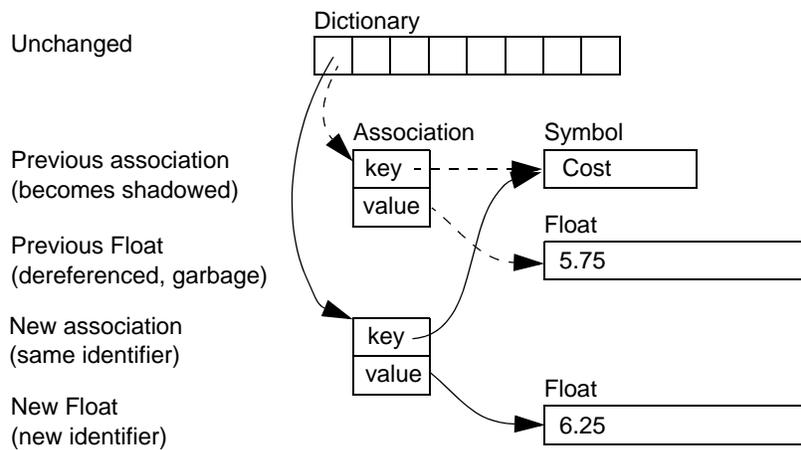

- The SymbolAssociation is now *shadowed.* Because the shadow SymbolAssociation was part of the committed repository and is still visible to other transactions (such as that of Session 2), it cannot be overwritten. Instead, the new SymbolAssociation is written to another page, one allocated for the current transaction.

- The previous value (oop 70091) is no longer referenced in the repository. For now, this object is considered *possibly dead;* we cannot be sure it is dead because, although the object has been dereferenced by a committed transaction, other, concurrent transactions might have created a reference to it.

Even though Session 1 committed the change, Session 2 continues to see the original SymbolAssociation and its value (Figure 10.4). Session 2 (and any other concurrent sessions) will not see the new SymbolAssociation and value until it either commits or aborts the transaction that was ongoing when Session 1 committed the change.

Figure 10.4   Session 2 Sees Change After Renewing Transaction View of Repository

```
topaz 2> printit
Published associationAt: #Cost .
%
[70089 sz:2 cls: 873 SymbolAssociation] a SymbolAssociation
  key          [76859 sz:4 cls: 867 Symbol] Cost
  value        [70091 sz:8 cls: 761 Float]   5.7500000000000000E+00

topaz 2> abort
topaz 2> printit
Published associationAt: #Cost .
%
[70089 sz:2 cls: 873 SymbolAssociation] a SymbolAssociation
  key          [76859 sz:4 cls: 867 Symbol] Cost
  value        [70069 sz:8 cls: 761 Float]   6.2500000000000000E+00
```

Only when all sessions with concurrent transactions have committed or aborted can the shadow object be garbage collected.

What Happens to Garbage?

GemStone implements a variety of garbage collection mechanisms tailored for specific scenarios. The following idealized process describes none of them. Instead, it provides a general framework you can use to understand how each different mechanism handles the scenarios it was designed to handle.

NOTE
Not every garbage collection mechanism uses every step of the process
below. Subsequent sections describe each specific process in detail.

The basic garbage collection process encompasses nine steps:

1. Find all the live objects in the system by traversing references, starting at the system root AllUsers. This step is called *mark/sweep.*

2. The Gem that performed mark/sweep now has a list of all live objects. It also knows the universe of all possible objects: objects whose OOPs range from

zero to the highest OOP in the system. It can now compute the *set of possible dead objects* as follows:

a. Subtract the live objects from the universe of possible objects.

b. Subtract all the unassigned OOPs in that range.

This step is called the *object table sweep* because the Gem uses the object table to determine the universe of possible objects and the unassigned OOPs.

3. The Gem performing this work now has a list of *possibly dead* objects. We can't be sure they're dead because, during the time that the mark/sweep and object table sweep were occurring, other concurrent transactions might have created references to some of them.

    The Gem sends the Stone the *possible dead set* and returns.

4. Now, in a step called *voting,* each Gem logged into the system must search its private memory to see if it has created any references to objects in the possible dead set. When it next commits or aborts, it votes on every object in the possible dead set. Objects referenced by a Gem are removed from the possible dead set.

    > *NOTE*
    > *Gems do not vote until they complete their current transaction. If a Gem is sleeping or otherwise engaged in a long transaction, the vote cannot be finalized and garbage collection halts at this point. Commit records accumulate, garbage accumulates, and a variety of problems can ensue.*

5. Because all the previous steps take time, it's possible that some Gems were on the system when the mark/sweep began, created a reference to an object now in the possible dead set, and then logged out. They cannot vote on the possible dead set, but objects they've modified are in the write sets of their commit records. The *Admin GcGem,* a process dedicated to administrative garbage collection tasks, scans all these write sets (the *write set union),* and votes on their behalf. This is called the *write set union sweep.*

6. After all voting is complete, the resulting set now holds nothing but unreferenced objects. The Stone now promotes the objects from possibly dead to dead.

7. One or more *Reclaim GcGems* reclaims pages: it copies live objects on the page onto a new page, thereby compacting live objects in page space. The page now contains only recycleable objects and perhaps free space.

8. The Reclaim GcGem commits. The reclaimed OOPs are returned to their free pool.

9. The Reclaim GcGem's commit record is disposed of. The reclaimed pages are returned to their free pool.

Admin and Reclaim GcGems

It is useful to understand the distinction between the Admin GcGem and Reclaim GcGems:

*   The Admin GcGem finalizes the vote on possibly dead objects (page 325, Step 5). The Admin GcGem handles compiled methods and other special cases.

    The Admin GcGem also performs epoch garbage collection. For details, see "Epoch Garbage Collection" on page 336.

    The Admin GcGem is started by the Stone at startup time if enabled by the STN_ADMIN_GC_SESSION_ENABLED configuration option. For details, see "Running the Admin GcGem" on page 348.

*   Reclaim GcGems are dedicated to the task of reclaiming shadowed pages and dead objects repository-wide, along with their OOPs. If you have multiple extents in your repository, you can run multiple Reclaim GcGems, up to one on each extent file in the repository. Each Reclaim GcGem can handle several extents.

    The configuration parameter STN_NUM_GC_RECLAIM_SESSIONS specifies the maximum number of Reclaim GcGems that can be started. For details, see "Configuring and Starting the Reclaim GcGems" on page 355.

By default, one Admin GcGem and one Reclaim GcGem are configured to run in the configuration file, and are started automatically when the Stone is started. This is the simplest GcGem configuration.

*   We recommend that you leave the Admin GcGem running at all times, although this GcGem is required only following a `markForCollection` or `markGcCandidatesFromFile:` garbage collection operation. (Subsequent sections of this chapter describe these operations in detail.) If the Admin GcGem is not running following one of these operations, the garbage collection process cannot complete, and garbage can build up in your system.

*   We recommend that you have at least one Reclaim GcGem running at all times.

Both the Admin and Reclaim GcGems are run from the GcUser account, a special account that logs in to the repository to perform garbage collection tasks. For more about this account, see Chapter 5, "User Accounts and Security".

Different Ways to Collect Garbage

Garbage collection mechanisms vary according to *where* garbage collection occurs — temporary (scratch) memory or permanent object space — and *how* it occurs — automatically, or in response to an administrator's action.

Where

Each Gem session has its own private memory intended for scratch space, known as *local object memory.* The Gem session uses local object memory for a variety of temporary objects, which can be garbage-collected individually.

Permanent objects are organized in units of 16 KB called *pages.* Pages exist in the Gem's private page cache, the Stone repository monitor's private page cache, the shared page cache, and on disk in the extents. When first created, each page is associated with a specific transaction; after its transaction has completed, GemStone does not write to that page again until all its storage can be reclaimed.

Objects on pages are not garbage-collected individually. Instead, the presence of a shadow object or dead object triggers reclamation of the page on which the object resides.

How

Some garbage collection mechanisms, such as the process that scavenges local object memory, occur automatically when needed in a manner invisible to the user. As a unit, these automatic mechanisms are designed to catch as much garbage as possible. But they can't catch everything; therefore, the system administrator has a variety of additional tools: Smalltalk methods to invoke a wide variety of other mechanisms. You can find the right subset of these to run at intervals appropriate for your operational profile.

GemStone's Garbage Collection Mechanisms

GemStone provides the following mechanisms that together mark and reclaim garbage, thereby helping you to control repository growth.

Both Marking and Reclaiming

Temporary object memory collection — This mechanism, which you might think of as preventive, reclaims objects in local object memory while they exist within view of only the session that created them. Each Gem session process performs this task automatically. The goal is to prevent temporary garbage objects from reaching

permanent object memory through a committed transaction. These objects are collected individually, instead of in pages.

You can set GemStone environment variables and configuration options to manage the use of temporary object memory. For details, see "Temporary Object Memory Garbage Collection" on page 329.

Marking Only

Repository-wide marking — To prevent the repository from growing large enough to cause problems on a regular basis, you can run `Repository >> markForCollection` (page 345). This method combines a full sweep of all objects in the repository and the marking of each possible dead object in a single operation.

FDC/MGC — This two-step process allows for more efficient garbage collection in larger production systems. In the first step (FDC), the method `Repository >> findDisconnectedObjectsAndWriteToFile:` explicitly finds disconnected objects in the repository and identifies a list of possible targets for garbage collection. Because the FDC method writes the possibly dead objects to a file, you can run this step in a copy of the repository rather than in the production system. In the second step (MGC), the method `Repository >> markGcCandidatesFromFile:` examines the set of candidate garbage objects, ensures that they are not referenced by live objects, and then marks them as dead for subsequent garbage collection. For details about the FDC/MGC process, see page 350.

Epoch garbage collection — Periodically, the Admin GcGem examines all transactions written since a specific, recent time (the beginning of this *epoch*) for objects that were created and then dereferenced during that period. However, epoch garbage collection cannot reclaim objects that are created in one epoch but dereferenced in another. In spite of its name, epoch garbage collection only marks; it does not reclaim. You can configure various aspects to maximize its usefulness. For details about epoch garbage collection, see page 336.

Reclaiming Only

Parallel reclamation — Once you've run `markForCollection`, FDC/MGC, or epoch garbage collection, you can run Reclaim GcGems to reclaim pages that contain either dead or shadow objects. When there are a high number of objects needing to be reclaimed, you can run multiple Reclaim GcGems simultaneously, as many as one Reclaim GcGem for each extent in your repository. For details about reclaiming pages, see page 354.

10.2 Temporary Object Memory Garbage Collection

Collecting garbage from local object memory is an automatic process.

Each Gem session has a temporary object memory that is private to the Gem process and its corresponding session. This local object memory is divided into the following regions:

- `new` — young temporary objects; includes two subspaces named `eden` and `survivor`

- `old` — older temporary objects

- `pom` — unmodified faulted-in objects, divided into ten subspaces

- `perm` — faulted-in or created Classes and Metaclasses

- `code` — instances of GsMethod being executed, or recently executed

- `mE` — oopMap entries that map objId to in-memory objects for committed objects

Temporary objects are created in the `new` area of local object memory. When the `new` area fills up, a scavenge occurs which throws away unreferenced objects in `new`. After an object has survived a number of scavenges, it is copied to the `old` area. After the `old` area has grown by some amount or is almost full, a mark/sweep takes place, finding all live objects and then compacting the `new`, `old`, `perm`, and `code` areas as needed to remove dead objects.

Committed objects referenced by the session are copied from the shared page cache into the `pom`, `perm`, or `code` areas at the point they are first referenced by interpreter execution or a GCI call. (This is called a "copy-on-read" design.)

If a committed object in the `pom` area has been modified, it is copied to the `old` area if a scavenge occurs before the change is committed. Objects that are sent to the GCI client, such as GBS, are also moved to the `old` area, whether or not they are modified.

When the `pom` area becomes full, the contents of its oldest subspace (that is, the oldest 10%) are discarded, and that subspace is reused to continue faulting-in committed objects. Before the oldest subspace is recycled, any objects in the subspace that have been modified, or that are currently referenced from the interpreter stack, are copied to the `old` area.

At transaction commit, any committed objects that have been modified, and any new objects transitively reachable from those modified objects, are copied to new data pages in the shared cache. A transaction conflict check is then performed. If the commit succeeds, the in-memory state of all new objects copied to the shared

cache is changed to "committed". The newly committed objects are now eligible to be removed from temporary memory by a mark/sweep or scavenge if they are no longer directly referenced from temporary objects.

Examining and Allocating Temporary Memory Usage

You may encounter an OutOfMemory error if you create too large a graph of live temporary objects at any time, or if you try to modify too many committed objects in a single transaction. OutOfMemory is a fatal error that terminates the session.

Very large numbers of Classes can also fill up temporary object memory. Any class that is referenced by message send or iteration is loaded into the `perm` area, and its method dictionaries, classHistory, and so on are loaded into the `old` area.

Persistent objects that are in the export set for a GCI client, such as GemBuilder for Smalltalk, are also moved to the `old` area. This includes objects that are replicated but not modified.

If you find that your application is running out of temporary memory, you can use several GemStone environment variables to help you identify which parts of your application are triggering garbage collection. Once you've done that, you can set GemStone configuration options to provide the needed memory.

Environment Variables

When any of the following environment variables are set to a positive non-zero value, they have the effect described here for each Gem or linkable Topaz (topaz -l) process that you subsequently start. For all of these environment variables, the printout goes to the "output push" file of a linkable Topaz (topaz -l) session, for use in testing your application. If that file is not defined, the printouts go to standard output of the session's gem or topaz -l process.

> *To set any of these environment variables, you must first uncomment them in the* `$GEMSTONE/sys/gemnetdebug` *file. Be aware that the contents of* `gemnetdebug` *are subject to change at any time. For the most current information about these and other variables, examine the* `gemnetdebug` *file.*

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_MKSW_MEMORY_USED_SOFT_BREAK
   At the end of each mark/sweep, if the percent of memory used is greater than the threshold specified by this variable, a SoftBreak (error 6003) is generated, and the threshold is raised by 5 percent. We suggest a setting of 75%.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_MKSW_PRINT_STACK
> The mark/sweep count at which to begin printing the Smalltalk stack at each mark/sweep.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_MKSW_PRINT_C_STACK
> The mark/sweep count at which to begin printing the C stack at each mark/sweep. This variable is very expensive, consuming 2 seconds plus the cost of fork() for each printout.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_MKSW
> The mark/sweep count at which to begin printing mark/sweeps.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_MKSW_MEMORY
> The mark/sweep count at which to begin printing detailed memory usage (20 lines) for each mark/sweep.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_MKSW_MEMORY_USED
> Specifies when Smalltalk stack printing starts as the application approaches OutOfMemory conditions. At the end of each mark/sweep, if the percent of memory used is greater than the threshold specified by this variable, the mark/sweep is printed, the Smalltalk stack is printed, and the threshold is raised by 5 percent. In a situation producing an OutOfMemory error, you should get several Smalltalk stacks printed in the Gem log file before the session dies.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_SCAV
> The scavenge count at which to begin printing scavenges. Once this takes effect, all mark/sweeps will also be printed. Be aware that printing scavenges can produce large quantities of output.

GS_DEBUG_VM_PRINT_TRANS
> Print transaction boundaries (begin/commit/abort) in the log file.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_SCAV_PRINT_STACK
> The scavenge count at which to begin printing the Smalltalk stack at each scavenge. Be aware that this print activity can produce large quantities of output.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_SCAV_PRINT_C_STACK
> The scavenge count at which to begin printing the C stack at each scavenge. This variable is very expensive, consuming 2 seconds plus the cost of fork() for each printout.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_VERBOSE_OUTOFMEM
> Automatically call the primitive for
> `System class>>_vmPrintInstanceCounts:0` when an OutOfMemory

error occurs, and also print the Smalltalk stack. (For details about this method, see the comments in the image.) This applies to each Gem or linkable Topaz (topaz -l) process that you subsequently start.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_VERIFY_MKSW

The mark/sweep count at which to begin verifying object memory before and after each mark/sweep.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_VERIFY_SCAV

The scavenge count at which to begin verifying object memory before and after each scavenge. Once this takes effect, GS_DEBUG_VMGC_VERIFY_MKSW will also be in effect. Be aware that this activity uses significant amounts of CPU time.

Configuration Options

The values for these options are set when the gem or topaz -l process is initialized. You cannot change these values without restarting the VM. For more about these options, see the descriptions that begin on page 385.

GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE

The maximum size (in KB) of temporary object memory. (This limit also applies to linked Topaz sessions and linked GemBuilder applications.) When you only change this setting, and the other GEM_TEMPOBJ... configuration options use default values, then all of the various spaces remain in proportion to each other.

GEM_TEMPOBJ_INITIAL_SIZE

On HP-UX and AIX, the initial size (in KB) of temporary object memory that is allocated on startup. As temporary object memory fills up, the amount of temporary memory available is increased to the limit of GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE. This setting is not used on other platforms, where memory is handled differently.

GEM_TEMPOBJ_MESPACE_SIZE

The maximum size (in KB) of the mE (Map Entries) space within temporary object memory. Unless you are trying to minimize the memory footprint on HP-UX or AIX, you should always leave GEM_TEMPOBJ_MESPACE_SIZE at its default value so that the system can calculate the appropriate value. Otherwise, you are at risk of premature OutOfMemory errors.

GEM_TEMPOBJ_OOPMAP_SIZE

The size of the hash table (that is, the number of 8-byte entries) in the objId-to-object map within temporary object memory. This option should normally be left at its default setting.

GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_SIZE
> The maximum size (in KB) of the POM generation area in temporary object memory. The POM generation area holds unmodified copies of committed objects that have been faulted into a Gem, and is divided into ten subspaces. This option should normally be left at its default setting so that the system can calculate the value.

Methods for Computing Temporary Object Space

To find out how much space is left in the `old` area of temporary memory, the following methods in class System (category Performance Monitoring) are provided:

`System _tempObjSpaceUsed`
> Returns the approximate number of bytes of temporary object memory being used to store objects.

`System _tempObjSpaceMax`
> Returns the approximate maximum number of bytes of temporary object memory that are usable for storing objects.

`System _tempObjSpacePercentUsed`
> Returns the approximate percentage of temporary object memory that is in use to store temporary objects. This is equivalent to the expression:
>
> ```
> (System _tempObjSpaceUsed * 100) //
>   System _tempObjSpaceMax.
> ```
>
> Note that it is possible for the result to be slightly greater than 100%. Such a result indicates that temporary memory is almost completely full.

Sample Configurations

This section presents several sample configurations:

- Default configuration
- Larger old area, smaller pom
- Smaller old area, larger pom

These examples assume that you have already set the GS_DEBUG_VMGC... environment variables (page 330) to produce the resulting printouts. The examples shown are for Solaris and may vary on other platforms.

Default Configuration

A default value (10000) for GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE (that is, 10 MB)
produces a limit of about 7 MB of temporary plus modified-committed objects
(`old`), space for a working set of about 8 MB of unmodified committed objects
(`pom`), and a maximum memory footprint on the order of 25 MB.

The following example shows the printout for this configuration:

```
vmGc spaceSizes: eden init 1864K max 1864K, survivor init
320K max 320K,
vmGc old max 7496K, code max 2000K, perm max 1000K, pom
10 * 840K=8400K,
vmGc remSet 216K, meSpace max 9592K oopMapSize 65536
```

(The internal structures `remSet`, `meSpace`, and `oopMapSize` are not of interest
here.)

Larger old, Smaller pom

The following settings configure the application for a 5 MB working set of
unmodified committed objects (smaller than the default), and a maximum of
25 MB of temporary plus modified objects (larger than the default).

```
GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE = 25000;
GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_SIZE = 5000;
```

The following example shows the printout for this configuration:

```
vmGc spaceSizes: eden init 2000K max 4688K, survivor init
400K max 784K
vmGc old max 18744K, code max 5000K, perm max 2504K, pom
10 * 504K=5040K
vmGc remSet 360K, meSpace max 16824K oopMapSize 65536
```

Smaller old Area, Larger pom

The following settings configure an application with a large working set of
committed objects and small temporary object space.

```
GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE = 7000;
GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_SIZE = 100000;
```

The following example shows the printout for this configuration:

```
vmGc spaceSizes: eden init 1304K max 1304K , survivor
init 224K max 224K
vmGc old max 5248K, code max 1400K, perm max 704K, pom 10
* 10000K=100000K
vmGc remSet 1008K, meSpace max 48880K oopMapSize 524288
```

How Memory Is Allocated

On Solaris and Linux, the memory spaces configured by
GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE and GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_SIZE are
reserved in virtual memory at Gem startup, and are allocated/released as needed
via mmap() calls to Solaris or Linux. On HP-UX and AIX, memory is handled
differently, and may not be reserved without being allocated. On these platforms,
the memory configured by GEM_TEMPOBJ_INITIAL_SIZE is initially allocated.
As more memory is needed, a new memory region is allocated with mmap(),
contents of previous memory is copied to the new memory, and the previous
memory is released with munmap().

This means that you can configure GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE large enough
to handle the worst case of infrequent transactions with many temporary or
modified-committed objects. It is OK to have maxSessions*(2.5 *
GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE) exceed the memory budget for sessions if the
average memory usage is within the physical memory budget.

Signal on low memory condition

When a session runs low on temporary object memory, there are actions it can
take to avoid running out of memory altogether. By enabling handling for the
signal #rtErrSignalAlmostOutOfMemory, an application can take appropriate
action before memory is entirely full. This signal is asynchronous, so may be
received at any time memory use is greater than the threshold the end of an in-
memory markSweep. However, if the session is executing a user action, or is in
index maintenance, the error is deferred and generated when execution returns.

For more information on handling the #rtErrSignalAlmostOutOfMemory, see the
Programming Guide for GemStone/S 64 Bit.

10.3 Epoch Garbage Collection

Privileges required: GarbageCollection.

Epoch garbage collection operates on a finite set of recent transactions: the *epoch.* Using the write set that the Stone maintains for each transaction, the Admin GcGem examines every object created during the epoch. If an object is unreferenced by the end of the epoch, it is marked as garbage and added to the list of possible dead objects.

Epoch collection is efficient because:

* It's faster and easier to perform a transitive closure on a few recent transactions than on the entire repository.

* Most objects die young, especially in applications characterized by numerous small transactions updating a few previously committed objects. An epoch of the right length can collect most garbage automatically.

Although epoch collection identifies a lot of dead objects, it cannot replace `markForCollection` because it will never detect objects created in one epoch and dereferenced in another.

By default, epoch garbage collection is disabled. You can enable it in either of two ways:

* Before you start the Stone, set the STN_EPOCH_GC_ENABLED configuration parameter to TRUE. For details about this parameter, see page 393.

* Execute the method `System Class >> enableEpochGc`. See "Methods for Epoch Garbage Collection" on page 336.

After your installation has been operating for a while, and you've had the chance to collect operational statistics, consider this: epochs of the wrong length can be notably inefficient. An in-depth discussion of the performance tradeoffs of short or long epochs starts on page 339.

To change the mark/sweep buffer size of the epoch garbage collection, adjust the GcUser configuration parameter `#epochGcPageBufferSize`. The default value is 150 pages.

Methods for Epoch Garbage Collection

Privileges required: GarbageCollection.

Class System (category Transaction Control) provides the following class methods that you can use to control epoch garbage collection:

`disableEpochGc`

Disables epoch garbage collection, and appends `STN_EPOCH_GC_ENABLED=false` to the Stone's configuration file. This method has no effect if epoch garbage collection is already disabled.

After this method is successfully executed, no further epoch garbage collection operations will be run, but an epoch garbage collection operation already in progress when this method is executed will not be interrupted.

`enableEpochGc`

Enables epoch garbage collection, and appends `STN_EPOCH_GC_ENABLED=true` to the Stone's configuration file. This method has no effect if epoch garbage collection is already enabled.

`forceEpochGc`

If epoch garbage collection is enabled, force an epoch garbage collection to run as soon as possible, regardless of the setting of the GcUser configuration parameters #epochGcTimeLimit or #epochGcTransLimit. Returns true if the epoch garbage collection was started, false if not.

If successful, this method sets the Stone cache statistic EpochForceGc to 1. Once the epoch garbage collection has started, EpochForceGc returns to 0.

If any of the following conditions exists, this method fails and returns false:

- Checkpoints are suspended.
- Another garbage collection operation is in progress.
- Unfinalized possible dead objects exist (that is, `System>>voteState` returns a non-zero value).
- The system is in restore mode.
- The Admin GC session is not running.
- Epoch garbage collection is disabled (that is, STN_EPOCH_GC_ENABLED = FALSE).
- The system is performing a reclaimAll.
- A previous forceEpochGc operation was performed and the epoch has not yet started or completed.

`clearEpochGcState`

Resets the epoch GC state. The epoch GC state keeps track of objects eligible to be marked as possible dead during the next epoch garbage collection. This method has no effect on objects already marked possible dead by previously completed epoch garbage collection operations.

Cache Statistics

Several cache statistics include information about the epoch garbage collection process. The best way to view this data is to start the statmonitor utility and then use VSD (the visual statistics display tool) to view the data. For details about statmonitor and VSD, see Appendix G.

You may find it useful to examine the following statistics:

EpochGcCount

> The number of times that the epoch garbage collection process was run by the GcGem since the GcGem was started. For a system in steady state, look for uniform periods between runs or a uniform run rate.

EpochNewKobjs   The number of new objects that were created during the last epoch.

EpochPossibleDeadKobjsThe number of possible dead objects found by the last epoch garbage collection.

EpochScannedKobjs   The number of objects scanned by the last epoch garbage collection.

For more information about these and other GemStone statistics, see "Cache Statistics" on page 229.

Information is also available by executing the method
`System class>>cacheStatistics:` for the Stone's cache slot.

Determining the Epoch Length

Epoch garbage collection's ability to identify unreferenced objects depends on the relationship between three variables:

- The rate of production R of short-lived objects.

- The lifetime L of these objects.

- The epoch length E.

The only variable under your direct control is epoch length. Although you cannot specify it explicitly, the following configuration parameters jointly control the length of an epoch:

- `#epochGcTimeLimit`
  The maximum frequency of epoch garbage collection—by default, 60 minutes (3600 seconds). We recommend setting it to at least 30 minutes.

- `#epochGcTransLimit`
  The number of transactions required to trigger epoch garbage collection—by default, 5000.

Epoch garbage collection occurs when:

```
(the time since last epoch > epochGcTimeLimit ) AND
( (transactions since last epoch > epochGcTransLimit)
```

The following discussion assumes that the epoch is determined by the minimum time interval (`#epochGcTimeLimit`) because other threshold is always met.

Figure 10.5 shows the effect of the epoch on the number of items marked. If L = E, for example, five minutes, every object's lifetime spans epochs (top part of graph), and none are collected.

When the epoch is longer than an average object's lifetime, however, some objects live and die within the same epoch, and can be marked. The lower part of Figure 10.5 shows an example where $E = 3L$ and objects are created at a uniform rate. Objects created during the first two-thirds of the interval die before its end and are marked. Only those created during the final third survive to the next epoch.

The results shown in Figure 10.5 can be expressed as:

Objects Missed by EpochGC   = $R \times L$
Objects Recovered by EpochGC   = $R(E - L)$

For example, assume $R = 1000$ objects per minute, $L = 5$ minutes, and $E = 15$ minutes. Then, for each epoch:

Objects Missed = 1000 x 5 = 5000
Objects Recovered = 1000 (15 − 5) = 10000

Figure 10.5   Effect of Collection Interval on Epoch Garbage Collection
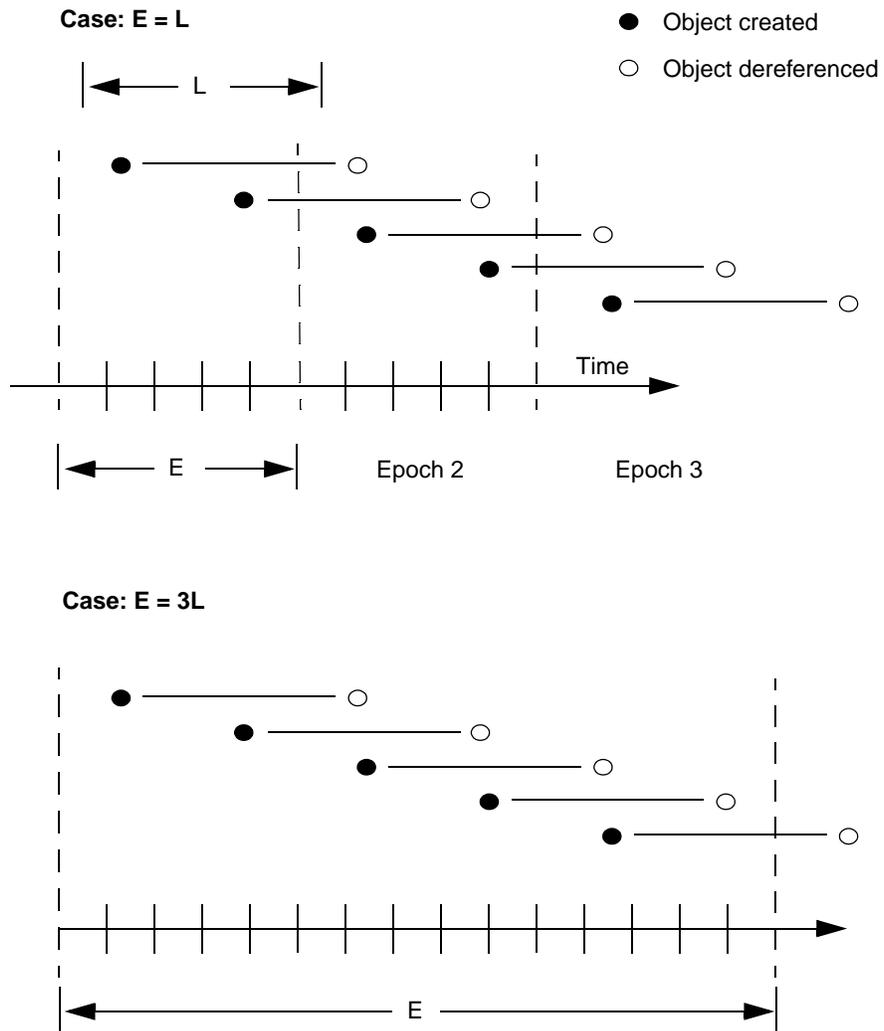
Therefore:

• Set #epochGcTimeLimit E > lifetime L of short-lived objects.

Figure 10.6 graphs the effect of the epoch. When $E = L,$ epoch garbage collection is in effect disabled—all objects survive into the next epoch; the number of unmarked yet dead objects in the repository grows at the creation rate. These dead objects remain unidentified until you run `markForCollection`.

When the epoch is extended so that $E = 3L,$ each epoch garbage collection marks those objects both created and dereferenced during that interval. This ratio causes the sawtooth pattern in the graph. If the creation rate is uniform, two-thirds of the dead objects are marked ((E L)$/E$), and one-third are missed (L/E). Consequently, the repository grows at one-third the rate of the case $E = L.$

This configuration trades short bursts of epoch garbage collection activity for:

*   moderate growth in the repository, and

*   the need to run `markForCollection` often enough to mark dead objects that survive between epochs.

Figure 10.6   Repository Growth with Short Epoch
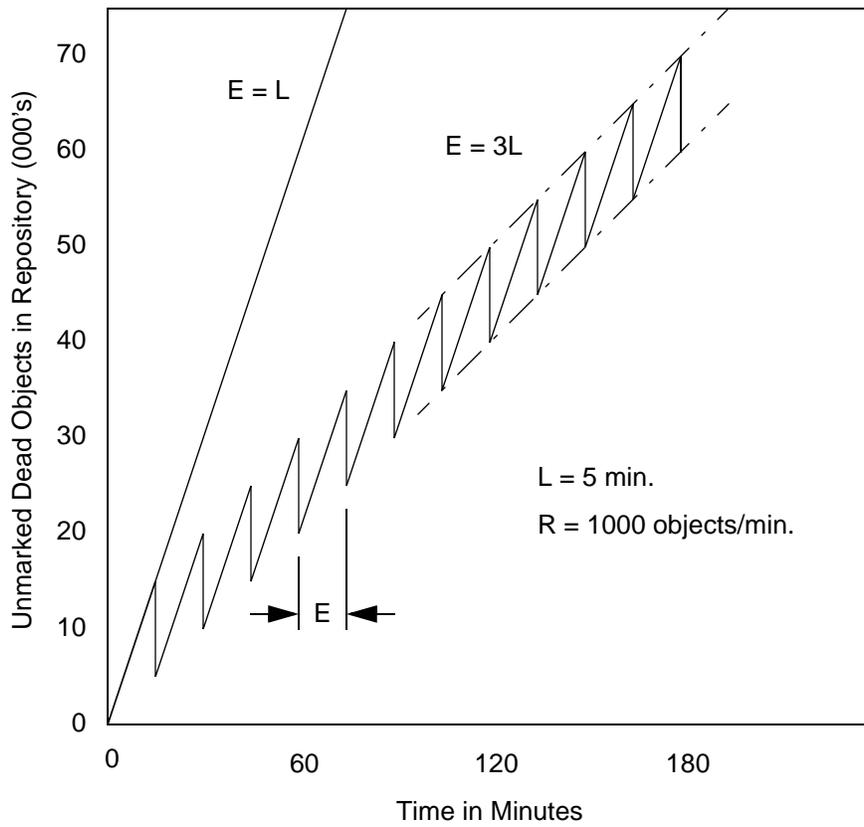
Suppose we extend the epoch to $E = 12L$. The result is shown in Figure 10.7, superimposed on part of the previous figure.

Figure 10.7   Effect of Longer Epoch on Repository Growth
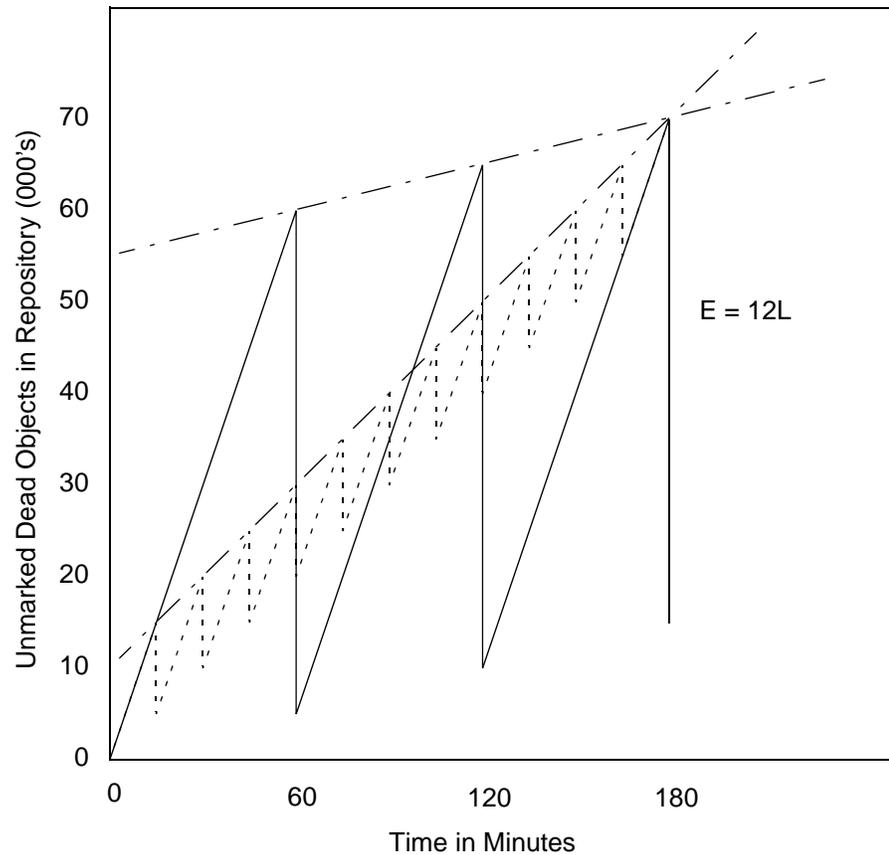
Although the longer epoch allows many more dead objects to accumulate, the growth rate of the repository is substantially less—25% of the previous case.

This configuration trades a slower growth rate for:

- a need for greater headroom on the disk, and

- longer bursts of epoch garbage collection activity.

Certain cases have needed an epoch as long as several hours, or even a day.

10.4 markForCollection

Privileges required: GarbageCollection.

The method `Repository>>markForCollection` sweeps the entire repository and marks as live all objects that can be reached through a transitive closure on the symbol lists in AllUsers, as described on page 320. The remaining objects become the list of possible dead objects.

`markForCollection` only provides a set of possible dead objects for voting and eventual reclaiming as described under "What Happens to Garbage?" on page 324. It does not reclaim the space or OOPs itself—the Reclaim GcGems do that, as described beginning on page 354.

To mark unreferenced GemStone objects for collection, log in to GemStone and send your repository the message `markForCollection`, as in the following example:

```
topaz 1> printit
SystemRepository markForCollection
%
```

If you are performing `markForCollection` on a large production repository, consider the steps described under "Reducing Impact on Other Sessions" on page 347.

When `markForCollection` completes successfully, the Gem that started it displays a message such as the one below:

```
Successful completion of markForCollection.
    2694458 live objects found.
    129654 possible dead objects, occupying approximately
11668860 bytes, may be reclaimed.
```

This method aborts the current transaction and runs `markForCollection` outside of a transaction so that the session doesn't interfere with ongoing reclamation. When `markForCollection` completes, the session reenters a transaction, if it was in one when this method was invoked.

Because it runs outside of a transaction, `markForCollection` must respond to #rtErrSignalAbort messages from the Stone. To avoid excessive interference with the marking process, consider temporarily raising the #StnSignalAbortCrBacklog internal parameter (page 403) to let `markForCollection` run for about five minutes between such signals; the precise value necessary depends on the your application's commit rate.

Only SystemUser can change the `#StnSignalAbortCrBacklog` parameter. For information about setting internal parameters, see "To Change Settings at Run Time" on page 39.

If another garbage collection task is in progress at the time you try to do `markForCollection,` this method may report a conflict error similar to that shown below. (Before issuing the error, the `markForCollection` method waits up to two minutes for the other garbage collection to finish.)

```
GemStone: Error          Nonfatal
Garbage collection aborted, reason: 'gcLock denied, vote
state 1 =
voting, session not voted: sessionId 5 pid 21336 on
pelican', conflict
code:  --- .  Garbage collection was aborted and should be
tried again later.
Error Category: [GemStone] Number: 3006 Arg Count: 1
Arg 1: gcLock denied, vote state 1 = voting, session not
voted: sessionId 5 pid 21336 on pelican
```

This concurrency conflict may be caused by one of these conditions:

- A `markGcCandidatesFromFile:` or `markForCollection` is in progress in another session.

- A previous `markGcCandidatesFromFile:` or `markForCollection` completed the mark phase, but voting on possibly dead objects has not completed.

NOTE
For voting to complete, the Admin GcGem must be running, as described on page 348. Also, long-running sessions that are idle and never abort will prevent the vote from completing.

Before issuing the error, the `markForCollection` method waits up to two minutes for the other garbage collection to finish. You can try `markForCollection` again after a few minutes or use `markForCollectionWait:` as described below.

To have the `markForCollection` wait longer than two minutes for another garbage collection to complete, use `markForCollectionWait:` *waitTimeSeconds*. To wait as long as necessary for the other garbage collection to finish, pass the argument –1. Do so with caution, however; under certain conditions, the session could appear to wait forever. To avoid this:

- Make sure that other sessions are committing or aborting, which allows voting on possible dead to complete.

- Make sure that the Admin GcGem is running to complete processing of dead objects once the vote is completed. (See "Running the Admin GcGem" on page 348.)

Reducing Impact on Other Sessions

Because `markForCollection` can make extensive use of system resources for a long time, you may need to reduce its impact on other sessions.

To increase the speed of garbage collection, you can increase the size of the mark/sweep buffer for the user running `markForCollection`—typically GcUser or DataCurator. To do so, log in as the appropriate user and evaluate:

    UserGlobals at: #mfcGcPageBufSize put: *newValue*

A value of 1000 while `markForCollection` runs is a good place to start. (The default value is 320.)

NOTE
A sigAbort causes `markForCollection` *to redo its recent work, which in the worst case can include all work done since the last sigAbort. Therefore, in an environment where the* `markForCollection` *session gets sigAborts, increasing the size of the mark/sweep buffer can degrade session response time to sigAborts, leading to commit record backlog problems and potential lostOTRoot failures of the* `markForCollection` *session, as well as significantly degrading* `markForCollection` *performance. In some cases,* `markForCollection` *effectively hangs for as long as the process continues to get sigAborts.*

You'll need to experiment to determine the best value for `mfcGcPageBufSize`, given your operational profile, but values above 6000 are seldom required and usually detrimental.

Additional impact on other sessions may occur after the `markForCollection` has completed because the results may cause an increase in the number of pages that are candidates for reclaiming.

Scheduling markForCollection

To invoke `markForCollection` using the **cron** facility, create a three-line script file similar to the Topaz example on page 345 by entering everything except the

prompt. Use this script as standard input to **topaz**, and redirect the standard output to another file:

topaz < *scriptName* **>** *logName*

Make sure that $GEMSTONE and any other required environment variables are defined during the **cron** job. Either create a .topazini file for a user who has GarbageCollection privilege, or insert those login settings at the beginning of the script. For information about using **cron**, refer to your operating system documentation.

10.5 Running the Admin GcGem

Privileges required: GarbageCollection

The Admin GcGem must be running to complete processing of dead objects following a markForCollection or markGcCandidatesFromFile: operation. If the Admin GcGem is not running following one of these operations, the garbage collection process cannot complete, and garbage can build up in your system.

Before you can start the Admin GcGem, you must configure it to run. You can do this either by editing the configuration file (by default, system.conf) before starting the Stone or by using runtime methods to set the configuration. If you set the configuration during runtime, your changes are lost when the Stone repository monitor is subsequently restarted. For permanent changes, edit the configuration file.

Editing the Configuration File

The configuration parameter STN_ADMIN_GC_SESSION_ENABLED (page 390) specifies whether the Admin GcGem is started by the Stone at startup time.

Configuring the Admin GcGem at Run Time

Before taking any action that requires the presence or absence of the Admin GcGem, you should verify whether the Admin GcGem is configured to run:

    System configurationAt: #StnAdminGcSessionEnabled

If this method returns 1, the Admin GcGem is configured to run. If not, configure the Admin GcGem by executing:

    System configurationAt: #StnAdminGcSessionEnabled put: 1.

Configuring the Admin GcGem to be enabled does not start it; starting the Admin GcGem requires a separate step.

Starting the Admin GcGem

To start the Admin GcGem (which you have already configured to run):

```
System startAdminGcSession
```

Alternatively, you can start the Admin GcGem together with all Reclaim GcGem sessions that are configured to run:

```
System startAllGcSessions
```

Both `startAdminGcSession` and `startAllGcSessions` initiate the start of the GcGems, and return immediately. The GcGems may take longer to actually initialize and start up.

To wait a given period of time for the Admin GcGem and all Reclaim GcGems to start up:

```
System waitForAllGcGemsToStartForUpToSeconds: anInt
```

This method starts all the GcGems that are configured, and waits for the specified number of seconds. If all the GcGems have not started up within that time, the method returns false. However, this does not necessarily mean that any GcGems have failed to start; on a slow system with a short timeout, this method may return False but all GcGems eventually start correctly.

To verify that the Admin GcGem is running:

```
System adminGcGemSessionId
```

This returns a SmallInteger representing the session ID of the Admin GcGem, or 0 if the Admin GcGem is not running.

To verify that the Admin GcGem is running, and that each extent has a Reclaim GcGem started:

```
System hasMissingGcGems
```

This returns false if the Admin GcGem is running and each extent has been assigned a Reclaim GcGem.

Stopping the Admin GcGem

To stop the Admin GcGem:

```
System stopAdminGcSession
```

To configure the Admin GcGem to not run:

```
System configurationAt: #StnAdminGcSessionEnabled put: 0.
```

This also stops the Admin GcGem, if it is running.

To stop the Admin GcGem and any Reclaim GcGem sessions that are running, use:

```
System stopAllGcSessions
```

10.6 The FDC/MGC Process

As discussed in the previous section, `markForCollection` combines a full sweep of all objects in the repository and marking of each possible dead object in a single operation. In a large production system, this can have a significant effect on performance. To lessen this impact, you can perform garbage collection as a two-step process: `findDisconnectedObjectsAndWriteToFile:` (FDC) and `markGcCandidatesFromFile:` (MGC). These two steps together perform the same function as running `markForCollection`.

In this two-step process, the possibly dead objects are first written to a file, thus allowing you to run the FDC in a copy of the repository rather than in the production system. The OOPs of the possibly dead objects are then transferred to the production system, where they are marked as dead and subsequently garbage-collected.

Running in a copy of the repository avoids the performance impact of this processing on the production repository, and permits operations on the repository that would not be possible during a long-running repository sweep; for example, the production repository can be shut down.

* If you choose to run garbage collection in the production system rather than in a copy of the repository, `markForCollection` would be a better option.

For offline FDC/MGC to be effective, Epoch garbage collection must be disabled on the production repository during the period from the time the production copy is made, until the markGcCandidates completes. If the possibly dead objects that are passed into the MGC operation contain objects that have already been garbage collected and reused, performance degrades to the point of uselessness. Epoch garbage collection is disabled by default.

Step 1. Prepare for FDC.

Performance of FDC is much faster if there are no shadowed objects. Before starting the FDC/MGC process on the production server, run enough Reclaim

GcGems (page 354) to process all shadow objects, and make sure the commit record backlog is low.

FDC produces a large file of encoded OOPs; the size of the file (in bytes) is approximately four times the number of dead objects. On the server that will run the backup, ensure that there is enough space for the resulting file, and that the filename you will use does not already exist.

Step 2. Create a copy of the production repository.

Make a backup of your production repository. You may either make an online extent file backup (page 279), a Smalltalk full backup (page 284), or an offline extent file backup (page 309).

Restore the backup into another location.   This is the repository that will run the FDC, while your production repository continues to operate normally.

Step 3. Run `findDisconnectedObjectsAndWriteToFile:`....

On the running backup repository, execute the FDC method:

```
SystemRepository
  findDisconnectedObjectsAndWriteToFile: filename.txt
  pageBufferSize: 640
  saveToRepository: true
```

This method does the following:

- Runs code similar to the `markForCollection` sweep phase on the backup repository.

- Stores the resulting list of candidate dead objects to the named file (*filename.txt*). The file is created in the current working directory, and contains the encoded OOPs for all of the candidate dead objects.

- If `saveToRepository:` is True, stores the list of encoded OOPs to an internal array as well. Set this argument to True if you want to be able to subsequently examine and analyze the results of the FDC operation; it is not needed as part of the garbage collection process.

If `saveToRepository:` is True, you can subsequently use the array of dead objects to recreate the FDC file in the event that the file is deleted or lost. See the following discussion, "If You Need to Recreate the FDC File."

Also note that a larger `pageBufferSize` may improve performance when you run FDC offline in a backup repository, as illustrated here.

Step 4. At this point, you can shut down the backup repository; it is no longer needed for the MGC/FDC process.

Step 5. Run markGcCandidatesFromFile: (page 353) on the production system.

If You Need to Recreate the FDC File

If your FDC file should inadvertently be deleted or become lost, you may still be able to recreate the FDC file for subsequent use by markGcCandidatesFromFile: (MGC) — provided that saveToRepository: was True when you ran FDC.

You can execute this method to write the array of candidate dead objects found by the last FDC operation (for which saveToRepository: was True) to a file:

    SystemRepository writeFdcArrayToFile: *aFileNameString*

NOTE
Before running this method, ensure that you have sufficient disk space to hold the entire file, whose size in bytes will be approximately four times the size of the array.

This method expects Globals at: #FdcResults to contain the array of candidate dead objects, in order and sorted by OOP. You must specify the file as a String, using the full path and filename of a file that does not yet exist.

The method returns true if successful, false if the entire file could not be written, or nil if the results of the last FDC could not be found.

Fast FDC

You can also run FDC in an alternate mode, which runs as quickly as possible, without regard to the impact on system resources. This mode assumes it is the only process running and can use as much of the cache as it needs.

To run fast FDC, use the following:

```
Repository findDisconnectedObjectsAndWriteToFile: filename.txt
   pageBufferSize: pagebuf
   saveToRepository: saveToRep
   numCacheWarmers: numWarmers
```

When *numWarmers* is greater than zero, the fast FDC algorithm is used and garbage collection cache warmer gems are automatically started. If *numWarmers* is set to zero, then the regular FDC algorithm is used.

In fast FDC, Garbage Collection (GC) cache warmers are started during the FDC run. These special sessions do not have a view of the repository; they merely read data pages into the shared page cache before they are needed by the FDC gem. GC cache warmers are automatically stopped when the FDC gem logs out. Note that these GC cache warmers are distinct from Object table cache warmers.

Additional GC cache warmer gems may be started once the FDC has begun, by executing:

```
System _startGcCacheWarmer
```

While the fast FDC process will require tuning for optimal performance, the following are suggested as starting points for a 100GB repository:

- page Buffer size of 2000 to 5000.

- 10 GC cache warmer gems

- 2-4 free frame page servers

- SPC Object table cache warming completed (see the utility command "startcachewarmer" on page 419).

- A disk architecture optimizing fast sequential reads with read ahead.

Run markGcCandidatesFromFile:

Privileges required: GarbageCollection.

`markGcCandidatesFromFile:` (MGC) performs an optimized linear sweep of the repository to identify any objects in the FDC output file that still have references. If the only references to candidate objects are from other candidates, the objects are marked for subsequent reclamation.

The MGC operation scans all *non-candidate* objects to ensure that there are no references to candidate objects. If there are no such references, the MGC operation is complete. If, however, there are any references to candidate objects, the MGC operation performs a transitive closure on all *former candidate* objects to identify any other candidate objects that cannot be collected.

To minimize the impact on performance, run the MGC operation at a time when the load on the production repository is low, such as during off-hours.

On the production system, execute:

```
SystemRepository markGcCandidatesFromFile: aFileNameString
```

where *aFileNameString* is a String representing the full path to the file of encoded OOPs that was created during the FDC (page 351, Step 3). Make sure that this file is available from the production location.

If another garbage collection (`markForCollection`) is in progress at the time you try to do `markGcCandidatesFromFile:`, or if voting has not completed, it may report a conflict error similar to that shown below. Try `markGcCandidatesFromFile:` again after a few minutes.

```
The Garbage Collection process detected a concurrency
conflict, reason:
#Garbage collection in progress by another session, try
again later.
```

Recall that all marking only provides a set of possible dead objects for voting and eventual reclaiming, as described under "What Happens to Garbage?" on page 324. Marking does not by itself reclaim space or identifiers—the Reclaim GcGems do that, as described beginning on page 354.

As mentioned elsewhere in this chapter, the Admin GcGem must be running to complete processing of dead objects following an MGC operation. For details, see "Running the Admin GcGem" on page 348.

In some cases, there could be irrelevant errors that would prevent MGC from completing. To override such errors, execute the following method:

```
SystemRepository markGcCandidatesFromFile: aFileNameString
    forceOnError: aBoolean
```

This method is virtually identical to `markGcCandidatesFromFile:`, except that if *aBoolean* is true, the MGC will run even if the given file contains objects that fail validation, or there are references from live objects to some objects in the candidate collection. The live objects in the candidate collection are not marked as dead.

10.7 Reclaiming Pages

When a Reclaim GcGem is running, it examines pages marked reclaimable because they contain either dead or shadow objects. It also reclaims fragments of space left by transactions that did not fill an entire page.

Reclaimed space does not appear as free space in the repository until other sessions have committed or aborted all transactions concurrent with the reclaim transaction.

Two actions can hasten this moment:

- If your session is the only one logged in (other than GcGems), you can invoke page reclamation directly. See the following discussion, "Configuring and Starting the Reclaim GcGems."

- If other users are logged in, you can determine which sessions are viewing the oldest commit record, thereby impeding reclamation. See the discussion, "To Identify Sessions Holding Up Page Reclamation," on page 360.

Configuring and Starting the Reclaim GcGems

Privileges required: GarbageCollection

Before you can start one or more Reclaim GcGems, you must configure the repository to run the desired number of GcGems. You can do this either by editing the configuration file (by default, `system.conf`) before starting the Stone or by using runtime methods to set the configuration. If you set the configuration during runtime, your changes are lost when the Stone repository monitor is subsequently restarted. For permanent changes, edit the configuration file.

Editing the Configuration File

The configuration parameter STN_NUM_GC_RECLAIM_SESSIONS (page 400) specifies the number of Reclaim GcGems that are started by the Stone at startup time. You may not configure more Reclaim GcGems than the number of extents in the repository, as specified in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES (page 378). If you specify a value larger than the number of extents, one GC reclaim will be started for each extent.

Configuring Reclaim GcGems at Runtime

Before taking any action that requires the presence or absence of Reclaim GcGems, you should verify the number of Reclaim GcGems for which your repository is currently configured:

```
System configurationAt: #StnNumGcReclaimSessions
```

This method returns the number of Reclaim GcGems that are currently configured to run. These Reclaim GcGems may or may not be running.

When there are a high number of pages needing to be reclaimed, you might choose to shut down the single Reclaim GcGem during off-hours, and then start a larger number of Reclaim GcGems.

To update the number of Reclaim GcGems that are configured to run:

```
System configurationAt: #StnNumGcReclaimSessions put: N.
```

where *N* is the maximum number of reclaim GcGems that you intend to run. This method does not start the Reclaim GcGems.

To configure your system for the maximum number of Reclaim GcGems (one Reclaim GcGem per extent):

```
System configurationAt: #StnNumGcReclaimSessions put:
   SystemRepository numberOfExtents.
System startAllReclaimGcSessions.
```

Since the GcGems place some load on heavily loaded systems (reclaimed pages must be committed), the performance impact of so many Reclaim GcGems may offset any potential advantage.   Even when run during off-hours, a large number of Reclaim GcGems may cause commit bottlenecks for each other.

At least one Reclaim GcGem should be running at all times. In general, we recommend running one Reclaim GcGem for between 5 and 10 extents. You may need to experiment to find the correct balance for your system.

Configuring a Reclaim GcGem to be enabled does not start it; starting the Reclaim GcGem requires a separate step.

Starting Reclaim GcGems

To start all Reclaim GcGems that you have configured to run, execute one of the following methods:

```
System startAllReclaimGcSessions
```

This method starts the number of Reclaim GcGems that you have configured to run, dividing the extents evenly among them.

```
System startAllGcSessions
```

This method is similar to `startAllReclaimGcSessions`, but also starts the Admin GcGem.

Alternatively, you can explicitly assign Reclaim GcGems to a contiguous list of extents, as described in the next section, "Running Reclaim GcGems on a Range of Extents."

All of these methods initiate the start of the GcGems, and return immediately. However, the GcGems may take longer to actually initialize and start up.

To wait a given period of time for all the GcGems (Reclaim and Admin) to start up:

```
System waitForAllGcGemsToStartForUpToSeconds: anInt
```

This method starts all the GcGems that are configured, and waits for the specified number of seconds. If all the GcGems have not started up within that time, the method returns false. However, this does not necessarily mean that any GcGems have failed to start; on a slow system with a short timeout, this method may return False but all GcGems eventually start correctly.

Running Reclaim GcGems on a Range of Extents

A Reclaim GcGem can reclaim from a contiguous list of extents. You can control the allocation of Reclaim GcGems to extents using the method:

```
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: startExtent to:
endExtent.
```

For example, if there are four extents in the repository, and you have configured to run two Reclaim GcGems, to start one Reclaim GcGem on the first extent, and the other on the other three extents, the code would look like this:

```
topaz 1> printit
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: 1 to: 1.
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: 2 to: 4.
%
true
topaz 1> printit
System currentGcReclaimSessionsByExtent
%
an Array
   #1 3
   #2 6
   #3 6
   #4 6
```

As shown here, the method `currentGcReclaimSessionsByExtent` returns an array whose size is the number of extents in the repository (in this example, four). The element at each index is the session ID of the Reclaim GcGem for that extent.

Similarly, for a repository with 20 extents, you could set up four Reclaim GcGems as follows:

```
topaz 1> printit
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: 1 to: 5.
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: 6 to: 10.
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: 11 to: 15.
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: 16 to: 20.
%
true
```

Running Reclaim GcGems on Remote Nodes

You can configure Reclaim GcGems to run on remote nodes (nodes other than the one the Stone is running on). To do this, use the following method:

```
System Class >> startReclaimGemForExtentRange: startExtent
to: endExtent onHost: hostNameOrIpAddress
```

For example, using the above example if the Reclaim GcGems should be run on a different node, the code might look as follows:

```
topaz 1> printit
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: 1 to: 1 onHost:
'denile'.
System startReclaimGemForExtentRange: 2 to: 4 onHost:
'denile'.
%
true
topaz 1> printit
System currentGcReclaimSessionsByExtent
%
an Array
  #1 3
  #2 6
  #3 6
  #4 6
```

This code starts a remote shared page cache and page server on the remote machine, if they do not already exist. A GemStone NetLDI must be running on the remote node (for details, see page 68). Log files are written to the home directory of the user who owns the processes.

When the Stone is run on a multi-homed host (that is, a host with more than one IP address), you can use the following method to specify a `stoneHost:` argument:

```
System Class >> startReclaimGemForExtentRange: startExtent
to: endExtent onHost: hostNameOrIpAddress stoneHost:
stoneHostNameOrIpAddress
```

This method allows the remote Reclaim GcGem sessions to communicate with the Stone on a separate network connection.

Verify the Reclaim GcGem Configuration

To verify if Reclaim GcGems are running, use one of the following methods:

```
System reclaimGcSessionCount
```

This returns the total number of Reclaim GcGems that are running.

```
System currentGcReclaimSessionsByExtent
```

This returns an array whose size is the number of extents in the repository. The element at each index in the array is the session ID of the Reclaim GcGem for that extent. (A zero indicates that there is no Reclaim GcGem for the corresponding extent.)

To ensure that all extents have Reclaim GcGems:

```
System numberOfExtentsWithoutGC
```

This returns the number of extents that will not have garbage collection performed, because there is no Reclaim GcGem associated with that extent.

```
System numberOfExtentRangesWithoutGC
```

This returns the minimum number of additional Reclaim GcGems that would need to be started in order to have all extents covered by a Reclaim GcGem.

To ensure that all extents have Reclaim GcGems, and that the Admin GcGem is running:

```
System hasMissingGcGems
```

Stopping the Reclaim GcGems

To stop all Reclaim GcGems that are currently running:

```
System stopAllReclaimGcSessions
```

To stop all Reclaim and Admin GcGems that are running:

```
System stopAllGcSessions
```

To configure Reclaim GcGems to not run:

```
System configurationAt: #StnNumGcReclaimSessions put: 0.
```

This also stops all Reclaim GcGems, if they are running.

To Identify Sessions Holding Up Page Reclamation

Privileges required: SessionAccess.

Reclaiming pages can proceed only up to those pages currently providing some session's transaction view of the repository—that is, only up to the oldest commit record. When other sessions are logged in, reclamation stops at that point until all sessions using that commit record either commit or abort their transaction.

It can be helpful to identify which sessions are holding on to the oldest commit record. The method `System class>>sessionsReferencingOldestCr` returns an array of session IDs, which can be mapped to GemStone logins through `System class>>currentSessionNames` or `System class>>descriptionOfSession:`*aSessionId*. For example:

```
topaz 1> printit
System sessionsReferencingOldestCr
%
an Array
  #1 5

topaz 1> printit
System currentSessionNames
%
session number: 2     UserId: GcUser
session number: 3     UserId: GcUser
session number: 4     UserId: SymbolUser
session number: 5     UserId: DataCurator
session number: 6     UserId: DataCurator
```

The method `descriptionOfSession:` is particularly useful in that it returns an array of descriptive information. The second element is the operating system process ID (pid), and the third element is the name of the node on which the process is running. For details, see the comment in the image.

To Tune Reclamation

Parameters to control page reclamation are stored in GcUser's UserProfile. To modify them, log in as GcUser (GcUser's default password is the same as DataCurator's or SystemUser's default password) and send the message `at:` *aKey* `put:` *aValue* to UserGlobals. For example, to set `#reclaimMinPages` to 100:

```
topaz> set user GcUser password thePassword
login
topaz 1> printit
UserGlobals at: #reclaimMinPages put: 100.
System commitTransaction
%
```

Changes to GcUser's configuration parameters are not soon detected while the Admin GcGem is executing a long-running operation, such as the write set union sweep.

Reclaim Configuration Parameters

The following configuration parameters are available to control the reclaim task, and are stored in GcUser's UserGlobals. For an example of how to change these parameters, see the preceding section.

`#reclaimSleepTime`	The maximum amount of time in seconds that the process will sleep when no work is scheduled. Must be ≥ 1; the default is 10 seconds, maximum 3600.
`#sleepTimeBetweenReclaimMs`	
	The minimum amount of time in milliseconds that the process will sleep between reclaims, even when work is scheduled. The default is 0 milliseconds, maximum 3600000.
`#reclaimMinPages`	The minimum number of pages to process in a single reclaim operation (reclaiming does not start until this threshold is reached). Must be ≥ 1; the default is 30 pages, maximum is SmallInteger maximumValue.
`#reclaimDeadEnabled`	A Boolean indicating whether or not to reclaim dead objects; the default is True.
`#objsMovedPerCommitThreshold`	
	The approximate maximum number of live objects to move in a reclaim transaction. Must be ≥ 100; the

                                    default is 20000, maximum is SmallInteger
                                    maximumValue.

`#maxTransactionDuration`
                                    The maximum length (in seconds) of a GcGem
                                    transaction. The transaction will be committed once
                                    this time is exceeded. Must be ≥ 10; the default is 300,
                                    maximum is SmallInteger maximumValue.

`#deadObjsReclaimedCommitThreshold`
                                    The maximum number of dead objects to reclaim in a
                                    single transaction, including dead objects reclaimed
                                    when reclaiming shadow pages. The default is 20000.

`#dataPageBufferSize`
                                    The size in pages of the private data page buffer.
                                    Must be ≥ 10; the default is 64, maximum 1280.

`#verboseLogging`   Determines if long explicit messages are printed to
                                    the GcGem log files. The default is False.

`#autoRefreshGcGemConfig`
                                    Determines whether the GcGem re-reads its
                                    configuration settings from UserGlobals at the end of
                                    each transaction. The default is True.

`#reclaimDeadShadowPageThreshold`
                                    The shadow page threshold at which dead objects are
                                    reclaimed. If there are fewer than this number of
                                    shadow pages to reclaim, then dead objects are also
                                    reclaimed. The default is 1000, maximum is
                                    SmallInteger maximumValue.

`#deferReclaimCacheDirtyThreshold`
                                    If the primary shared page cache (the shared cache on
                                    the stone's machine) is more than this percentage
                                    dirty, then reclaim gems will wait until the cache is
                                    less than 5% below this threshold before resuming
                                    reclaims. The default is 75%.

`#enableDebugging`   Activates extra consistency checks in the GcGem used
                                    for debugging. The default is False.

The reclaim gem will commit as soon as any one of the following conditions is met:

• Number of live objects moved exceeds `#objsMovedPerCommitThreshold`.

- Duration of the transaction exceeds `#maxTransactionDuration`.

- Number of dead objects reclaimed exceeds
  `#deadObjsReclaimedCommitThreshold`.

Cache Statistics

The cache statistics include information about the progress of the reclamation process. The best way to view this data is to start the statmonitor utility and then use VSD (the visual statistics display tool) to view the data. For details about statmonitor and VSD, see Appendix G.

You may find it useful to examine the following statistics:

DeadNotReclaimedKobjs

> The number of objects known to be dead but not yet reclaimed. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

DeadObjsReclaimedCount

> The total number of dead objects reclaimed since the Stone repository monitor process was last started.

GcVoteState   Indicates the current phase of garbage collection: Gems voting, voting complete, Possible Dead Write-Set Union Sweep (PDWSUS) in progress, or PDWSUS complete.

PagesNeedReclaimSize

> The amount of work waiting for the reclaim task.

PossibleDeadKobjs   The number of objects marked as dereferenced but not yet declared to be dead. (Units: 1000s of objects.)

ReclaimCount   The number of times the page scavenge (reclamation) process has been run.

ReclaimedPagesCount The number of scavenged pages.

For more information about these and other GemStone statistics, see "Cache Statistics" on page 229.

Information is also available by executing the method
`System class>>cacheStatistics:` for the Stone's cache slot.

To Remove References to Large Objects

If you know that you have large objects that are no longer needed, another way to free space is to explicitly remove references to them. To remove such objects, you

must first identify them. Then you can find all references to them and remove those references.

To Identify Large Objects in the Repository

Ensure that the Topaz display level is sufficient to show the desired information. Use the Topaz **level** command to raise the level to at least 1:

```
topaz 1> level 1
```

The next expression causes GemStone to look through the symbol list for each user in AllUsers and gather information on any named objects larger than the SmallInteger *aSize*:

```
topaz 1> printit
AllUsers findObjectsLargerThan: aSize limit: aSmallInt
%
```

It returns an Array of up to *aSmallInt* elements, each of the form:

```
#[ #[ aUserId, aKey, anObject ]]
```

where *anObject* is an object larger than *aSize* defined in the symbol list of *aUserId*, and *aKey* is the Symbol associated with that object.

If any references to anObject reside in Segments for which you do not have read authorization, the last element of the result is the String 'Read Authorization Error encountered'.

If that Array does not provide enough information to track down large repository objects, you can send the same message to System instead:

```
topaz 1> printit
System findObjectsLargerThan: aSize limit: aSmallInt
%
```

NOTE
This method may take considerable time to complete.

This returns an Array of all objects in the repository larger than the SmallInteger *aSize*, whether they are named in a user's symbol list or not. As above, the Array is limited to a maximum of *aSmallInt* elements.

Again, if any references to anObject reside in Segments for which you do not have read authorization, the last element of the result is the String 'Read Authorization Error encountered'.

To Search for References to an Object

You can search the repository for multiple references to an object by sending the following message:

```
topaz 1> printit
anObject findReferencesWithLimit: aSmallInt
%
```

This returns an Array of objects in the repository that reference *anObject*. If an object contains multiple references to *anObject*, that object will appear only once in the resulting Array. The Array is limited to a maximum of *aSmallInt* elements.

The resulting Array contains only those references that reside within Segments for which you have read authorization. If any references to *anObject* reside in Segments for which you do not have read authorization, the last element of the result is the String 'Read Authorization Error encountered'.

You may find this method helpful in locating all instances of a class:

```
topaz 1> printit
aClassObject findReferencesWithLimit: aSmallInt
%
```

> *NOTE*
> *The method* findReferencesWithLimit: *may take considerable time to complete. In addition, the resulting Array may consume a large amount of disk space.*

To limit the disk space required for the result, send the message *anObject* findReferences, which limits the result to a maximum size of 20 elements.

To Remove References to an Object

Complete the process by replacing references to the unneeded object with nil. This allows the object to be removed during normal garbage collection. Dereferencing objects must be done through a Smalltalk program.

GemStone Configuration Options

A GemStone/S 64 Bit configuration file is a file containing information that, when read at startup time, can control the configuration, behavior, and functionality of the system at run time. Some of these configuration settings can be modified dynamically by using GemStone Smalltalk to change their internal representation.

The Stone, Gem, and linked applications (collectively, the repository executables) are able to read two different types of configuration files: system-wide configuration files and executable-dependent configuration files.

- **System-wide configuration files** allow the GemStone system administrator to set options pertaining to all GemStone executables on a system- or network-wide basis. This file is required for a Stone to start.

  System-wide configuration files are located by a GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF environment variable.

- **Executable-dependent configuration files** can be used by individual users to control their own running copy of the GemStone system. Options contained in executable-dependent configuration files override the options specified in a system-wide configuration file.

  Executable-dependent configuration files are located by a GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF environment variable.

These environment variables can be set in the usual way. For example:

$ **GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF=$HOME/myFile.conf**
$ **export GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF**

Both GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF and GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF can be defined to point to either a file or a directory.

In addition, the GemStone executables **startstone, pageaudit, topaz,** and **gemsetup** accept command line arguments to point to configuration files:

• The -**z** option sets the system configuration file.

• The -**e** option sets the executable-dependent configuration file.

A.1 How GemStone Uses Configuration Files

At start-up time, GemStone repository executables attempt to find and read both a system-wide and an executable-dependent configuration file, searching for these files in the following manner.

Search for a System-Wide Configuration File

GemStone repository executables begin by attempting to find a system-wide configuration file.

1. As shown in Figure A.1, GemStone first checks to see if there is an environment variable defined for GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF.

2. If GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF is *not* defined, GemStone looks for a file named *hostName*.conf in $GEMSTONE/data and uses that file. *hostName* must match the results of executing the hostname command on the machine on which the executables are running.

3. If no such file exists, it looks for a file named system.conf in $GEMSTONE/data and uses that.

4. If neither of those files exist, the system defaults are used, unless the executable is Stone, in which case an error is generated.

If GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF *is* defined, GemStone checks to see if it points to a directory.

5. If GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF points to a directory, GemStone looks for a file named *hostName*.conf in that directory. If it finds such a file, it uses it. *hostName* must match the results of executing the hostname command on the

machine on which the executables are running. If no *hostName*.conf is found, it looks in that directory for a file named system.conf and uses that. If neither of those files exist, the system defaults are used, unless the executable is Stone, in which case an error is generated.

- If the GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF environment variable points to a file instead of a directory, GemStone just uses that file.

Within each file, if an option is listed more than once, then the value it is given the last time it is specified is used as its true value at executable run time. This rule also applies between the two types of configuration files. If the same option is given a value in both the system-wide and executable-dependent configuration files, the value in the executable-dependent configuration file overrides the system-wide configuration file's value.

Figure A.1   Search Path for a System-Wide Configuration File

Is there a definition for GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF?

yes   no

Is GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF
a directory?

Is there a file named *hostName*.conf
in the $GEMSTONE/data directory?

yes   no   yes   no

Is there a
hostName.conf file
in that directory?

Is
GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF
a file?

Use it

Is there a file named
system.conf in the
$GEMSTONE/data
directory?

yes   no   yes   no

Use it

Is there a
system.conf
file in that directory?

Use it

Error, if a Stone.
Else, use defaults.

Use it

Error, if a Stone.
Else, use defaults.

yes   no

Use it

Error, if a Stone.
Else, use defaults.

Search for an Executable Configuration File

Ordinarily, GemStone repository executables next try to find an executable-dependent configuration file. (The exception is a Stone repository monitor that failed to find its system-wide configuration file—it exits with an error.)

1. As shown in Figure A.2, GemStone begins by checking to see if there is an environment variable defined for GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF.

2. If GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF is not defined, GemStone tries to find a file called *exeName*.conf in the current working directory. (For information about the naming conventions, see "Naming Executable Configuration Files" on page 373.)

3. If it succeeds at finding such file, it uses that file. If such a file does not exist, it generates a warning and relies solely on the system-wide configuration file for configuration parameters.

Figure A.2   Search Path for an Executable-Dependent Configuration File

Is there a definition for GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF?

yes   no

Is GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF a directory?   Is there a file named *exeName*.conf in the current directory?

yes   no   yes   no

Does that directory contain a file named *exeName*.conf?   Is GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF a file?   Use it   Warning

yes   no   yes   no

Use it   Warning   Use it   Warning
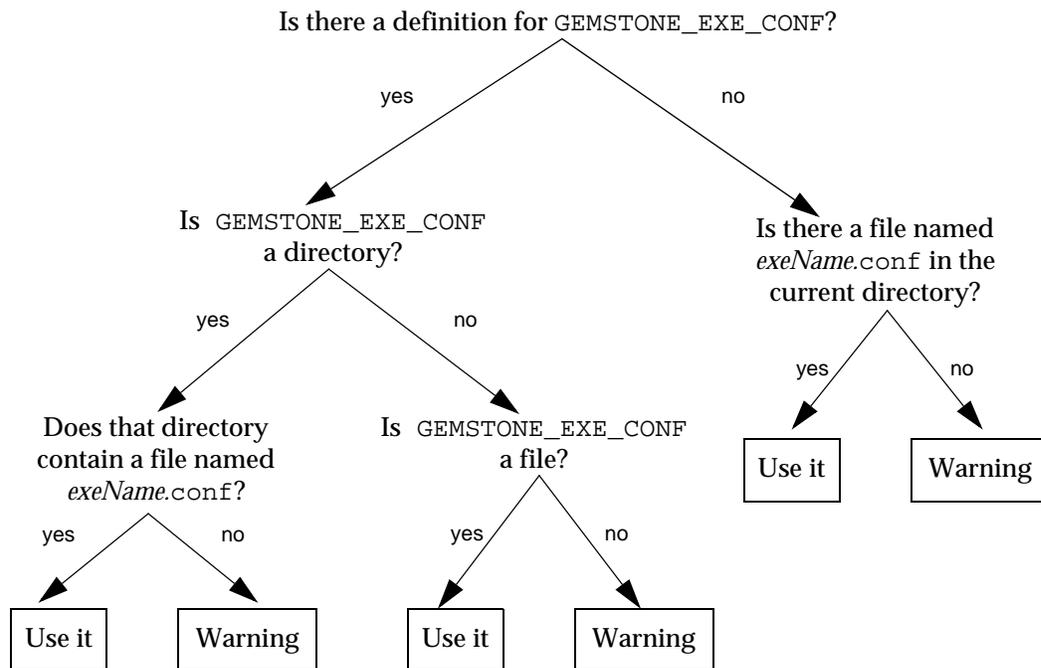
If GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF *is* defined, GemStone first looks to see if it points to a directory.

- If GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF points to a directory, GemStone looks for a file named *exeName*.conf in that directory. If such a file exists, it uses it; if not, a warning is generated and GemStone relies on the system-wide configuration file for configuration parameters.

- If GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF points to a file, rather than to a directory, GemStone simply uses that file.

- If GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF points to a directory or file that doesn't exist, a warning is generated and GemStone defaults to using the system-wide configuration file for configuration parameters.

Creating or Using a System Configuration File

If you are satisfied with the standard options and the defaults, the simplest thing to do is to just use the configuration file provided in `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf`. You can either copy this file and set the GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF environment variable to point to your new file, or you can do nothing and let GemStone use `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf` itself.

Creating an Executable Configuration File

There are two ways to create a configuration file for a specific executable:

- You can copy the entire system-wide configuration file to a new file, name it appropriately, and change selected parameters.

- You can create a new file, give it an appropriate name, and include only those parameters that you want to differ from the default.

To make sure that GemStone is able to find and use your executable-dependent configuration file, you can set the GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF environment variable to point to your file. GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF can be either a file name or a directory name. If you set the environment variable to a directory name, be sure to name the configuration file *exeName*.conf so GemStone can find it at start up. (Information about the naming conventions for configuration files is just ahead.)

If you don't set the GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF environment variable, GemStone looks for a file named *exeName*.conf in the current working directory at startup. If

it doesn't find one, it uses the configuration parameters set in the system-wide configuration file, or it uses the system defaults.

> *NOTE*
> *Make sure your executable-dependent file is both readable and writable*
> *by the Stone process, which will update options by writing to it if you*
> *make certain configuration changes at run time.*

Naming Executable Configuration Files

The default name of an executable configuration file generally is determined from the name of the executable itself.

Gems

Stand-alone (RPC) Gems look for a file named `gem.conf` in the current working directory unless GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF is defined. The working directory by default is the user's home directory, unless the `gemnetobject` script has been customized. The file `$GEMSTONE/sys/gemnetobject` is a script that a NetLDI invokes to start a GemStone session process. This script can be edited to define the name of the Gem to execute, the directory where the Gem resides, and the GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF and GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF environment variables.

GcGems

It is sometimes useful to change GcGem parameters in a configuration file specific to the GcGems, so that the changes remain in effect if the system is stopped and restarted. To do so:

Step 1. Copy $GEMSTONE`/data/system.conf`.

Step 2. Edit the copy, setting the values you want.

Step 3. Save your changes, renaming the file `gcgem.conf`, `admingcgem.conf`, or `reclaimgcgem.conf`, depending on whether the new configuration file is for all GcGems, the Admin GcGem, or Reclaim GcGems. Place the file in GemStone's `sys` directory.

Step 4. Make a copy of the script $GEMSTONE`/sys/rungcgem.` and name the copy $GEMSTONE`/sys/myrungcgem.`

Step 5. Edit `myrungcgem` to specify the customized configuration file. For example, to use a Reclaim GcGem configuration file named `$GEMSTONE/sys/reclaimgcgem.conf`, locate the lines:

```
if [ "$1" = "reclaimgcgem" ]; then
  exeConfig=""  # path for custom GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF for
  reclaimgc gems
```

and change them as follows:

```
if [ "$1" = "reclaimgcgem" ]; then
  exeConfig="$GEMSTONE/sys/reclaimgcgem.conf"  # path
  for custom GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF for reclaimgc gems
```

Step 6. Edit the file `$GEMSTONE/sys/services.dat`. Comment out the existing line:

```
rungcgem $GEMSTONE/sys/rungcgem
```

and add an entry specifying the new script to be executed for the `rungcgem` service.

```
#rungcgem$GEMSTONE/sys/rungcgem
rungcgem $GEMSTONE/sys/myrungcgem
```

Stone

Stone looks for a file named *stoneName.*`conf` in the current working directory.

Linked Topaz

The linked version of Topaz looks for the configuration file `gem.conf` so, by default, Gem and Topaz can share the same options. The default location of the file is the user's home directory (`$HOME`).

Linkable GemBuilder for C Applications

Linkable GemBuilder for C applications look for a file named `gci.conf` in the current working directory unless the application has provided a different name by calling GciInitAppName().

Naming Conventions for Configuration Options

The prefix "GEM_" indicates that the option is processed directly by Gems. Unless indicated otherwise by the phrase "used by all executables," most other options are processed only by the Stone, which passes the information to executables as

needed through network connections. Exceptions are the shared page cache configuration options ("SHR_"). The first Gem session process on a node remote from the Stone and extents reads these options, which determine the configuration of the shared page cache on that node.

All executables (that is, the Stone and Gems) understand the standard options used in the file `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf` as shipped. The GemStone executables generate a warning message whenever they encounter an option that is not in the standard list.

> *NOTE:*
> *If the* DUMP_OPTIONS *option is set to True, then once the system-wide and executable-dependent configuration files have been processed, the values of all the options understood by the executable are displayed. You can access the configuration parameters from Smalltalk by using the methods described starting on page 38.*

A.2 Configuration File Syntax

The following section describes the rules of grammar to be used in editing configuration files.

White space	Leading white space is ignored in the parsing of configuration files. Trailing white space is ignored if it follows the statement termination symbol (;).
New lines	New lines within a statement are allowed only after an equal sign or after a comma within a list of values.
Comments	The comment symbol for GemStone configuration files is the pound sign (#). Comments can be embedded in a configuration file using the following rules:

- by starting a line with the comment symbol

- by placing any text after the statement termination symbol (;)

Lists	Lists are separated by commas; list elements can be empty, for example:

    DBF_EXTENT_SIZES = 1999, , 1999;

Within lists of values, leading and trailing white space is ignored.

Strings	Strings are encased in quotes. An empty string is acceptable in the grammar, and may be expressed by either two double quotes ("") or by no value at all (for instance, OPTION = ;).
	Within strings, the escape character is the backslash (\). It can be used as follows:

To generate:	Use the sequence:
backslash (\)	\\
quote (")	\"
statement termination symbol (;)	\;
list separation character (,)	\,
control characters	\ followed by decimal representation of the character as a zero-padded 3-digit decimal number. For example, the string control-N would read \014, because control-N is ASCII 14.

Case-sensitivity	String option values are case-sensitive; boolean option names are *not* case-sensitive.
Maximum Sizes	The maximum number of characters allowed for a GemStone configuration option name is 64. The maximum length of a string option is 1024 characters. There is no limit on the number of elements within a list.
Use of Environment Variables In Options	
	Options that are either file names or directories may have environment variables as the first part of their value or the entire value. For instance, $GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf.

Errors in Configuration Files

At startup, each GemStone executable reads the configuration files. If any error is detected, information about the error is written to the standard output. This information indicates the file and line containing the error and the error's severity.

Two kinds of errors can be generated by the processing of configuration files: syntax errors and option value errors.

Syntax Errors

Syntax errors are generated whenever a grammatical error is detected in the configuration file. All syntax errors are warnings; they do not cause execution to terminate. These errors include:

- End-of-line or end-of-file detected before expected

- Invalid starting character for an option name or invalid character within an option name

- Equals or semicolon sign expected

- Invalid 3-digit escape sequence

- Invalid escape character

- Terminating quote missing in a quoted string

Option Value Errors

Option value errors are generated when the value assigned to an option has no meaning or is of the wrong type. For example, an option value error is generated when an option defined to need a boolean for its value has been set to an integer.

Option value errors vary in severity. Some options, such as not specifying the list of files that make up a logical repository, will necessarily terminate execution. Other option value errors, such as a invalid cache size, might only generate warnings. When a warning is issued, the executable ignores the given value and use the option's default value.

A.3 Configuration Options

The system-wide configuration file contains the following standard configuration options. In this discussion, *default* refers to the value that results when an option is not explicitly set by a statement in the configuration file. *Initial setting* refers to an explicit setting in the initial `system.conf` file that differs from the default.

Some configuration options have an internal parameter that can be changed while GemStone is running. Where such a parameter exists, its name is given as part of the entry. For more information, see "To Change Settings at Run Time" on page 39.

Note that the `$GEMSTONE/bin` directory contains a write-protected file named `initial.config` that is an exact replicate of `$GEMSTONE/data/system.conf` as it was originally shipped, so even if you change the `system.conf` file, you can always recover its original condition.

The following configuration options are listed in alphabetical order.

DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE

DBF_ALLOCATION_MODE describes the space allocation heuristic to be used when filling repository extents.

Permissible values are either Sequential or a series of allocation weights, separated by commas. Under sequential allocation, each extent has its full resources used before the next extent's resources are used. Under weighted allocation, those extents with a larger weight will have proportionally more of their disk resources allocated than those with smaller weights. Each weight applies to the corresponding extent in the series of extents specified in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES, and the number of elements must match. Extent allocation weights must be integers in the range 1..40 (inclusive).

Default: Sequential

DBF_EXTENT_NAMES

DBF_EXTENT_NAMES list of all repository extents, in order, primary extent first, separated by commas. Taken together, all of the listed file resources make up the logical repository. This option is required, and must contain at least one entry, the name of the primary extent. The maximum number of extents is 255.

An extent name can be a file name or the device name for a raw disk partition. The name can have an environment variable as its first component.

Default: EMPTY. The system will not run unless you define an extent list.
Initial setting: `$GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf`

DBF_EXTENT_SIZES

DBF_EXTENT_SIZES sets the maximum sizes (in MB) of all repository extents, in order, primary extent first, separated by commas. Each size applies to the corresponding extent in the series of extents specified in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES.

A size entry may be null, which indicates that the corresponding extent has no fixed maximum size. This setting allows the extent to grow until it fills the disk containing it or until it reaches the maximum size for an extent.

NOTE
The maximum size of an extent is operating system- and platform-
dependent, but under no circumstances can be larger than 32 terabytes
(32,000,000 MB). For specific information about system dependencies,

> *see the comment in the configuration file for the parameter*
> DBF_EXTENT_SIZES.

For optimal performance using a raw partition, DBF_EXTENT_SIZES should be slightly smaller than the size of the partition so GemStone can avoid having to handle system errors. For example, set it to about 1995 MB for a 2 GB partition.

You can modify the size of an existing extent under these conditions:

- If the original maximum size was unlimited, the new maximum size must be larger than the current physical size of the extent.

- If the original maximum size was limited, the new maximum size must be larger than the original maximum size.

The Stone repository monitor is the only executable allowed to change DBF_EXTENT_SIZES. At GemStone system startup, the maximum size of each extent is written to the system log file.

> Default: EMPTY (no maximum sizes)
> Minimum: 1 (MB)
> Maximum: operating system- and platform-dependent (see NOTE above)

DBF_PRE_GROW

If DBF_PRE_GROW is set to True, then when a new extent is created, it is grown to its maximum size. If the new extent cannot be grown to the maximum size because of disk capacity problems, then the creation will fail.

The default value for DBF_PRE_GROW is False. This setting indicates that extents will grow only when new space is needed by the logical repository.

An extent without a maximum size is not pregrown to any size; it is allocated a minimum size determined internally by the GemStone system.

DBF_PRE_GROW, if set to True, will affect existing extents at startup. If an existing extent has a maximum size and that extent is physically not at that maximum size, it is grown to that size and the added portion is initialized. If the grow fails, the extent is reset to its original size and the startup attempt fails.

> Default: False

DBF_SCRATCH_DIR

DBF_SCRATCH_DIR specifies a scratch directory that the Stone process can use to create "scratch" repositories for use during **pageaudit**. The file name is appended

to the directory name *without* an intervening delimiter, so a trailing delimiter is necessary here.

Default: `$GEMSTONE/data/`

DUMP_OPTIONS

If DUMP_OPTIONS is set to True, dumps a summary of all configuration options.

Default: True

GEM_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE

GEM_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE specifies the size of the Gem's free frame cache. When using the free frame cache, the Gem removes enough frames from the free frame list to refill the cache in a single operation. When adding frames to the free list, the Gem does not add them until the cache is full.

A value of 0 disables the free frame cache (the Gem acquires frames one at a time). A value of –1 means use the default value: 0 for caches less than 100 MB and 10 for caches of 100 MB or greater.

Units: frames.

Default: –1 (cache size=0 for caches less than 100 MB and 10 for caches of 100 MB or greater)
Minimum: –1
Maximum: 63

GEM_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT

Internal parameter: **#GemFreeFrameLimit**

When the number of free frames in the shared page cache is less than GEM_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT, the Gem session process scans the cache for a free frame rather than using one from the free frame list. This action is desirable for performance reasons so the remaining frames in the list are available for use by the Stone repository monitor.

If the value of GEM_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT is –1, the free frame limit is set to one of the following default values:

• For primary shared page cache that is 800 MB or smaller: 10% of the number of frames in the cache

• For primary shared page cache greater than 800 MB: 5000 frames

- For a remote shared page cache: 0

  Default: –1 (see above discussion)
  Minimum: 1
  Maximum: 65536

GEM_GCI_LOG_ENABLED

This option has no effect in customer executables.

Default: False

GEM_HALT_ON_ERROR

GEM_HALT_ON_ERROR causes a Gem to halt and dump core if an error with the specified GemStone error number occurs. The value 0 means "never halt". Ordinarily this option is used only to assist Technical Support in diagnosing problems.

Default: 0

GEM_IO_LIMIT

Internal parameter: **#GemIOLimit**

GEM_IO_LIMIT limits the I/O rate to this number of I/Os per second (also applies to linked Gems). Values greater than 1000 result in the I/O rate being limited only by the performance of the underlying file system or disk partitions.

Default: 5000
Minimum: 1
Maximum: 65536

GEM_KEEP_MIN_SOFTREFS

GEM_KEEP_MIN_SOFTREFS determines the minimum number of most recently used SoftReferences that will not be cleared by VM markSweep if *startingMemUsed* — the percentage of temporary object memory in-use at the beginning of a VM mark/sweep — is greater than GEM_SOFTREF_CLEANUP_PERCENT_MEM but less than 80%.

In most cases, the default (0) is appropriate and should not be changed.

Default: 0
Minimum: 0
Maximum: 10000000

GEM_MAX_SMALLTALK_STACK_DEPTH

GEM_MAX_SMALLTALK_STACK_DEPTH determines the size of the GemStone
Smalltalk execution stack space that is allocated when the Gem logs in. The unit is
the approximate number of method activations in the stack. This setting causes
heap memory allocation of approximately 64 bytes per activation. Exceeding the
stack depth results in generation of the error RT_ERR_STACK_LIMIT.

> Default: 1000
> Minimum: 100
> Maximum: 1000000

GEM_PGSVR_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE

GEM_PGSVR_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE specifies the size of the free frame cache
used by the Gem's remote page server. This configuration option has no effect for
Gems that are local to the repository extents (which have a page server).

When using the free frame cache, the page server removes enough frames from the
free frame list to refill the cache in a single operation. When adding frames to the
free list, the page server does not add them until the cache is full.

A value of 0 disables the free frame cache (the page server acquires frames one at
a time). A value of –1 means use the default value: 0 for caches less than 100 MB
and 10 for caches of 100 MB or greater.

Units: frames.

> Default: –1 (cache size=0 for caches less than 100 MB and 10 for caches of 100
> MB or greater)
> Minimum: –1
> Maximum: 63

GEM_PGSVR_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT

GEM_PGSVR_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT determines the free frame limit used by the
Gem's remote page server. It has no effect for Gems local to the repository extents
(which do not have a page server). For a description of free frames, see the
GEM_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT configuration option (page 380).

If the value of GEM_PGSVR_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT is –1, the free frame limit is set to
one of the following default values:

• For primary shared page cache that is 800 MB or smaller: 10% of the number
of frames in the cache

- For primary shared page cache greater than 800 MB: 5000 frames

To tune the free frame limit of a page server at runtime, use the method `System class>>changeCacheSlotFreeFrameLimit:` *aSlot* `to:` *aValue.*

> Default: –1 (see above discussion)
> Minimum: –1
> Maximum: 65536

GEM_PGSVR_UPDATE_CACHE_ON_READ

Internal parameter: #**GemPgsvrUpdateCacheOnRead**

GEM_PGSVR_UPDATE_CACHE_ON_READ determines the read behavior of the Gem's remote page server when pages are read from disk. If this option is set to True, pages read from disk are also added to the shared page cache on the page server's host. If this option is False, pages read are not added to the page server's shared cache. This option has no effect for Gems that are local to the repository extents (such Gems do not have a page server).

> Default: False

GEM_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB

GEM_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB sets the size (in KB) of the Gem's private page cache. (This setting also applies to linked Gems.)

> Default: 1000
> Minimum: 128
> Maximum: 524288

GEM_RPCGCI_TIMEOUT

GEM_RPCGCI_TIMEOUT specifies the time in minutes after which lack of an Rpc command will cause a Gem to terminate. Negative timeouts are not allowed. Resolution of timeouts is one-half the specified timeout interval.

> Default: 0 (Gem waits forever)
> Minimum: 0

GEM_SOFTREF_CLEANUP_PERCENT_MEM

GEM_SOFTREF_CLEANUP_PERCENT_MEM controls the cleanup of SoftReferences.

If *startingMemUsed* — the percentage of temporary object memory in-use at the beginning of a VM mark/sweep — is less than the value of this option, no SoftReferences will be cleared.

If *startingMemUsed* is greater than the value of this option and less than 80%, the VM mark/sweep will attempt to clear an internally determined number of least recently used SoftReferences. Under rare circumstances, you might choose to specify a minimum number (GEM_KEEP_MIN_SOFTREFS) that will not be cleared.

If *startingMemUsed* is greater than 80%, VM mark/sweep will attempt to clear all SoftReferences.

- Also see the descriptions of the statistics NumSoftRefsCleared, NumLiveSoftRefs, and NumNonNilSoftRefs (page 250).

Default: 50
Minimum: 10
Maximum: 80

GEM_TEMPOBJ_AGGRESSIVE_STUBBING

GEM_TEMPOBJ_AGGRESSIVE_STUBBING controls stubbing in in-memory garbage collection. If instance variable X in object A references object B, and X contains a memory pointer to B, then the reference is *stubbed* by storing into instance variable X the objectId of object B.

When this option is TRUE (the default), references from temporary objects to in-memory copies of committed objects are stubbed whenever possible, during both scavenge and mark/sweep. Also, references from not-dirty in-memory copies of committed objects to other committed objects are stubbed whenever possible. This reduces the number of committed objects forced to stay in-memory, but can slow down garbage collection and subsequent execution.

When this option is FALSE, references from temporary objects to in-memory copies of committed objects are never stubbed. References from not-dirty in-memory copies of committed objects to other committed objects are stubbed after the number of objects flushed during commits reaches a threshold, or if almost OutOfMemory. Performance may be faster, but there is a greater risk of OutOfMemory errors.

Stubbing is always disabled when a commit attempt is in progress, regardless of the setting of this parameter. Certain objects private to the object manager are always immune from stubbing, and so are references stored into Session State by using System Class >> _sessionStateAt:put:.

- Also see the descriptions of the statistics NumRefsStubbedMarkSweep and NumRefsStubbedScavenge (page 250).

GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE

GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE sets the maximum size (in KB) of the Gem's temporary object memory. (This limit also applies to linked Topaz sessions and linked GemBuilder applications.) This value is set when the VM is initialized and cannot be changed without starting the VM. When you only change this setting, and the other GEM_TEMPOBJ... configuration options use default values, then all of the various spaces remain in proportion to each other.

GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE defines the maximum memory size. As the actual space required for objects grows, the VM requests and allocates virtual memory as needed.

Default: 10000
Minimum: 2000
Maximum: 1000000

GEM_TEMPOBJ_INITIAL_SIZE

GEM_TEMPOBJ_INITIAL_SIZE specifies the initial amount of memory (in KB) to allocate for temporary object memory, on platforms that do not permit memory to be allocated and not reserved. This parameter affects HP-UX and AIX, but not Solaris or Linux.

During gem execution, when temp obj memory requirements increase, more memory is made available to the gem, up to the limit of GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE.

When the default setting of –1 is specified, the value of this parameter is computed based on GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE.

Default: -1
Minimum: 2000
Maximum: GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE

GEM_TEMPOBJ_MESPACE_SIZE

GEM_TEMPOBJ_MESPACE_SIZE sets the maximum size (in KB) of the Map Entries space within the Gem's temporary object memory. This value is set when the VM is initialized and cannot be changed without starting the VM.

One Map Entry is required for each faulted-in committed object, or for any temporary object that might become committed, referenced from an IdentityBag, or exported to the GCI. One Map Entry occupies approximately 24 bytes.

If a Map Entry is needed and the Map Entries Space is full, an OutOfMemory occurs, terminating the session.

Unless you are trying to minimize the memory footprint on HP-UX or AIX, you should always leave GEM_TEMPOBJ_MESPACE_SIZE at its default value (0) so that the system can calculate the size of the Map Entries space based on other memory sizes Otherwise, you are at risk of premature OutOfMemory errors.

> Default: 0
> Minimum: 1000
> Maximum: 1000000

GEM_TEMPOBJ_OOPMAP_SIZE

GEM_TEMPOBJ_OOPMAP_SIZE sets the size of the hash table (that is, the number of 8-byte entries) in the objId-to-object map within the Gem's temporary object memory. This value is set when the VM is initialized and cannot be changed without starting the VM.

The value specified is rounded up to the next higher power of 2.

This option should normally be left at its default value (0) so that the system can calculate the size of the map based on other memory sizes.

> Default: 0
> Minimum: 16384
> Maximum: 524288000

GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_SCAVENGE_INTERVAL

Internal parameter: #**GemTempObjPomgenScavengeInterval**

GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_SCAVENGE_INTERVAL is the interval in seconds in which the oldest pom gen subspace will be discarded. Lower values may reduce gem memory usage but may also cause objects to be re-read. Larger values may result in higher gem memory usage and may reduce disk I/O. Setting this value to zero disables scheduled pom gen scavenges. In this case, pom gen will only be scavenged when all subspaces become full.

> Default: 1800
> Min: 0

> Max: 86400
> Units: seconds

GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_SIZE

GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_SIZE sets the maximum size (in KB) of the POM generation area in the Gem's temporary object memory. This value is set when the VM is initialized and cannot be changed without starting the VM.

The POM generation area holds unmodified copies of committed objects that have been faulted into a Gem, and is divided into ten subspaces.

This option should normally be left at its default value (0) so that the POM generation area is allocated the same size as GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE.

> Default: 0
> Minimum: 1000
> Maximum: 1000000

GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_PRUNE_ON_VOTE

GEM_TEMPOBJ_POMGEN_PRUNE_ON_VOTE sets the percent of the pom generation area to be thrown away when voting on possible dead objects. Only subspaces of pom generation older than 5 minutes are thrown away. The most recently used subspace is never thrown away.

If this value is not specified, or the specified value is out of range, the default is used.

> Default: 50
> Minimum: 0
> Maximum: 90

KEYFILE

KEYFILE sets the location of GemStone licensing keyfile.

> Default: `$GEMSTONE/sys/gemstone.key`

LOG_WARNINGS

If LOG_WARNINGS is set to True, warnings are printed for invalid configuration options.

> Default: True

SHR_NUM_FREE_FRAME_SERVERS

SHR_NUM_FREE_FRAME_SERVERS specifies the number of free frame page server processes that will be started when the shared page cache is created.

> Default: 1
> Minimum: 0
> Maximum: 30

SHR_PAGE_CACHE_LOCKED

SHR_PAGE_CACHE_LOCKED specifies whether the shared page cache should be locked in memory. On systems that permit a portion of memory to be dedicated to GemStone, this option may provide higher performance.

On Solaris 10, GemStone uses Intimate Shared Memory for the shared page cache, making setting this variable unnecessary.

Other specific operating systems may restrict this action to processes running as root or may require special privileges (such as MLOCK on HP-UX) for this option to take effect; for further information, check the shared page cache monitor log for error messages and consult your operating system documentation.

> Default: False

SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_SHARED_COUNTERS

SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_SHARED_COUNTRERS specifies the number of shared counters available in the shared page cache. On most platforms, each counter consumes 128 bytes of shared memory. On AIX, each counter consumes 256 bytes of shared memory. Shared memory used for shared counters is in addition to the shared memory size specified in SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB.

> Default: 1900
> Minimum: 1
> Maximum: 500000

SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS

SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS sets the maximum number of processes allowed to attach to the shared page cache. This parameter is used to allocate space in the shared page cache for session information and cache statistics. This cache space is in addition to extent page space allocated by SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB.

The value for SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS must accommodate the GcGems and various background GemStone processes, as well as user Gem and Topaz session processes. If the value is too small, sessions might be unable to login because they can't attach to the cache. If the value is too large, space in the cache may be wasted.

When the default setting of –1 is specified, the value of this parameter is (STN_MAX_SESSIONS + number of extents in repository + 3).

> Default: –1
> Minimum: 15, or the number extents + 3, whichever is larger
> Maximum: determined by STN_MAX_SESSIONS or file descriptor limits

SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB

SHR_PAGE_CACHE_SIZE_KB sets the size (in KB) of the shared page cache. (Additional shared memory is used for overhead.)

> Default: 75000
> Minimum: 512
> Maximum: Limited by system memory and kernel configurations

> *NOTE*
> *For information about platform-specific limitations on the size of the shared page cache, refer to Chapter 1 of your GemStone/S Installation Guide.*

SHR_SPIN_LOCK_COUNT

Internal parameter: **#SpinLockCount**

SHR_SPIN_LOCK_COUNT specifies the number of tries to get a spin lock before the process sleeps on a semaphore. Semaphores involve a relatively time-consuming call to the operating system. Spin locks involve busy–wait loops. Efficient locking may require a combination of these methods.

In single-processor architectures, this value should always be 1 since there is no value in spinning (the lock won't change until the process holding the lock gets scheduled). On multiple-processor architectures, a value of 4000 is recommended.

We recommend that you leave this option set to the default value of –1, which causes GemStone to use a value of either 1 or 4000, based upon the number of CPUs detected.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: –1 (use either 1 or 4000, based on the number of CPUs detected)

SHR_TARGET_FREE_FRAME_COUNT

SHR_TARGET_FREE_FRAME_COUNT specifies the target number of free frames to keep in the shared cache at all times. The free frame page server process(es) will attempt to keep the number of free frames in the cache equal to or greater than this value.

If the value of the parameter is –1, the target free frame count is set to a percentage of the total frames in the shared cache. For the main shared cache (the cache to which the stone attaches), the default is 1/8 the frames in the cache. For remote caches, the default is 1/100 the frames in the cache.

For best performance, keep this setting greater than GEM_FREE_FRAME_LIMIT.

If the value of SHR_TARGET_FREE_FRAME_COUNT is –1, the target number of free frames is set to one of the following default values:

- For primary shared page cache that is 800 MB or smaller: 12.5% of the number of frames in the cache

- For primary shared page cache greater than 800 MB: 7000 frames

- For a remote shared page cache: 1% of the number of frames, or 2000 frames, whichever is smaller

    Default: –1 (see above discussion)
    Minimum: –1
    Maximum: 65536

STN_ADMIN_GC_SESSION_ENABLED

Internal parameter: #**StnAdminGcSessionEnabled**

STN_ADMIN_GC_SESSION_ENABLED determines whether the Admin GcGem is started when the Stone is started. (The Admin GcGem performs administrative garbage collection functions such as write set union sweeps; the Reclaim GcGems perform dead object and page reclamation.)

    Default: True

STN_ALLOCATE_HIGH_OOPS

If true, the Stone skips the first 16 million object identifiers and begins to allocate object identifiers (GCI OopTypes) for non-special objects at 16r100000001.

This option is designed for testing conversion of GCI applications and user actions. Do not set this option in a production environment.

Default: False

STN_CHECKPOINT_INTERVAL

Internal parameter: **#StnCheckpointInterval**

STN_CHECKPOINT_INTERVAL sets the maximum interval between checkpoints. Checkpoints may be written more often, depending on other factors. The unit is seconds.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: 300
Minimum: 5
Maximum: 1800

STN_COMMIT_RECORD_QUEUE_SIZE

STN_COMMIT_RECORD_QUEUE_SIZE determines the size of the stone's internal commit record cache. The stone will keep copies of up to this many commit records in heap memory. Stone is able to dispose commit records more quickly when a copy of the commit record is found in this cache.

When the default value of -1 is specified, stone sets this value to be two times the value of the STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG option.

Units are Commit Record Pages.

Default: -1
Min: 16
Max: 1000000

STN_COMMIT_QUEUE_THRESHOLD

Internal parameter: **#StnCommitQueueThreshold**

STN_COMMIT_QUEUE_THRESHOLD determines whether the Stone defers the disposal of commit records, based on the number of sessions in the commit queue. If the size of the commit queue exceeds this threshold, the Stone defers commit record disposal until the commit queue is less than or equal to the value.

This setting is ignored if the commit record backlog exceeds the value of STN_CR_BACKLOG_THRESHOLD.

Default: -1 (never defer commit record disposal)
Minimum: -1
Maximum: 1024

STN_COMMIT_TOKEN_TIMEOUT

STN_COMMIT_TOKEN_TIMEOUT sets the maximum interval (in seconds) that a session may possess the commit token. If the session possesses the token for longer than this period, the session will be logged off the system and an error message written to the Stone log. GcGems of all types are exempted from this timeout.

Default: 0 (Stone waits forever)
Minimum: 0
Maximum: 86400

STN_COMMITS_ASYNC

If STN_COMMITS_ASYNC is set to TRUE, it causes the stone to acknowledge each commit or persistent shared counter update to the requesting session without waiting for the tranlog writes for that commit to complete.

Default: FALSE

STN_CR_BACKLOG_THRESHOLD

Internal parameter: **#StnCrBacklogThreshold**

STN_CR_BACKLOG_THRESHOLD sets the size of the commit record backlog above which the Stone aggressively disposes of commit records. This setting overrides the deferral of commit record disposal provided by the STN_COMMIT_QUEUE_THRESHOLD parameter.

The default setting of -1 causes the Stone to use a setting equal to (2 * STN_MAX_SESSIONS). A setting of 0 disables this threshold.

Default: -1 (Stone waits forever)
Minimum: -1
Maximum: 500000

STN_DISABLE_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT
STN_DISABLE_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT

Internal parameters: **#StnDisableLoginFailureLimit**, **#StnDisableLoginFailureTimeLimit**

These options control when a user account is disabled because the user exceeded the STN_DISABLE_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT of failed login attempts within the time in minutes specified by STN_DISABLE_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT. When an account exceeds these limits, the user account is disabled (the system changes the password on the account to one that is invalid) and a record of the event is written to the Stone log file. The user account can only be restored by another user with OtherPassword privileges.

Changes to the internal parameters require the OtherPassword privilege.

> STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT:
>> Default: 15
>> Minimum: 0
>> Maximum: 65536

> STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT:
>> Default: 15
>> Minimum: 1
>> Maximum: 1440 (24 hours)

STN_DISKFULL_TERMINATION_INTERVAL

Internal parameter: **#StnDiskFullTerminationInterval**

STN_DISKFULL_TERMINATION_INTERVAL specifies how soon (in minutes) the Stone should start terminating sessions holding on to the oldest commit record when the repository free space is below the value set for STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD. Such sessions are sent the fatal diskfull error.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

> Default: 3
> Minimum: 0 (no sessions are terminated)
> Maximum: 1440 (24 hours)

STN_EPOCH_GC_ENABLED

Internal parameter: #**StnEpochGcEnabled**

STN_EPOCH_GC_ENABLED determines if epoch garbage collection can be run on the system. Leave this value set to FALSE unless you plan to run epoch garbage collection on the system. Setting this to TRUE adds a small amount of overhead to commit processing.

> Default: FALSE

STN_EXTENT_IO_FLAGS

STN_EXTENT_IO_FLAGS specifies what (if any) special I/O flags will be used to open the database extents. Two kinds of special I/O are supported: direct I/O and concurrent I/O.

Direct I/O tells the operating system avoid caching extent data in the file system cache. Enabling direct I/O tells the operating system to treats the database extents as if they were on raw partitions. Direct I/O may greatly improve database performance in some cases. Concurrent I/O is only available to extents running on the Enhanced JFS file system (aka JFS2) on AIX. Setting this flag has no effect on other operating systems.

STN_EXTENT_IO_FLAGS has the following possible values:

> 0 - no special I/O flags. This is the default.
> 1 - enable Direct I/O on all extents on file systems.
> 2 - enable concurrent I/O (AIX only)

If the requested I/O mode is not available, the stone will fail to start and an error message will be printed in the stone log. If this happens, change this option back to zero and restart the stone.

STN_EXTENT_IO_FLAGS has no effect on extents which reside on raw partitions.

Once the stone starts, all processes which open the database extents (gems and page servers) will open the extents using the same I/O flags. This behavior is required by some operating systems.

> Default: **0**
> Minimum: **0**
> Maximum: **2** (AIX only), 1 (All Others)

STN_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE

STN_FREE_FRAME_CACHE_SIZE specifies the size of the Stone's free frame cache. When using the free frame cache, the Stone removes enough frames from the free frame list to refill the cache in a single operation.

Units: frames.

> Default: 1 (disables the free frame cache; Stone acquires frames one at a time)
> Minimum: 1
> Maximum: 1% of the frames in the cache

STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD

Internal parameter: **#StnFreeSpaceThreshold**

STN_FREE_SPACE_THRESHOLD sets the minimum amount of free space (in MB) to be available in the repository. If the Stone cannot maintain this level by growing an extent, it begins actions to prevent shutdown of the system; for information, see "Repository Full" on page 190.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: 1
Minimum: 0 (no threshold)
Maximum: 65536

STN_GEM_ABORT_TIMEOUT

Internal parameter: **#StnGemAbortTimeout**

STN_GEM_ABORT_TIMEOUT sets the time in minutes that the Stone will wait for a Gem running outside of a transaction to abort (in order to release a commit record), after Stone has signaled that Gem to do so. If the time expires before the Gem aborts, the Stone sends the Gem the error ABORT_ERR_LOST_OT_ROOT, and then either stop the Gem or force it to completely reinitialize its object caches, depending on the value of the related configuration parameter STN_GEM_LOSTOT_TIMEOUT. Negative timeouts are not allowed. Resolution of timeouts is one half the specified time-out interval.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: 1
Minimum: 1
Maximum: 1440

STN_GEM_LOSTOT_TIMEOUT

Internal parameter: **#StnGemLostOtTimeout**

STN_GEM_LOSTOT_TIMEOUT sets the time in seconds that the Stone will wait after sending the Gem the error #abortErrLostOtRoot before retracting the Gem's commit record and forcibly stopping the session. Negative timeouts other than –1 are not allowed. Resolution of timeouts is one half the specified timeout interval.

If the value is –1, the Stone does not stop the Gem; it immediately retracts the session's commit record, forcing the Gem to completely reinitialize its object caches.

> *CAUTION*
> *A value of –1 entails a slight risk that the sleeping Gem will reactivate and begin writing to the shared page cache before it responds to the* ABORT_ERR_LOST_OT_ROOT *error, thus corrupting the shared page cache.*
>
> *Because of these risks, design your application to minimize the chances of receiving the* ABORT_ERR_LOST_OT_ROOT *error.*

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: **60**
Minimum: **–1**
Maximum: **5000000**

STN_GEM_TIMEOUT

Internal parameter: **#StnGemTimeout**

STN_GEM_TIMEOUT sets the time in minutes after which lack of interaction with the Gem causes the Stone to terminate the session. Negative timeouts are not allowed. Resolution of timeouts is one half the specified time-out interval. If non-zero, this timeout is also the maximum time allowed for a Gem to complete processing of its login to the Stone. If this timeout is 0, the maximum time for login processing is set to five minutes.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: **0** (Stone waits forever)
Minimum: **0**

STN_HALT_ON_FATAL_ERR

Internal parameter: **#StnHaltOnFatalErr**

If STN_HALT_ON_FATAL_ERR is set to True, the Stone will halt and dump core if it receives notification from a Gem that the Gem died with a fatal error that would cause Gem to dump core. By stopping the Stone at this point, the possibility of repository corruption is minimized. True is the recommended setting for systems during development.

If STN_HALT_ON_FATAL_ERR is set to False, the Stone will attempt to keep running if a Gem encounters a fatal error. False is the recommended setting for systems in production use.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: True

Internal settings: 0 = False, 1 = True

STN_LOG_IO_FLAGS

STN_LOG_IO_FLAGS specifies what (if any) special I/O flags will be used to open the database transaction logs. Two kinds of special I/O are supported: direct I/O and concurrent I/O.

Direct I/O tells the operating system avoid caching extent data in the file system cache. Enabling direct I/O tells the operating system to treats the database tranlogs as if they were on raw partitions. Direct I/O may greatly improve database performance in some cases.

Concurrent I/O is only available to tranlogs running on the Enhanced JFS file system (aka JFS2) on AIX. Setting this flag has no effect on other operating systems.

STN_LOG_IO_FLAGS has the following possible values:

    0 - no special I/O flags. This is the default.
    1 - enable Direct I/O on all tranlogs on file systems.
    2 - enable concurrent I/O (AIX only)

If the requested I/O mode is not available, the stone will fail to start and an error message will be printed in the stone log. If this happens, change this option back to zero and restart the stone.

STN_LOG_IO_FLAGS has no effect on tranlogs which reside on raw partitions.

Default: 0
Minimum: 0
Maximum: 2 (AIX only), 1 (All Others)

STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT
STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT

Internal parameters: **#StnLogLoginFailureLimit**,
#StnLogLoginFailureTimeLimit

If a user has greater than or equal to the STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT number of login failures within the time in minutes specified by STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT, a message is written to the Stone log file.

Changes to the internal parameters require the OtherPassword privilege.

STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_LIMIT:
    Default: 10
    Minimum: 0
    Maximum: 65536

STN_LOG_LOGIN_FAILURE_TIME_LIMIT:
    Default: 10
    Minimum: 1
    Maximum: 1440 (24 hours)

STN_LOOP_NO_WORK_THRESHOLD

Internal parameter: **#StnLoopNoWorkThreshold**

STN_LOOP_NO_WORK_THRESHOLD indicates the maximum number of times the stone will continue executing its main service loop when there is no work to do. If the stone loops more than this number of times and finds no work, the stone will sleep for up to one second. The stone will immediately wake up when there is any work to be done.

Setting this value to zero disables this feature. Setting this value to a non-zero setting, in addition to causing the above behavior, will also cause the stone to not sleep whenever any of the following conditions are true and the no work threshold has not been exceeded:

- a session holds the commit token

- one or more sessions are waiting in the commit queue

- one or more sessions are waiting in the run queue.

Setting this parameter to a non-zero value will always cause the stone to consume more CPU.

Default: 0
Minimum: 0
Maximum: 536870911

STN_MAX_AIO_RATE

Internal parameter: **#StnMntMaxAioRate**

STN_MAX_AIO_RATE specifies the maximum I/O rate that each AIO page server is allowed when performing asynchronous writes. Since the I/O rate specified is applied to each page server, the total maximum I/O rate on the disk system is this value multiplied by STN_NUM_LOCAL_AIO_SERVERS.

The page servers use this maximum I/O rate for both dirty page and checkpoint writes.

> Default: 300
> Minimum: 20
> Maximum: 1000000

STN_MAX_AIO_REQUESTS

STN_MAX_SESSIONS specifies the maximum number of asynchronous write requests the stone can have pending. If more than this number of asynchronous writes are requested, the stone will wait (sleep) until one or more of the pending requests have completed. Asynchronous write requests are only used to write to the current tranlog.

The maximum value allowed depends on the maximum allowed by the UNIX kernel. The maximum value for this parameter allowed by GemStone is the value of _SC_AIO_MAX or 4096, whichever is lower. On some systems (such as Solaris), it is not possible to determine the value of _SC_AIO_MAX. In that case, GemStone will impose a maximum value of 128. Otherwise the maximum is 4096 or _SC_AIO_MAX, which ever is lower.

For further information on the _SC_AIO_MAX kernel parameter, refer to the UNIX documentation for your system and/or the UNIX man page for the sysconf() call.

> Default: 128
> Minimum: 100
> Maximum: the minimum of 4096 or _SC_AIO_MAX; or 128 (see above)

STN_MAX_REMOTE_CACHES

STN_MAX_REMOTE_CACHES specifies the maximum number of remote shared page caches that the system may have.

> Default: 16
> Minimum: 0
> Maximum: 65535

STN_MAX_SESSIONS

STN_MAX_SESSIONS limits the number of simultaneous sessions (number of Gem logins to Stone), excluding SymbolGem and GcGems. The actual value used by Stone is the value of this parameter or the number of sessions specified by the software license key file, whichever is less. This parameter is provided so the number of users to be restricted to avoid overloading the host computer. The maximum number of file descriptors per process (imposed by the operating system kernel) can also limit the maximum number of sessions.

If you increase STN_MAX_SESSIONS, and you are not allowing the system to calculate SHR_PAGE_CACHE_NUM_PROCS, you will need to increase that parameters as well.

> Recommended: 40 or more, depending on your requirements
> Default: 40
> Minimum: 1
> Maximum: 10000

STN_MAX_VOTING_SESSIONS

Internal Parameter: #**StnMaxVotingSessions**

STN_MAX_VOTING_SESSIONS specifies the maximum number of sessions that can simultaneously vote on possible dead objects, at the end of a markForCollection or epoch garbage collection. To help prevent the voting on possible dead objects from causing large increases in response time of the system, set this to a value substantially lower than STN_MAX_SESSIONS.

> Default: 100
> Minimum: 1
> Maximum: 1000000

STN_NUM_GC_RECLAIM_SESSIONS

Internal parameter: #**StnNumGcReclaimSessions**

STN_NUM_GC_RECLAIM_SESSIONS specifies the number of page reclaim garbage collector gems (Reclaim GcGems) that will be started when the Stone starts. The maximum number of Reclaim GcGems is equal to the number of extents as specified in DBF_EXTENT_NAMES. If you specify a value larger than the number of extents, one GC reclaim will be started for each extent.

Default: 1
Minimum: 0
Maximum: 256

STN_NUM_LOCAL_AIO_SERVERS

STN_NUM_LOCAL_AIO_SERVERS is the approximate number of page server processes to start as local asynchronous I/O servers for the shared page cache on the node where the Stone runs. The number of extents known to the Stone at startup is divided by the value of STN_NUM_LOCAL_AIO_SERVERS to compute the internal configuration parameter `StnRDbfMaxFilesPerServer`. The latter parameter is the approximate number of extent files to be serviced by each AIO page server.

For instance, if your configuration has six extents, setting STN_NUM_LOCAL_AIO_SERVERS to 3 causes each AIO page server to service (6 ÷ 3) = 2 extents.

Under certain circumstances, multiple AIO page servers can help you achieve the maximum possible commit rate. A value greater than one is recommended only if there are two or more extents, the host has multiple CPUs (to allow parallel execution), and the disk drive hardware allows concurrent writes to disk (the extents are on separate spindles, or the equivalent).

Default: 1
Minimum: 1
Maximum: 256

STN_OBJ_LOCK_TIMEOUT

Internal Parameter: **#StnObjLockTimeout**

STN_OBJ_LOCK_TIMEOUT specifies the time in seconds that a session is allowed to wait to obtain one of the special single object write locks. For more information, see the methods System >> waitForRcWriteLock: and System >> waitForApplicationWriteLock:queue:autoRelease:.

Default: 0 (stone waits forever)
Min: 0
Max: 86400

STN_PAGE_REMOVAL_THRESHOLD

Internal Parameter: **#StnPageRemovalThreshold**

STN_PAGE_REMOVAL_THRESHOLD sets the minimum batch size for the Page Manager gem. When the number of pages waiting to be processed by the Page Manager is greater than this value, then the Page Manager will request the pages from the stone and process them. Otherwise the Page Manager will wait until this threshold is exceeded before requesting pages from the stone. The stone cache statistic PagesNeedRemovingThreshold reflects the current value of this parameter.

Default: 40
Minimum: 0
Maximum: 1792

STN_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB

STN_PRIVATE_PAGE_CACHE_KB sets the default size (in KB) of the Stone page cache.

Default: 2000
Minimum: 128
Maximum: 524288

STN_REMOTE_CACHE_TIMEOUT

Internal parameter: **#StnRemoteCacheTimeout**

STN_REMOTE_CACHE_TIMEOUT sets the time in minutes after the last active process on a remote node logs out before the Stone shuts down the shared page cache on that node.

A value of 0 causes the Stone to shut down the remote cache as soon as possible.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: 5
Minimum: 0
Maximum: 5000000

STN_SHR_TARGET_PERCENT_DIRTY

Internal parameter: **#StnShrPcTargetPercentDirty**

STN_SHR_TARGET_PERCENT_DIRTY specifies the maximum percentage of the Stone's shared page cache that can contain dirty pages without AIO page servers increasing their IO rates.

Default: 20
Minimum: 1
Maximum: 90

STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG

Internal parameter: **#StnSignalAbortCrBacklog**

STN_SIGNAL_ABORT_CR_BACKLOG sets the number of old transactions (commit records) above which the Stone will start to generate SignalAbort messages to a Gem that is running outside of a transaction. You may need to tune this option according to your application's commit rate and your system's tolerance for the possible swapping activity caused by awakening sleeping session processes.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: 20
Minimum: 0
Maximum: 65536

STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING

If STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING is set to True, all transactions are logged, and log files are not deleted by the system. In this mode, the transaction logs are providing real-time incremental backup of the repository. If no disk space is available for logs, Gem session processes may appear to "hang" until space becomes available.

If STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING is set to False, only transactions smaller than STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT are logged; larger transactions cause a checkpoint, which updates the extent files. Log files are deleted by the system when the circular list of log directories wraps around. This setting allows a simple installation to run unattended for extended periods of time, but it does **not** provide real-time backup. See also STN_TRAN_LOG_DEBUG_LEVEL, which can cause old log files to be retained under partial logging.

Once you have started the Stone on a repository with STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING = True, then the True state will persist in the repository; any subsequent changes to this parameter in the configuration file are ignored. To change the repository back to partial logging, you must do a Smalltalk full backup and then restore the backup into a copy of $GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf.

For further information, see Chapter 7, "Managing Transaction Logs."

Default: None. The system will not run unless you provide a value.
Initial setting: False

STN_TRAN_LOG_DEBUG_LEVEL

This option is only for GemStone internal use. Customers should not change the default setting. Values ≥ 2 inhibit removal of old transaction logs when in partial logging mode.

Default: 0

STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES

STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES lists the directories or raw disk partitions to be used for transaction logging. This list defines the maximum number of log files that will be online at once. Each entry must be a directory or a raw disk partition. Directories may appear multiple times in the list. A given raw disk partition may appear only once.

Default: Empty (the system will not run without at least two entries)
Minimum: 2 entries
Maximum: 2^{31} entries
Initial setting: `$GEMSTONE/data/, $GEMSTONE/data/`

STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT

Internal parameter: **#StnTranLogLimit**

STN_TRAN_LOG_LIMIT sets the maximum transaction log entry size limit in KB. Successful commits of transactions consuming more than this amount of log file space when STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING is set to False will cause a checkpoint. This option has no effect when STN_TRAN_FULL_LOGGING is set to True.

The internal parameter can be changed only by SystemUser.

Default: 1000
Minimum: 25
Maximum: 1000

STN_TRAN_LOG_PREFIX

STN_TRAN_LOG_PREFIX sets file name prefixes for transaction log files. A sequence number and "`.dbf`" is added to the prefix; for example, "`tranlog`" produces "`tranlog0.dbf, tranlog1.dbf, ...`". You can set this configuration option to permit multiple repository monitors to share a log directory without conflict.

Default: `tranlog`

STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES

STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES sets the maximum sizes (in MB) of all log files, in order and separated by commas. Each size applies to a corresponding log file specified in STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES, and the number of entries must match. The sizes also apply to the corresponding entries in STN_REPL_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES when that list is not empty.

For transaction logs on raw partitions, if the size specified is larger than the physical size of the corresponding raw partition, the STN_TRAN_LOG_SIZES value is adjusted appropriately.

Default: Empty (the system will not run unless sizes are specified)
Minimum: 3
Maximum: 16384
Initial setting: 100, 100

STN_TRAN_Q_TO_RUN_Q_THRESHOLD

Internal parameter: **#StnTranQToRunQThreshold**

STN_TRAN_Q_TO_RUN_Q_THRESHOLD specifies the number of sessions in the commit queue (waiting for the commit token) above which the stone will allow the remaining sessions in the queue to process unions (read old commit records) while waiting for the commit token.

For example, if this parameter is set to 6 and there are 9 sessions in the commit queue, the 3 last sessions will be allowed to process unions while waiting for the token. If there are 6 or fewer sessions in the queue, no sessions will process unions.

The first session in the commit queue never processes unions since it will receive the token when the current commit completes.

Default: 6
Minimum: 1
Maximum: 1024

Miscellaneous Internal Parameters

The internal parameters described in this section can by read by using the method `System class>>configurationAt:`.

The parameter `#StnLoginsSuspended` requires the SystemControl privilege. All other parameters can be changed only by SystemUser.

#LogOriginTime

`#LogOriginTime` is the time the current sequence of Stone logs was started. It is the same value returned by `Repository>>logOriginTime`. For information about when a new sequence is started, see the method comment for `Repository>>commitRestore` in the image.

#SessionInBackup

`#SessionInBackup` is the GemStone session number of the session performing a full backup, or –1 if a backup is not in progress.

#StnCurrentTranLogDirId

`#StnCurrentTranLogDirId` is the one-based offset of the current transaction log into the list of log directory names, STN_TRAN_LOG_DIRECTORIES. It is the same value returned by `Repository>>currentLogDirectoryId`.

#StnCurrentTranLogNames

`#StnCurrentTranLogNames` is an Array containing up to two Strings: the name of the transaction log to which records currently are being appended, and the name of the current replicated log. These are the same values returned by `Repository>>currentLogFile` and `currentLogReplicate`, respectively.

#StnLogFileName

The stone log file path and name. This is a read-only value.

#StnLogGemErrors

`#StnLogGemErrors` is intended for internal debugging use. When it is set to 1, the Stone logs error messages it sends to Gems.

#StnLoginsSuspended

`#StnLoginsSuspended` ordinarily has the values 0 (False) and 1 (True) as set by `System class>>suspendLogins` and `resumeLogins`. Changing this parameter requires the SystemControl privilege.

#StnMaxReposSize

`#StnMaxReposSize` is the maximum size of the repository for your GemStone license, as set by the GemStone keyfile. The value of this parameter is 0 when not limited by the keyfile.

#StnMaxSessions

`#StnMaxSessions` is the maximum allowed number of sessions for your GemStone license, as set by the GemStone keyfile. The value of this parameter is 0 when not limited by the keyfile. This internal parameter is not related to the STN_MAX_SESSIONS configuration option.

#StnSunsetDate

`#StnSunsetDate` is the sunset date for your GemStone license, as set by the GemStone keyfile. The value of this parameter is 0 when not limited by the keyfile.

#StnTranLogOriginTime

`#StnTranLogOriginTime` is the time when the current transaction log was started.

B GemStone Utility Commands

The GemStone/S 64 Bit utility commands in this appendix are provided in the
$GEMSTONE/bin directory. For most of these commands, you can display usage
information by entering the command name with the -**h** option. For example:

```
% copydbf -h
```

```
Usages:  copydbf srcNRS dstNRS [-h|-l|-m|-P] [-C] [-E] [-f filePrefix]
             [-n netldi] [-p pgsvrId] [-s Mbytes]
         ...
         copydbf srcNRS [-i|-I] [-n netldi] [-p pgsvrId]
         ...
```

UNIX man pages are available for more detailed information on each command.

copydbf

copydbf	*sourceNRS destinationNRS* [-**C**] [-**E**] [-**f***filePrefix*] [-**n***netLdiName*] [-**p***pgsvrId*] [-**s***Mbytes*] [-**h** | -**l** | -**m** | -**P**]
copydbf	*sourceNRS* [-**i** | -**I**] [-**n***netLdiName*] [-**p***pgsvrId*]

sourceNRS	The source file or raw partition (containing an extent, a transaction log, or a full backup) as a GemStone network resource string. Use of a tape device as the source is supported only for a GemStone full backup.
destinationNRS	The destination file, directory, or raw partition as a GemStone network resource string. If the destination is a file system directory (the trailing ∕ is optional), a file name is generated and appended to *destinationNRS* based on the type and internal fileId of the source. Use of /dev/null as the destination is supported only for files as a means of verifying that the file is readable. Use of a tape device as the destination is not supported.
-**C**	Compress output. The output must be a filesystem file. Write the output compressed, in gzip format. The output file name will have the suffix .gz appended to it, if it does not end in .gz .
-**E**	Ignore disk read errors. If the disk read error occurs while reading an extent root page, the copy will fail. Otherwise, pages of the source file that cannot be read will be replaced with an invalid-page-kind page in the destination file. The destination file may not be usable.
	This option only applies to extents, not to transaction logs or backup files.
-**f***filePrefix*	If *destinationNRS* is a file system directory, then *filePrefix* overrides the filename prefix that would be generated based on the contents of *sourceNRS*. If *destinationNRS* is other than a file system directory, this option has no effect.
-**n***netLdiName*	The name of the GemStone network server; the default is gs64ldi.

-**p***pgsvrId*	The name of a specific `runpgsvr` (similar to `gemnetid`).
-**s***MB*	The size (in MB) to pre-allocate the destination file. For instance, -**s**10 allocates at least 10 MB to the created file. If you do not specify the -**s** option, the output file is made as short as possible.
-**h**	Displays a usage line (as shown on page 409) and exits.
-**i**	Information only. When this option is present without *destinationNRS,* information about *sourceNRS* is printed without performing a file copy. If both -**i** and *destinationNRS* are present, an error message is printed.
-**I**	Full information. The same information is printed as for -**i.** In addition, if the file is a transaction log, all checkpoint times found are listed instead of only the last one.
-**l**	Least-significant-byte ordering for the *destinationNRS.* This byte ordering is the native byte ordering for Intel processors.
-**m**	Most-significant-byte ordering for the *destinationNRS.* This byte ordering is the native byte ordering for Solaris SPARC, AIX POWER, and HP-UX PA-RISC processors.
-**P**	Preserve byte ordering. This option creates the destination file using the byte ordering found in the source file. The default is to write the file using the host's native byte ordering.

The **copydbf** utility requires exclusive access to repository files in order to copy them without corruption. You must shut down the Stone repository monitor before copying an extent. You may copy any transaction log that is not the active log. copydbf -i or -I, which reports information but does not make a copy, can be executed on the active transaction log.

GemStone repository files on the UNIX file system can usually be copied using the ordinary **cp** command. You can use the first form of **copydbf** for disk-to-disk copies between machines (without NFS) or copies to and from raw disk partitions. You must give an NRS (network resource string) for both the source file and the destination. (A local machine filespec is a subset of an NRS.)

If the destination is a directory in a file system, **copydbf** generates a filename based on the type of file. The generated name includes a prefix (`extent`, `tranlog`, or `backup`), a fileId representing an internal sequence number that starts at 0, and the extension `.dbf`. You can use the -**f** option to change the prefix.

A message describing the source and destination files is printed to standard error before starting the copy. The size of the destination file is printed to standard error after the copy is completed. For example:

```
% copydbf $GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf .

Source file: /users/GemStone/data/extent0.dbf
   file type: extent  fileId: 0
   byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first) compatibilityLevel: 830
   Last checkpoint written at: 07/01/08 16:20:29 PDT.
Destination file:  ./extent0.dbf
   byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first)
   Clean shutdown, no tranlog needed for recovery,
   last tranlog written to had fileId 5 ( tranlog5.dbf ).
   File size is 23.1 MBytes (1408 records).
```

To obtain the same source file information (but not the size) without making a copy, use the second form of the command: **copydbf** -**i** *sourceNRS*. In this usage, you do not specify a *destinationNRS*.

The following **copydbf** -**i** example displays information for an extent, and indicates the oldest transaction log that would be needed to recover from a system crash:

```
% copydbf -i extent0.dbf

Source file: extent0.dbf
   file type: extent  fileId: 0
   byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first) compatibilityLevel: 830
   Last checkpoint written at: 07/01/08 16:20:29 PDT.
   Oldest tranlog needed for recovery is fileId 5
   ( tranlog5.dbf ).
```

The next example displays information for a backup, and indicates the oldest
transaction log that would be needed to restore subsequent transactions.

```
% copydbf -i backup.dat

Source file: backup.dat
   file type: backup  fileId: 0
   The previous file last recordId is  -1.
Destination file:  /dev/null
   Full backup started from checkpoint at: 07/01/08 15:28:37
PDT.
   Oldest tranlog needed for restore is fileId 5
   ( tranlog5.dbf ).
```

To obtain the size of a repository file in a raw partition, use this form:

```
% copydbf sourceNRS destinationNRS
```

For a listing of all checkpoints recorded in a transaction log, use **copydbf -I**
sourceNRS. This information is helpful in restoring a GemStone backup to a
particular point in time. For example:

```
% copydbf -I tranlog5.dbf

Source file: tranlog5.dbf
   file type: tranlog  fileId: 5
   byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first) compatibilityLevel: 830
   The file was created at: 07/01/08 15:28:18 PDT.
   The previous file last recordId is  36 .
   Scanning file to find last checkpoint...
Destination file:  /dev/null
   byteOrder: Sparc (MSB first)
   Checkpoint 1 started at: 07/01/08 15:28:18 PDT.
     oldest transaction references fileId -1 ( this file ).
   Checkpoint 2 started at: 07/01/08 15:28:37 PDT.
     oldest transaction references fileId -1 ( this file ).
   Checkpoint 3 started at: 07/01/08 15:30:30 PDT.
     oldest transaction references fileId -1 ( this file ).
   Checkpoint 4 started at: 07/01/08 15:57:01 PDT.
     oldest transaction references fileId -1 ( this file ).
   File size is 35328 bytes (69 records).
```

To pre-allocate disk space in the destination file, use the -**s** option. For instance, -**s10** would allocate at least 10 MB to the created file. The output file is made as short as possible by default.

In the following example, the local GemStone repository file "extent0.dbf" is copied to a remote machine using a full *destinationNRS*. In this example, the repository file is copied to a remote machine named "node," using remote user account "username" and "password," with a remote filespec of "/users/path/extent0.dbf_copy," via the standard GemStone network server `gs64ldi` using TCP protocol:

```
% copydbf $GEMSTONE/data/extent0.dbf \
!tcp@node#auth:username@password#dbf!/users/extent0.dbf_copy
```

The next example copies a fresh repository extent to an existing raw disk partition. If the raw partition already contains a repository file or backup, use **removedbf** first to mark it as being empty.

```
% copydbf $GEMSTONE/bin/extent0.dbf /dev/rsd3h
```

Copying a transaction log from a raw partition to a file system directory generates a file name having the same form as if that transaction log had originated in a file system. If the internal fileId is 43, this example would name the destination file `/dsk1/tranlogs/tranlog43.dbf`:

```
% copydbf /dev/rsd3h /dsk1/tranlogs/
```

gslist

gslist	[-**h** | -**l** | -**p** | -**x**] [-**c**] [-**q**] [-**v**] [-**t** *secs*] [-**u** *user*] [-**m** *host*]+ [[-**n**] *name*]+
-**h**	Prints a usage line and exits.
-**l**	Prints a long listing (includes pid and port).
-**p**	Prints only the pid (process id), or 0 if the server does not exist.
-**x**	Prints an exhaustive listing, with each item on a separate line.
-**c**	Removes locks left by servers that have been killed.
-**q**	(Quiet.) Don't print any extra information; intended for use when the output will be processed by some other program.
-**v**	Verify the status of each server.
-**t** *secs*	Wait *secs* seconds for server to respond (only with -**v**); default is 2 seconds.
-**u** *user*	Only list servers started by *user.*
-**m** *host*	Only list servers on machine *host*; default is '.' which represents the local host.
[-**n**] *name*	Only list the server *name.*

The **gslist** command prints information about GemStone servers. The default listing prints the following server attributes in columns:

Status	One of the following:	
	OK	server is accepting clients (-v only)
	frozen	server is not responding (-v only)
	full	server can't accept any more clients (-v only)
	exists	server process exists but is not verified
	killed	server process does not exist
Version	GemStone version of the server.	
Owner	The account name of the user who created the server.	
Started	The date and time that the server was started.	

Type	One of the following: Netldi, Stone, or cache (shared page cache monitor)
Name	The server's name.

When you include the -**l** or -**x** option, the following additional columns are printed:

Pid	The process id of the server's main process.
Port	The port number of the server's listening socket.

The -**x** option prints the preceding attributes on separate lines and adds lines for the following as appropriate:

options	Options used when the server was started.
logfile	Full path of server's log file, if it exists.
sysconf	The GemStone system configuration file (see page 368).
execonf	The GemStone executable configuration file (see page 371).
GEMSTONE	Root of the product tree used by the server.

To specify multiple hosts, include the -**m** *host* option for each host. To specify the local host explicitly, you can use "-**m** .".

If the name of a server is printed and the server is not on the local machine, the name is prefixed by host:, where *host* is the name of the remote machine. For **gslist** to list servers on a remote host, **gslist** must (in most cases) be able to contact a NetLDI running on the remote machine. If both the local host and the remote host are running Windows, then a remote NetLDI is not needed.

To specify multiple server names, include the -**n** *name* option for each server. Because the -**n** switch is optional, just a name on the command line also specifies a server name.

The exit status has the following values:

0	Operation was successful.
1	No servers were found.
2	A stale lock was removed (in response to -**c** switch).
3, 4	An error occurred.

If many servers are reported as **frozen**, try increasing –t *secs.*

pageaudit

pageaudit	[*gemStoneName*] [-**e***exeConfig*] [-**z***systemConfig*] [-**f**] [-**h**]
gemStoneName	Name of the GemStone repository monitor; the default is `gs64stone`. Network resource syntax is not permitted.
-**e***exeConfig*	The GemStone executable-dependent configuration file (see page 371).
-**z***systemConfig*	The GemStone system configuration file (see page 368).
-**f**	Keeps running beyond the first error, if possible.
-**h**	Displays a usage line and exits.

Audit the pages in a GemStone repository, which must not be in use.   **pageaudit** opens the repository specified by the relevant configuration files. The three arguments *gemStoneName*, -**e***exeConfig*, and -**z***systemConfig* determine which configuration files **pageaudit** reads. (For more information, see "How GemStone Uses Configuration Files" on page 368.)

The options for this command generally are not needed for a standard GemStone configuration.

An error is returned if another Stone is running as *gemStoneName* or has opened the same repository.

When you include the -**f** switch, **pageaudit** prints all errors possible. Without -**f**, the default is to stop after the first error is found.

This utility can take a long time to run, so it is best to run it as a background job.

For additional information about **pageaudit** and a description of its output, see "To Perform a Page Audit" on page 216.

removedbf

removedbf	*dbfNRS* [-**n** *netLdiName*] [-**p** *pgsvrNetId*] [-**h**]
dbfNRS	The GemStone repository filename or device, as a network resource string, for the repository to be removed.
-***n*** *netLdiName*	The name of the GemStone network server; default is `gs64ldi`.
-**p** *pgsvrNetId*	The name of a specific page server to use.
-**h**	Displays a usage line and exits.

This command removes (erases) a GemStone repository file. It is provided primarily for erasing an extent or transaction log from a raw partition, but it also works on files in the file system and on remote machines. You must provide the NRS (network resource string) of the file to be removed. (A local machine filespec is a subset of an NRS.)

If you specify a file in the file system, this command is equivalent to the **rm** command. If you specify a raw disk partition, GemStone metadata in the partition is overwritten so that GemStone will no longer think there is a repository file on the partition.

This command does not disconnect an extent from the logical repository. To alter the configuration by disconnecting an existing extent, see "How to Remove an Extent" on page 183.

The options for this command generally are not needed for a standard GemStone configuration.

startcachewarmer

startcachewarmer	[-**d** | -**D**] [-**h**] [-**l***limit*] [-**L***path*] [-**n***numGems*] [-**p***password*] [-**s***stone*][-**T***int*][-**u***userID*] [-**w***delayTime*] [-**W**]
-**d**	Reads data pages into the cache (default: only object table pages are read).
-**D**	Reads data pages into the UNIX file buffer cache and not the shared page cache.
-**h**	Displays a usage line and exits.
-**L***path*	Path to a writable log file directory (default: current directory)
-**l***limit*	Stops cache warming if the number of free frames in the cache falls below the specified *limit*. If *limit* is -1 (the default), have the system compute the actual limit based on the size of the shared cache. If *limit* is 0, force cache warming to continue even if the shared cache is full.
-**n***numGems*	Number of Gem sessions to start (default: 1).
-**p***password*	GemStone password for logging in Gems (default: 'swordfish').
-**s***stone*	Name of the running Stone (default: `gs64stone`).
-**T***int*	Sets the Temporary Object Cache size that will be used by the cache warmer Gems. (default: 5 MB).
-**u***userID*	GemStone user for logging in Gems (default: 'DataCurator').
-**w***delayTime*	Wait *delayTime* seconds between spawning Gems (default: 1)
-**W**	Wait for cache warming Gems to exit before exiting this script. By default, this script spawns Gems in the background and exits immediately.

The **startcachewarmer** command warms up the shared page cache on startup, by preloading object and data tables into the cache. This allows the overhead of initial page loading to occur in a controlled way on system startup, rather than more gradually as the repository is in use.

Cache warming runs in one or two phases:

- In the first phase, the object table is loaded into the shared page cache. During this phase, if any data pages will be loaded later, the data pages that are referenced by the object table lookups are recorded for use in phase 2.

- In the second phase, data pages remembered from the first phase are loaded either into the shared page cache or the file buffer. This phase runs only if data pages will be loaded into the shared page cache or the file buffer.

startnetldi

startnetldi	[*netLdiName*] [-**l***logFile*] [-**t***timeout*] [-**a***name*] [-**p***low***:***high*] [-**n**] [-**g** | -**s**] [-**d**] [-**h**]
netLdiName	The name or port number of the GemStone network server. If *netLdiName* is a numeric value equal to or less than 65535, it is interpreted as a port number. If th given port is in use, it will result in an error. Other values are interpreted as the netldi name. Network resource syntax is not permitted. The default is gs64ldi.
-**l***logFile*	The logged output of the NetLDI; the default is /opt/gemstone/log/*NetLdiName*.log
-**t***timeout*	Seconds to wait for a spawned client to start, such as a Gem; default is 120 seconds.
-**a***name*	Captive account; all child processes created by the NetLDI will belong to the account named *name*. By default, child processes belong to the client's account.
-**p***low***:***high*	The low and high ports in the pool of ports to use in creating processes.
-**n**	Do not create any *ad hoc* processes (ad hoc processes are ones not listed in $GEMSTONE/bin/services.dat).
-**g**	Guest mode; no accesses are authenticated. This option is not allowed if the NetLDI's effective user id is the root account.
-**s**	Secure; require authentication for **all** NetLDI accesses.
-**d**	Debug mode; inserts more extensive messages in the log file.
-**h**	Displays a usage line and exits.

This command starts a GemStone network server with the specified *netLdiName* and *timeout* (given in seconds). The server spawns GemStone processes in response to login requests from remote applications and requests for remote repository access from Stone repository monitor processes. On slow or heavily loaded machines, use a larger timeout value, typically 300 seconds.

To start the NetLDI for password authentication, make sure that
$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid is owned by root and has the S bit set. Issue this
command (on some operating systems, you may have to issue it as root):

% **startnetldi**

To start the NetLDI in guest mode (authentication is not required), make sure
$GEMSTONE/sys/netldid does NOT have the S bit set. Log in as the captive
account *name*, then issue this command:

% **startnetldi -g -a***name*

For information about authentication modes, see "How to Arrange Network
Security" on page 73.

For assistance with startup failures, refer to "To Troubleshoot NetLDI Startup
Failures" on page 107.

startstone

startstone	[*gemStoneName*] [-**l***logFile*] [-**e***exeConfig*] [-**z***systemConfig*] [-**h**] [-**R**] [-**N**] [-**s**]
gemStoneName	Name of the GemStone repository monitor, default is gs64stone. Network resource syntax is not permitted.
-**l***logFile*	The location (or filename) for the logged output of the stone; the default is (1) the setting of the GEMSTONE_LOG environment variable, if defined; (2) $GEMSTONE/data/*gemStoneName*.log
-**e***exeConfig*	The GemStone executable-dependent configuration file (see page 371).
-**z***systemConfig*	The GemStone system configuration file (see page 368).
-**h**	Displays a usage line and exits.
-**R**	Start up from the most recent checkpoint and go into restore-from-transaction-logs state. This option should be used only for recovery using operating system backups.
-**N**	Do not replay transaction logs as part of startup. Unless used with the -**R** option, and transaction logs are replayed manually, work may be lost.
-**s**	Linux only; disable use of the POSIX AIO library, libposix-aio.so, and use librt.so instead. Use of this option will result in slower performance.

This command opens the GemStone repository specified by the relevant configuration files. The three arguments *gemStoneName*, -**e***exeConfig*, and -**z***systemConfig* determine which configuration files **startstone** reads. (For more information, see "How GemStone Uses Configuration Files" on page 368.)

The options for this command generally are not needed for a standard GemStone configuration.

The -**N** option is intended for use when the repository needs recovery, but the transaction logs specified in the configuration file cannot be found or have become corrupted. In such case, -**N** forces the repository to start up anyway, even though transactions committed since the last checkpoint will be lost.

You can use the -**N** option to start a Stone if the transaction files have been lost or corrupted, but the extents are still available. A new transaction log will be initialized as part of the startup.

The -**R** option is intended for use when the repository is restored by starting GemStone on an operating system backup of the extents. The repository monitor is left in a state equivalent to that following restoration of a GemStone backup. You must then invoke Topaz to restore from transaction logs (if available) and commit the restored state. If the extents against which Stone is being started require recovery, or if you are restoring from online extent backups, then you must specify the -**N** option along with the -**R** option; otherwise, an error will result and the repository monitor will not start.

For assistance with startup failures, refer to "To Troubleshoot Stone Startup Failures" on page 101.

stopnetldi

stopnetldi	[*netLdiName*] [-**h**]
netLdiName	The name of the GemStone network server; the default is `gs64ldi`. Network resource syntax is not permitted.
-**h**	Displays a usage line and exits.

Gracefully stop a GemStone network server. The argument to this command is optional, and are not needed for a standard GemStone configuration.

stopstone

stopstone	[*gemStoneName* [*gemStoneUserName* [*gemStonePassword*]]] [-**i**] [-**h**]
gemStoneName	The name of the GemStone repository monitor, commonly `gs64stone`. Network resource syntax is not permitted.
gemStoneUserName	A privileged GemStone user account name, such as "DataCurator" or "SystemUser".
gemStonePassword	The GemStone password for the specified *gemStoneUserName*.
-**i**	Causes any current GemStone sessions to be terminated immediately.
-**h**	Displays a usage line and exits.

Gracefully shut down a GemStone repository monitor. In the process, a checkpoint is performed in which all committed transactions are written to the extents and to any replicates. If you specify the -**i** (immediate) option, the repository monitor is shut down even if there are GemStone users logged in. If you do not supply the *gemStoneName*, *gemStoneUserName*, and *gemStonePassword* on the command line, this command will prompt you for them.

Because this command uses a Gem session process to connect to *gemStoneName*, it fails if the Gem is unable to connect for any reason, such as inability to attach a shared page cache. For assistance, refer to "To Troubleshoot Session Login Failures" on page 112.

topaz

topaz [-**r**]	[-**i**] [-**n**_netLdiName_] [-**q**] [-**I**_topazini_] [-**h**]
topaz -**l**	[-**i**] [-**n**_netLdiName_] [-**e**_exeConfig_] [-**z**_systemConfig_] [-**T**_tocSizeKB_] [-**q**] [-**I**_topazini_] [-**h**]
-**e**_exeConfig_	The GemStone executable-dependent configuration file (applies only to linked sessions). See page 371.
-**h**	Displays a usage line and exits
-**i**	Ignore the initialization file, `.topazini`.
-**I**_topazini_	Specify a complete path and file to a topazini initialization files, and use this rather then any `.topazini` in the default location.
-**l**	Invoke the linked version of Topaz.
-**n** _netLdiName_	The name of the GemStone network server; the default is (1) the setting of the `GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL` environment variable; (2) `gs64ldi`
-**q**	Start Topaz in quiet mode, suppressing printout of the banner and other information.
-**r**	Invoke the RPC (remote procedure call) version of Topaz.
-**T**_tocSizeKB_	The GEM_TEMPOBJ_CACHE_SIZE that will be used. Overrides any settings provided in configuration files passed as arguments with the -**e** or -**z** options. Only applies to linked sessions.
-**z**_systemConfig_	The GemStone system configuration file (applies only to linked sessions). See page 368.

This command invokes various forms of Topaz. The default is to invoke the remote procedure call (RPC) version of Topaz. The arguments -**e**_exeConfig_ and -**z**_systemConfig_ determine the configuration files that **topaz** -**l** reads. For more information about this, see "How GemStone Uses Configuration Files" on page 368.

The arguments to this command are optional, and are not needed for a standard invocation of Topaz. For further information, see the *GemStone Topaz Programming Environment*.

waitstone

waitstone	[*gemStoneName* | *netLdiName*] [*timeout*]
gemStoneName	The name of the GemStone repository monitor, commonly `gs64stone`.
netLdiName	The name of the GemStone network server, commonly `gs64ldi`.
timeout	How many minutes to wait for GemStone to initialize before reporting a problem. The default (0) means wait forever; -1 means don't wait, try once and return the result.

This command reports whether the GemStone repository *gemStoneName* is ready to accept logins or whether *netLdiName* is ready to accept requests. During the first 10 seconds, waitstone tests every two seconds to see if the Stone or NetLDI is ready; thereafter, a new connection is attempted once every 10 seconds. When the service is ready, **waitstone** issues a message to `stdout`. If the service is not ready by the time the specified number of minutes have elapsed, **waitstone** reports an error.

You may specify the *gemStoneName* and *netLdiName* arguments as a GemStone network resource string. (See Appendix C, "Network Resource String Syntax.")

This command returns 0 exit status if the operation is successful; otherwise, it returns a non-zero value.

waitstone does not have a `help` argument, but you can type:

```
man waitstone
```

to display the online manual page.

Network Resource String Syntax

This appendix describes the syntax for network resource strings. A network resource string (NRS) provides a means for uniquely identifying a GemStone file or process by specifying its location on the network, its type, and authorization information. GemStone utilities use network resource strings to request services from a NetLDI.

Overview

One common application of NRS strings is the specification of login parameters for a remote process (RPC) GemStone application. An RPC login typically requires you to specify a GemStone repository monitor and a Gem service on a remote server, using NRS strings that include the remote server's hostname. For example, to log in from Topaz to a Stone process called "gs64stone" running on node "handel", you would specify two NRS strings:

```
topaz> set gemstone !@handel!gs64stone
topaz> set gemnetid !@handel!gemnetobject
```

Many GemStone processes use network resource strings, so the strings show up in places where command arguments are recorded, such as the GemStone log file. Looking at log messages will show you the way an NRS works. For example:

```
Opening transaction log file for read,
filename = !tcp@oboe#dbf!/user1/gemstone/data/tranlog0.dbf
```

An NRS can contain spaces and special characters. On heterogeneous network systems, you need to keep in mind that the various UNIX shells have their own rules for interpreting these characters. If you have a problem getting a command to work with an NRS as part of the command line, check the syntax of the NRS recorded in the log file. It may be that the shell didn't expand the string as you expected.

NOTE
Before you begin using network resource strings, make sure you
understand the behavior of the software that will process the command.

See each operating system's documentation for a full discussion of its own rules about escaping certain characters in NRS strings that are entered at a command prompt.

If there is a space in the NRS, you can replace the space with a colon (:), or you can enclose the string in quotes (" "). For example, the following network resource strings are equivalent:

```
% waitstone !tcp@oboe#auth:user@password!gs64stone
% waitstone "!tcp@oboe#auth user@password!gs64stone"
```

Defaults

The following items uniquely identify a network resource:

*   Communications protocol— such as TCP/IP

*   Destination node—the host that has the resource

*   Authentication of the user—such as a system authorization code

*   Resource type—such as server, database extent, or task

*   Environment—such as a NetLDI, a directory, or the name of a log file

*   Resource name—the name of the specific resource being requested.

A network resource string can include some or all of this information. In most cases, you need not fill in all of the fields in a network resource string. The

information required depends upon the nature of the utility being executed and the task to be accomplished. Most GemStone utilities provide some context-sensitive defaults. For example, the Topaz interface prefixes the name of a Stone process with the **#server** resource identifier.

When a utility needs a value for which it does not have a built-in default, it relies on the system-wide defaults described in the syntax productions in "Syntax" on page 434. You can supply your own default values for NRS modifiers by defining an environment variable named GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL in the form of the *nrs-header* production described in the Syntax section. If GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL defines a value for the desired field, that value is used in place of the system default. (There can be no meaningful default value for "resource name.")

A GemStone utility picks up the value of GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL as it is defined when the utility is started. Subsequent changes to the environment variable are not reflected in the behavior of an already-running utility.

When a client utility submits a request to a NetLDI, the utility uses its own defaults and those gleaned from its environment to build the NRS. After the NRS is submitted to it, the NetLDI then applies additional defaults if needed. Values submitted by the client utility take precedence over those provided by the NetLDI.

Notation

Terminal symbols are printed in boldface. They appear in a network resource string as written:

> **#server**

Nonterminal symbols are printed in italics. They are defined in terms of terminal symbols and other nonterminal symbols:

> *username* ::= *nrs-identifier*

Items enclosed in square brackets are optional. When they appear, they can appear only one time:

> *address-modifier* ::= [*protocol*] [**@** *node*]

Items enclosed in curly braces are also optional. When they appear, they can appear more than once:

> *nrs-header* ::= **!** [*address-modifier*] {*keyword-modifier*} **!**

Parentheses and vertical bars denote multiple options. Any single item on the list can be chosen:

protocol ::= (**tcp** | **serial** | **default**)

Syntax

nrs ::= [*nrs-header*] *nrs-body*

where:

nrs-header ::= **!** [*address-modifier*] {*keyword-modifier*} [*resource-modifier*]**!**
All modifiers are optional, and defaults apply if a modifier is omitted. The value of an environment variable can be placed in an NRS by preceding the name of the variable with "$". If the name needs to be followed by alphanumeric text, then it can be bracketed by "{" and "}". If an environment variable named foo exists, then either of the following will cause it to be expanded: $foo or ${foo}. Environment variables are only expanded in the *nrs-header*. The *nrs-body* is never parsed.

address-modifier ::= [*protocol*] [**@** *node*]
Specifies where the network resource is.

protocol ::= (**tcp** | **serial** | **default**)
Supports heterogeneous connections by predicating address on a network type. If no protocol is specified, GCI_NET_DEFAULT_PROTOCOL is used. On UNIX hosts, this default is **tcp**.

node ::= *nrs-identifier*
If no node is specified, the current machine's network node name is used. The identifier may also be an Internet-style numeric address. For example:

```
!tcp@120.0.0.4#server!cornerstone
```

nrs-identifier ::= *identifier*
Identifiers are runs of characters; the special characters !, #, $, @, ^ and white space (blank, tab, newline) must be preceded by a "^". Identifiers are words in the UNIX sense.

keyword-modifier ::= (*authorization-modifier* | *environment-modifier*)
Keyword modifiers may be given in any order. If a keyword modifier is specified more than once, the latter replaces the former. If a keyword modifier takes an argument, then the keyword may be separated from the argument by a space or a colon.

authorization-modifier ::= ((**#auth** | **#encrypted**) [**:**] *username* [**@** *password*])
   #auth specifies a valid user on the target network. A valid password is needed
   only if the resource type requires authentication. **#encrypted** is used by
   GemStone utilities. If no authentication information is specified, the system
   will try to get it from the .netrc file. This type of authorization is the default.

username ::= *nrs-identifier*
   If no user name is specified, the default is the current user.
   (See the earlier discussion of *nrs-identifier*.)

password ::= *nrs-identifier*
   If no password is specified, the system will try to obtain it from the user's
   .netrc file. (See the earlier discussion of *nrs-identifier*.)

environment-modifier ::= (**#netldi** | **#dir** | **#log**) [**:**] *nrs-identifier*

   #netldi causes the named NetLDI to be used to service the request. If no
   NetLDI is specified, the default is gs64ldi. When you specify the **#netldi**
   option, the *nrs-identifier* (page 434) is either the name of a NetLDI service or the
   port number at which a NetLDI is running.

   #dir sets the default directory of the network resource. It has no effect if the
   resource already exists. If a directory is not set, the pattern "%H" (home
   directory) is used. (See the definition of *nrs-identifier* on page 434.)

   #log sets the name of the log file of the network resource. It has no effect if the
   resource already exists. If the log name is a relative path, it is relative to the
   working directory. If a log name is not set, the pattern "%N%P%M.log"
   (defined below) is used. (See the definition of *nrs-identifier* on page 434.)

   The argument to **#dir** or **#log** can contain patterns that are expanded in the
   context of the created resource. The following patterns are supported:
   %H   home directory
   %M   machine's network node name
   %N   executable's base name
   %P   process pid
   %U   user name
   %%   %

resource-modifier ::= (**#server** | **#spawn** | **#task** | **#dbf** | **#monitor** | **#file**)
   Identifies the intended purpose of the string in the *nrs-body*. An NRS can
   contain only one resource modifier. The default resource modifier is context
   sensitive. For instance, if the system expects an NRS for a database file, then
   the default is **#dbf**.

#server directs the NetLDI to search for the network address of a server, such as a Stone or another NetLDI. If successful, it returns the address. The *nrs-body* is a network server name. A successful lookup means only that the service has been defined; it does not indicate whether the service is currently running. A new process will not be started. (Authorization is needed only if the NetLDI is on a remote node and is running in secure mode.)

#task starts a new Gem. The *nrs-body* is a NetLDI service name (such as "gemnetobject"), followed by arguments to the command line. The NetLDI creates the named service by looking first for an entry in $GEMSTONE/bin/services.dat, and then in the user's home directory for an executable having that name. The NetLDI returns the network address of the service. (Authorization is needed to create a new process unless the NetLDI is in guest mode.) The **#task** resource modifier is also used internally to create page servers.

#dbf is used to access a database file. The *nrs-body* is the file spec of a GemStone database file. The NetLDI creates a page server on the given node to access the database and returns the network address of the page server. (Authorization is needed unless the NetLDI is in guest mode).

#spawn is used internally to start the garbage collection and other service Gem processes.

#monitor is used internally to start up a shared page cache monitor.

#file means the *nrs-body* is the file spec of a file on the given host (not currently implemented).

nrs-body ::= unformatted text, to end of string
    The *nrs-body* is interpreted according to the context established by the *resource-modifier*. No extended identifier expansion is done in the *nrs-body*, and no special escapes are needed.

GemStone Kernel Objects

This appendix describes the predefined objects that are located in a freshly installed GemStone/S 64 Bit repository.

Users

The AllUsers object, an instance of UserProfileSet, contains the UserProfile objects of the users that are known to the repository. Initially, it has the following elements: **SystemUser**, **DataCurator**, **GcUser**, **SymbolUser**, and **Nameless**. *You must never delete these users.*

The **SystemUser** UserProfile is ordinarily used only for performing GemStone system upgrades. Certain system objects — including the GemStone-supplied kernel classes, along with their methods and class variables — are owned by the SystemUser and are stored in the System Segment. (That Segment also contains all instances of classes Character and SmallInteger.)

<div align="center">

CAUTION
Logging in to GemStone as SystemUser is like logging in to your
workstation as root — an accidental modification to a kernel object can
cause a great deal of harm. Use the DataCurator account for system

</div>

*administration operations except those that **require** SystemUser privileges, such as upgrade and full restores.*

The **DataCurator** UserProfile is used to perform the data curator tasks described in the this manual. Most of the predefined GemStone objects listed in this section are owned by the DataCurator and are stored in the DataCurator Segment.

The **GcUser** UserProfile is used to control GemStone's garbage collection tasks. A person does not normally log into GemStone as **GcUser**. **GcUser** initially has only the GarbageCollection privilege. Its UserGlobals dictionary contains the parameters that control garbage collection.

The **SymbolUser** UserProfile is used to run a background SymbolGem process that creates all new Symbols, based on session requests that are managed by the Stone. A person does not normally log into GemStone as **SymbolUser**. SymbolUser initially has only the GarbageCollection privilege. Its UserGlobals dictionary contains the collection AllSymbols.

The **Nameless** UserProfile is for use only by other GemStone products. Do not use this account or change it unless instructed to do so by GemStone.

Dictionaries

UserGlobals. Each UserProfile object contains a symbol list, an Array of SymbolDictionaries that initialize a session so that it can resolve symbols at compile-time. The first element in the symbol list is always the SymbolDictionary UserGlobals, which initially contains two keys: #UserGlobals (corresponding to the dictionary itself) and #NativeLanguage (initially English). Each user's UserGlobals dictionary is stored in that user's default Segment.

Globals. This SymbolDictionary defines the GemStone kernel classes and any other objects to which all GemStone users may need to refer. Table D.1 (on page 442) lists the contents of this dictionary. For information about the kernel classes, see the class comments in the image. The Globals dictionary is stored in the DataCurator Segment.

Published. This SymbolDictionary can be used to share objects among users. The Published dictionary is primarily an example, so it provides minimal object deployment capability. The Published dictionary is stored in the Published Segment.

Non-Numeric Constants

The following non-numeric constants are defined in the Globals dictionary and stored in the System Segment:

- **true** (an instance of Boolean)

- **false** (an instance of Boolean)

- **nil** (an instance of UndefinedObject)

Numeric Constants

Floating point constants are instances of class Float or class DecimalFloat. They are defined in the Globals dictionary and are stored in the System Segment. Refer to IEEE standards 754-1987 and 854-1987 for more information regarding their meanings in floating-point calculations.

> **DecimalPlusInfinity**
> **DecimalMinusInfinity**
> **DecimalPlusQuietNaN**
> **DecimalMinusQuietNaN**
> **DecimalPlusSignalingNaN**
> **DecimalMinusSignalingNaN**
> **PlusInfinity**
> **MinusInfinity**
> **PlusQuietNaN**
> **MinusQuietNaN**
> **PlusSignalingNaN**
> **MinusSignalingNaN**

Repository and Segments

SystemRepository. This Repository is defined in the Globals dictionary. The SystemRepository object itself is stored in the DataCurator Segment, and its indexable part contains references to all GemStone Segments.

GemStone represents all the disk space it uses as a single instance of class Repository. When GemStone is first installed, that Repository has the name SystemRepository. (The GemStone Smalltalk message name: can be used to subsequently change the name of the system Repository.) The SystemRepository object initially contains eight segments, three of which are

public and named: the SystemSegment (owned by the SystemUser), the DataCuratorSegment (owned by the DataCurator), and the PublishedSegment (owned by SystemUser). New Segments may be created (added to the SystemRepository object) when new users are added.

SystemSegment. This Segment is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is referenced from the indexable part of the SystemRepository. The SystemSegment object itself is stored in the DataCurator Segment.

The SystemSegment is the default Segment for its owner, the SystemUser (who has write authorization for any of the objects in this Segment). The "world" (that is, the set of all GemStone users) is authorized to read, but not write, the objects in this Segment. In addition, the group #System is authorized to write in this Segment.

DataCuratorSegment. This Segment is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is referenced from the indexable part of the SystemRepository. The DataCuratorSegment object itself is stored in the DataCurator Segment.

The DataCuratorSegment is the default Segment for its owner, the DataCurator (who has write authorization for any of the objects in this Segment). The "world" (that is, the set of all GemStone users) is authorized to read, but not write, the objects in this Segment. In addition, the #DataCuratorGroup is are authorized to write in this Segment.

Objects in the DataCuratorSegment include the Globals dictionary, the SystemRepository object, most Segment objects, AllUsers (the set of all GemStone UserProfiles), AllGroups (the collection of groups authorized to read and write objects in GemStone segments), and each UserProfile object.

PublishedSegment. This Segment is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is referenced from the indexable part of the SystemRepository. The PublishedSegment object itself is stored in the DataCurator Segment.

The PublishedSegment is owned by the SystemUser. The group #Subscribers is authorized to read in this Segment. The group #Publishers is authorized to read and write in this segment. The "world" is not authorized to read or write the objects in this Segment.

DbfHistory. DbfHistory is a String object that contains information regarding conversions and updates applied to the repository.

NativeLanguage. This Symbol is defined in the Globals dictionary (with an initial value of #English), and may be redefined in each user's UserGlobals directory. The NativeLanguage object permits GemStone to return error messages and

other interactive messages in any of the supported languages. (Initially, only English is supported.)

Global Collections

AllGroups. This CanonicalStringDictionary is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is stored in the DataCurator Segment. Each Symbol in AllGroups corresponds to a group of users. When GemStone is first installed, AllGroups contains the symbols #System, #Publishers, #Subscribers, and #DataCuratorGroup.

AllUsers. The AllUsers object (a UserProfileSet) is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is stored in the DataCurator Segment. AllUsers contains the UserProfiles of all GemStone users. When GemStone is first installed, AllUsers contains five UserProfiles: SystemUser, DataCurator, GcUser, SymbolUser, and Nameless.

AllClusterBuckets. This ClusterBucketArray is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is stored in the DataCurator Segment. Each Symbol in AllClusterBuckets corresponds to a cluster bucket, which organizes a physical storage specification for a group of objects. When GemStone is first installed, AllClusterBuckets contains symbols for the following predefined cluster buckets (listed by cluster id):

1. A generic bucket whose extent is "don't care". This bucket, the current default after session login, is invariant and may not be modified. Making this bucket invariant increases the fault tolerance of the system, and facilitates both building the kernel and repository conversion.

2. A generic bucket whose extent is "don't care".

3. A generic bucket whose extent is "don't care".

4. The kernel classes "behaviorBucket", extent 1.

5. The kernel classes "descriptionBucket", extent 1.

6. The kernel classes "otherBucket", extent 1.

7. A generic bucket whose extent is "don't care".

ConfigurationParameterDict. This SymbolKeyValueDictionary is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is stored in the System Segment. Its keys list the names of the configuration parameters available to a session. Its values are only used internally in GemStone, to locate the values of the parameters themselves for an individual session.

ErrorSymbols. This SymbolDictionary is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is stored in the System Segment. It maps mnemonic symbols to error numbers.

GemStoneError. This SymbolDictionary is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is stored in the DataCurator Segment. Each key is a Symbol representing a native language, and is associated with an Array of error messages in that language. Initially, this dictionary contains the single key #English.

InstancesDisallowed. This IdentitySet is defined in the Globals dictionary, and is stored in the System Segment. It is a collection of the GemStone classes for which you cannot create instances. Some of these classes (like System) have no instances at all, for others all possible instance already exist (like Boolean).

Table D.1   Initial Contents of the Globals Dictionary

	Key	**The object's class**
Numeric Constants	#DecimalMinusInfinity	DecimalFloat
	#DecimalMinusQuietNaN	DecimalFloat
	#DecimalMinusSignalingNaN	DecimalFloat
	#DecimalPlusInfinity	DecimalFloat
	#DecimalPlusQuietNaN	DecimalFloat
	#DecimalPlusSignalingNaN	DecimalFloat
	#MinusInfinity	Float
	#MinusQuietNaN	Float
	#MinusSignalingNaN	Float
	#PlusInfinity	Float
	#PlusQuietNaN	Float
	#PlusSignalingNaN	Float
Non-Numeric Constants	#false	Boolean
	#nil	UndefinedObject
	#true	Boolean
Repository and Segments	#DataCuratorSegment	Segment
	#DbfHistory	String
	#MinutesFromGMT	SmallInteger
	#NativeLanguage	Symbol
	#PublishedSegment	Segment
	#SystemRepository	Repository
	#SystemSegment	Segment

Table D.1   Initial Contents of the Globals Dictionary (Continued)

	Key	The object's class
Collections	#AllClusterBuckets	ClusterBucketArray
	#AllGroups	CanonicalStringDictionary
	#AllUsers	UserProfileSet
	#ConfigurationParameterDict	SymbolKeyValueDictionary
	#ErrorSymbols	SymbolDictionary
	#GemStoneError	SymbolDictionary
	#Globals	SymbolDictionary
	#InstancesDisallowed	IdentitySet
GemStone Internal Objects	#ANSIException	SymbolDictionary
	#AsciiCollatingTable	ByteArray
	#ConversionReservedOopMap	Array
	#ConversionStatus	Array
	#DoubleByteAsciiCollatingTable	DoubleByteString
	#GcCandidates	RcQueue
	#GcCandidatesCount	RcCounter
	#GcHints	UndefinedObject
	#GcWeakReferences	Array
	#GemStoneRCLock	Object
	#GsIndexingSegment	Segment
	#ImageVersion	SymbolDictionary
	#OldAllUsers	AbstractUserProfileSet
	#RcBtreeNode	UndefinedObject
	#_remoteNil	UndefinedObject
	#SecurityDataSegment	Segment
	#SharedDependencyLists	DepListTable
	#VersionParameterDict	SymbolKeyValueDictionary
plus all kernel classes		

Current TimeZone

Each instance of DateTime includes a reference to a TimeZone object, which handles the conversion from the internally stored Greenwich Mean Time (GMT, also referred to as UTC or Coordinated Universal Time) and the local time.

TimeZones encapsulate the daylight savings time (DST) rules, so a given GMT time is adjusted to local time based on TimeZone and the specific date. TimeZones are also used to calculate the internal stored GMT for newly created DateTime instances.

Each session has a current TimeZone and a default TimeZone, which are used to display times, and in DateTime creation when methods that do not explicitly specify the TimeZone are used. These must be installed as part of application installation or configuration. This is described in the *GemStone/S 64 Bit Installation Guide*.

GemStone uses the public domain **zoneinfo** database to create TimeZone, loading the information from platform and language independent source files. If the rules change for the TimeZone that your application uses, you must recreate the TimeZone instance from the source files. Depending on the nature of the rules change, you may also need to update references from DateTime instances to the new TimeZone instance, or possibly update the DateTime internal offsets.

There are a number of ways to create TimeZone instances for your application:

- **From the OS on Solaris or Linux**. On these operating systems, you can create the TimeZone instance based on the current machine configuration using:

  ```
  newTZ := TimeZone fromOS
  ```

- **GemStone's time zone database.** Using the interactive script `tzselect`, you can determine the correct time zone descriptor name for your local time zone. With this, you can create the new TimeZone instance using the time zone database provided with GemStone.

  ```
  newTZ := TimeZone fromGemPath: '$GEMSTONE/pub/timezone/etc/
  zoneinfo/Europe/Zurich'
  ```

- **Your own time zone database**. With the time zone descriptor name for your TimeZone, you can specify the full path to the time zone information.

  ```
  newTZ := TimeZone fromGemPath: yourPath, '/Europe/Zurich'.
  ```

You must then install this TimeZone instances as the current and default time zone.

Zoneinfo

The widely used public-domain time zone database, **ZoneInfo** or **tz**, contains code and data that records time zone information for locations worldwide. It is updated periodically when boundaries or rules change in any of the represented locations.

Each record in the tz database represents a location where all clocks are kept on the same time as each other throughout the year, coordinating any time adjustments such as DST, and have done so for many years. Locations are identified by continent (or ocean, for islands) and name, which is usually the largest city within the region. For example, America/Los_Angeles, Europe/London, etc.

tz is provided as text files, which may be compiled into binary files using tz's compilers. GemStone's TimeZone implementation uses the compiled binary form, which is also used by the Solaris and Linux operating systems. To get updated source files, download from

```
ftp://elsie.nci.nih.gov/pub/tzdata*.tar.gz
```

Shipped files are based on `tzdata2006p.tar.gz`. The timezone sources in this file may be compiled using the zic timezone compiler, which GemStone provides as a convenience (see "zic" on page 446).

Utilities

tzselect, **zdump** and **zic** are public domain, open source utilities that are useful in working with the zoneinfo database. These utilities are provided with the Solaris and Linux operating systems; for the convenience of users on other operating systems, these utilities are provided along with the other zoneinfo database files. Note that these are not GemStone utilities, and support for these is not provided by GemStone.

You may download the source code for these utilities here:

```
ftp://elsie.nci.nih.gov/pub/tzcode*.tar.gz
```

Shipped files are based on `tzcode2006p.tar.gz`. Documentation for these utilities is provided as man pages. To read the man pages, add the directory $GEMSTONE/pub/timezone/man to the MANPATH.

To run these, you may wish to add $GEMSTONE/pub/timezone/etc to the executable path.

tzselect

tzselect allows to you interactively select a time zone. The interactive script asks you a series of questions about the current location and outputs the resulting time zone description to standard output. The output is suitable as a value for the TZ environment variable and GemStone scripts.

You may need to set the environment variable $TZDIR to $GEMSTONE/pub/timezone/etc/zoneinfo (or the path to your zoneinfo

database, for this script to work correctly. You may also need to set the environment variable $AWK, to any POSIX compliant awk program.

For further details on using tzselect see the man page.

zdump

```
zdump [-v] [-c cutoffyear] [zonename...]
```

zdump prints time zone information. It prints the current time for each time zone (zonename) listed on the command line.

Specifying an invalid zone name to zdump does NOT return an error; instead, it returns the zdump output for GMT. This reflects the same behavior of the time routines in libc.

The -v option will display the entire contents of the time zone database for the given time zone name.

For further details on using zdump, including the command line options, see the man page.

zic

```
zic [-s] [-v] [-l localtime] [-p posixrules]   [-d directory]
[-y yearistype] [filename...]
```

zic compiles time zone source files. It reads input text in files named on the command line, and creates the time zone binary files.

To create files in a specific location, rather than the standard platform directory (on Solaris, /usr/share/lib/zoneinfo), use the -d *directory* option.

For example, to recompile sources on Solaris to the GemStone timezone database, execute the following:

```
zic -d $GEMSTONE/pub/timezone/etc/zoneinfo/
/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo/src/northamerica
```

For further details on using zic, including the command line options and the structure of the source code files, see the man page for zic.

Environment Variables

This appendix lists the environment variables used by GemStone/S 64 Bit. The list has two parts: variables intended for public use, and variables that are reserved for internal use.

Public Environment Variables

The following environment variables are intended for use by customers. The variable GEMSTONE is required; the others may be useful in particular situations.

GEMSTONE

    The location of the GemStone Object Server software, which must be a full path, beginning with a slash, such as `/user3/GemStone-hppa.hpux`.

GEMSTONE_ADMIN_GC_LOG_DIR

    The directory location for Admin GcGem logs. By default, Admin GcGem log files are created in the same directory as the Stone log, which is $GEMSTONE/data. You can set this environment variable to specify that Admin GcGem log files are created in a different directory.

GEMSTONE_CHILD_LOG

    Used by parent process to tell child process the name of its log file. To keep the child's log from being deleted when the process terminates normally, unset

this variable in the appropriate script, such as
`$GEMSTONE/sys/gemnetobject`.

GS_DISABLE_SIGNAL_HANDLERS
>   When this environment variable is set, gems that encounter a SIGSEGV,
>   SIGBUS or SIGILL signal do not attempt to handle it. The session will
>   immediately exit, without printing stacks to its log and without generating a
>   core file.

GEMSTONE_EXE_CONF
>   The location of an executable-dependent configuration file; see "Creating an
>   Executable Configuration File" on page 372.

GEMSTONE_GLOBAL_DIR
>   The location for the global GemStone logs and locks file, overriding the default
>   /opt/gemstone/. This directory specifed in this envionrment variable must
>   already exist, and must be the same for all processes related to a given
>   repository, including stone, gems, topaz, statmonitor, netldi, etc.

GEMSTONE_LOG
>   The location of system log files for the Stone repository monitor and its child
>   processes. For further information, see "GemStone System Logs" on page 208.

GEMSTONE_MAX_FD
>   Limits the number of file descriptors requested by a GemStone process. For
>   further information, see "Estimating File Descriptor Needs" on page 13.

GEMSTONE_NRS_ALL
>   Sets a number of network-related defaults, including the type of user
>   authentication that GemStone expects. For further information, see "To Set a
>   Default NRS" on page 79.

GEMSTONE_PAGE_MGR_LOG_DIR
>   The directory location for Page Manager Gem logs. By default, Page Manager
>   Gem log files are created in the same directory as the Stone log, which is
> $GEMSTONE/data. You can set this environment variable to specify that Page
>   Manager Gem log files are created in a different directory.

GEMSTONE_RECLAIM_GC_LOG_DIR
>   The directory location for all Reclaim GcGem logs. By default, Reclaim GcGem
>   log files are created in the same directory as the Stone log, which is
> $GEMSTONE/data. You can set this environment variable to specify that
>   Reclaim GcGem log files are created in a different directory.

GEMSTONE_SYMBOL_GEM_LOG_DIR
>   The directory location for SymbolGem logs. By default, Symbol Gem log files

are created in the same directory as the Stone log, which is
$GEMSTONE/data. You can set this environment variable to specify that
Symbol Gem log files are created in a different directory.

GEMSTONE_SYS_CONF
> Location of a system-wide configuration file; see "How GemStone Uses
> Configuration Files" on page 368.

GS_CORE_TIME_OUT
> If GS_WRITE_CORE_FILE is defined, this is the number of seconds to wait
> before a catastrophically failing GemStone/S process writes a core file and
> terminates—by default, 60 seconds. To determine the cause of a problem,
> GemStone/S Technical Support needs a stack trace, which is usually written
> to the process log file prior to the process shutdown.
>
> If you need to derive a stack trace directly from a failing (but not yet
> terminated) process by attaching a debugger to it, you can set this variable to
> increase the time available to attach the debugger.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_MKSW_MEMORY_USED_SOFT_BREAK
> At the end of each mark/sweep, if the percent of memory used is greater than
> the threshold specified by this variable, a SoftBreak (error 6003) is generated,
> and the threshold is raised by 5 percent. We suggest a setting of 75%.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_MKSW_PRINT_STACK
> The mark/sweep count at which to begin printing the Smalltalk stack at each
> mark/sweep.
>
> For this and all other GS_DEBUG_VMGC_* environment variables, the
> printout goes to the "output push" file of a linkable Topaz (topaz -l) session, for
> use in testing your application. If that file is not defined, the printouts go to
> standard output of the session's gem or topaz -l process.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_MKSW_PRINT_C_STACK
> The mark/sweep count at which to begin printing the C stack at each
> mark/sweep. This variable is very expensive, consuming 2 seconds plus the
> cost of fork() for each printout.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_MKSW
> The mark/sweep count at which to begin printing mark/sweeps.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_MKSW_MEMORY
> The mark/sweep count at which to begin printing detailed memory usage (20
> lines) for each mark/sweep.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_MKSW_MEMORY_USED
> Specifies when Smalltalk stack printing starts as the application approaches

OutOfMemory conditions. At the end of each mark/sweep, if the percent of memory used is greater than the threshold specified by this variable, the mark/sweep is printed, the Smalltalk stack is printed, and the threshold is raised by 5 percent. In a situation producing an OutOfMemory error, you should get several Smalltalk stacks printed in the Gem log file before the session dies. The default setting is 75%.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_SCAV
The scavenge count at which to begin printing scavenges. Once this takes effect, all mark/sweeps will also be printed. Be aware that printing scavenges can produce large quantities of output.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_PRINT_TRANS
Print transaction boundaries (begin/commit/abort) in the log file.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_SCAV_PRINT_STACK
The scavenge count at which to begin printing the Smalltalk stack at each scavenge. Be aware that this print activity can produce large quantities of output.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_SCAV_PRINT_C_STACK
The scavenge count at which to begin printing the C stack at each scavenge. This variable is very expensive, consuming 2 seconds plus the cost of fork() for each printout.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_VERBOSE_OUTOFMEM
Automatically call the primitive for
`System class>>_vmPrintInstanceCounts:0` when an OutOfMemory error occurs, and also print the Smalltalk stack. (For details about this method, see the comments in the image.) This applies to each Gem or linkable Topaz (topaz -l) process that you subsequently start.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_VERIFY_MKSW
The mark/sweep count at which to begin verifying object memory before and after each mark/sweep.

GS_DEBUG_VMGC_VERIFY_SCAV
The scavenge count at which to begin verifying object memory before and after each scavenge. Once this takes effect,
GS_DEBUG_VMGC_VERIFY_MKSW will also be in effect. Be aware that this activity uses significant amounts of CPU time.

GS_DISABLE_CHARACTER_TABLE_LOAD
Any value disables the loading of any customized Extended Character Set Character Data Tables. See "Disabling load of the Character Data Table" on page 464.

GS_DISABLE_KEEPALIVE
 A non-empty string disables the network keepalive facility. For further
 information about keepalive, see "Disrupted Communications" on page 71.

GS_DISABLE_WARNING
 A non-empty string disables a warning that GemStone is using
 `/opt/gemstone` instead of `/usr/gemstone` for log and lock files when
 both directories exist.Use of `/usr/gemstone` is only for compatibility with
 previous releases; the default location is `/opt/gemstone`.

GS_SPC_USE_LARGE_PAGES
 On AIX, when this environment variable is set, GemStone will use large
 memory pages. The system must be configured to use large memory pages.

GS_WRITE_CORE_FILE
 By default, core files are not written when a fatal error occurs. (The C level
 stack trace is written to the process log file prior to the process shutdown.) You
 can set this environment variable if you need a core file.

upgradeLogDir
 The location for log files produced during the upgrade of a repository for a
 new version of GemStone.

System Variables Used by GemStone

GemStone uses the following system variables that exist for other purposes:

EDITOR	Used by Topaz to determine which editor to invoke.
PATH	The search path of locating executable files.
SHELL	Used to determine what shell to use for an exec, such as by `System class>>performOnServer`.

Reserved Environment Variables

The following environment variables are reserved for internal use. Customers
should not define these variables for use with GemStone unless specifically
instructed to do so. Please refrain from using these variables for other purposes.

_POSIX_OPTION_ORDER

GCIRTL_BASELIBNAME

GEMSTONE*

> All environment variable names beginning with "GEMSTONE" other than those above are reserved.

GS_*

> All environment variable names beginning with "GS_" other than those above are reserved.

NT_PARENT_PID

netldi*nn*

runpgsvr

Appendix

F *Localization*

This appendix addresses the following topics related to localization:

- GemStone Smalltalk class Locale (page 453)

    How to obtain and override operating system locale information in GemStone.

- Extended Character Set support (page 455)

    How to process and collate String data that includes extended Characters (that is, beyond the basic set of 256 Characters).

F.1 Class Locale

The class Locale allows you to obtain operating system locale information and use or override it in GemStone. GemStone currently only uses the decimalPoint setting, to provide localized reading and writing of numbers involving decimal points. Note that Smalltalk syntax requires the use of '.' as the decimal point separator, so expressions involving literal floating point numbers within Smalltalk code will still require use of the '.', regardless of Locale.

To override the operating system locale information, use the following message:

```
Locale Class >> setCategory: categorySymbol locale: LocaleString
```

The *LocaleString* passed to `setCategory:locale:` must be defined on the host machine. You can use the UNIX command **locale -a** to get a list of all available LocaleStrings.

Table F.1 lists the valid category symbols.For more information about these settings, see the operating system man page for locale.

Table F.1   Valid Category Symbols for Locale

#LC_CTYPE	Character handling
#LC_NUMERIC	Decimal point handling
#LC_TIME	Date and time handling
#LC_COLLATE	Collation setting
#LC_MONETARY	Monetary handling
#LC_MESSAGES	Messages handling
#LC_ALL	All locale categories

To use decimal localization appropriate for Germany:

```
Locale setCategory: #LC_NUMERIC locale: 'de_DE'.
```

To use UNIX default values:

```
Locale setCategory: #LC_ALL locale: 'C'.
```

The following method returns a Locale object with the locale information for the current session:

```
Locale Class >> current
```

The following method returns the decimalPoint setting for the current Locale:

```
Locale decimalPoint
```

> *NOTE*
> *You can use similar methods to obtain settings for other fields, but only decimalPoint is significant in this release.*

By passing in an argument of false, the following methods allow you to convert a String to a Float without consideration of the current Locale setting:

```
Float Class >> fromString:useLocale:
```

```
DecimalFloat Class >> fromString:useLocale:
```

For more information, see the image and operating system documentation for locale (man `localeconv`).

F.2 Extended Character Set Support

GemStone/S 64 Bit supports the ability to process and collate String data that includes extended Characters (that is, beyond the basic set of 256 Characters). This allows the various Character test, comparison, and conversion methods to work correctly across the full range of Characters that can be represented in up to four bytes. You can control the contents of the character data tables that drive these methods, and can either use tables based on the Unicode Standard or design your own, based on your particular application requirements.

If you do not require more than the basic 256 Character set, you do not need to do anything. By default, GemStone uses basic 256 Character set tables, which provide the best performance. Support for Extended Character Set provides additional abilities, without compromising performance for applications that do not need them.

Extended Character Set support includes:

*   Default Built-in Tables — By default, GemStone/S 64 Bit comes with basic character set tables for the 0–255 Character range, based on the Unicode Standard.

*   32-bit Unicode Standard — You can extend the character data tables to support the Unicode Standard including all Characters that can be represented with four bytes (0–2147483647).

*   Flexible upgrade and customization — You can build your own character data tables, or update your applications when there are new releases of the Unicode Standard.

Extended Character Sets

GemStone Characters are based on an index, which correspond to the Unicode value. By themselves, Characters can only be compared by this index, which does not provide a good way to determine which should be sorted first, and it does not provide any information about uppercase or lowercase, or if the Character is a digit or letter.

To supply this information, GemStone provides a built-in internal table that includes the collation information for the standard 256 Characters, in a legacy collate order. This internal table provides the best possible performance for sorting or indexing of String data.

Characters that are not in the currently loaded table can still be compared and sorted, but the ordering is based on the Character value. So Character such as š that

are outside the standard 256 Character range are not collated correctly by the default table. In addition, there are Characters within the standard 256 Character table that are not collated correctly for some languages; for example, ß (Character withValue: 233) by default is collated at the end of the alphabet.

If your application uses data that contains Characters such as ß and š, or any Characters beyond the standard 256 Characters, you can easily load Character Data Tables that provide collation, conversion, and querying, up to the limit of the Character set you will be using.

Character Data Tables

To hold and order the Character relationship information that is needed for collation, GemStone defines formatted Array structures referred to as Character Data Tables.

Internally, GemStone uses an primitive Character Data Table, composed of an Array of ByteArrays that contain mapping and numeric references. This format uses the minimum memory and permits the fastest access.

To allow the tables to be examined and customized, a Character Data Table can be converted into a structured form, consisting of an Array of Arrays, where each element Array contains the information for a Character.

When customized Character Data Tables are installed, either from a file or from a structured Character Data Table, the Globals Symbol Dictionary variable #CharacterDataTables is set to the primitive Character DataTable. If the variable #CharacterDataTables is nil, the default built-in 256 Character table is used. This variable is checked by each session during login, and remains in use for the lifetime of the session.

Loading Extended Character Sets

The GemStone distribution includes a file with a Character Data Table containing the complete Unicode Character Data Set, which you can load into your repository to allow you to immediately work with all Unicode Characters.

GemStone indexes and SortedCollections depend on a static collation sequence. Use caution when loading new tables. Before making changes in the Character Data Tables, all indexes on the system should be dropped, and after the new tables are installed, the indexes can be rebuilt, and SortedCollections updated.

The Character Data Tables can only be updated by SystemUser, and the changes are global for all users on a system.

To load the complete Unicode Data Set into your image:

1. Log in as SystemUser

2. execute the following:

```
Character activateCharTablesFromFile:
    '$GEMSTONE/examples/CharTableUnicode510.dat'
```

3. Commit and log out. The new tables are in effect for subsequent logins.

While this is an easy way to load all the Character information that is available, the complete table includes over 100K Characters, which is likely to be more than your application actually needs. This may consume an unnecessary amount of memory.

We recommend installing customized tables containing a subset of the full Unicode Data. However, modifying the Character Data Tables should be done rarely, as it requires index and SortedCollection rebuild. All Characters that may potentially be needed in the future by your application should be included in the customized tables.

Customizing the Character Data Table

By default, GemStone Character Data Tables are in the legacy collation sequence, to avoid problems with upgraded applications. The updated Unicode Character Data Table file, `CharTableUnicode510.dat`, includes the Unicode default collation table, DUCET. This provides a much improved default collation over the legacy collation.

However, the DUCET collation will not be correct for all national languages under all uses. GemStone allows you go customize the collation sequence if necessary.

There are several ways to customize the collation sequence.

From within GemStone, you can create a Structured Character Data Table based on the default table, or on the Unicode primitive data tables, and edit this using GemStone Smalltalk expressions. When you have modified the table to meet your needs, you can install the table into your system.

Alternatively, you can download the Unicode data and default collation table text files. After editing this raw data in text form outside of GemStone, you can use GemStone utility code to generate your own Character table .dat files, and install these files into your system.

Structured Character DataTable

The structured Character data tables allow a System Administrator to view and update the collation sequence in an easy to understand format.

A Structured Character Table is composed of an Array of elements, arranged according to character collation order. Each element is an Array containing the following entries:

*   The character for this entry.

*   The symbolic character category code.

*   Uppercase character (if a letter) / Numerator (if numeric).

*   Lowercase character (if a letter) / Denominator (if fraction).

*   (Optional) Titlecase character

For example, in the default Structured Character Table, the 73rd element is the letter $a (Unicode/ASCII 97). The array at this index contains the following:

```
#( $a #Ll $A $a )
```

The first element is the Character itself; the second is the category, which in this example is lowercase, followed by the uppercase and lowercase equivalents.

To create a structured character data table based on the currently installed primitive Character Data Table, execute:

```
Character charTables
```

Once the Structured Character Data Table is correct, you can install it into your system by executing:

```
Character installCharTables: aStructudedCharacterDataTable
```

Example

Say we want to add the Characters Š (Unicode 352) and š (Unicode 353) to the standard 256-Character library. These Characters should follow S and s in collation sequence, respectively.

1. Create an instance of Structured Character Table, and place this in a temporary variable. You can generate structured Character Data Tables based on the tables currently in use using this code:

    ```
    UserGlobals at: #MyCharacterDataTables put: Character
    charTables
    ```

    In this case, since there is no customized Character Data Table already loaded, `Character charTables` returns a structured table based on the default built-in 256 Character table.

2. Add the required entries to this table. Each entry is an Array formatted as
    described on page 457. The entries must be positioned in the Table (Array of
    Arrays) in the desired sort order, not added to the end (unless the new
    Character should be sorted last in any collation sequence).

```
MyCharacterDataTables
    add: (Array
          with: (Character withValue: 352)
          with: #Lu
          with: (Character withValue: 352)
          with: (Character withValue: 353))
    after: #( $S #Lu $S $s ).
MyCharacterDataTables
    add: (Array
          with: (Character withValue: 353)
          with: #Ll
          with: (Character withValue: 352)
          with: (Character withValue: 353))
    after: #( $s #Ll $S $s ).
```

3. When you are sure your changes are correct, as SystemUser, execute the
    following and commit:

```
Character installCharTables: MyCharacterDataTables
```

This converts the Structured Character Table into equivalent byte arrays and
places them into the Globals variable #CharacterDataTables, to be loaded by
all later sessions on login.

CAUTION
It is possible to affect or break indexes that rely on String sequencing. For
this reason, we recommend you that drop any indexes based on Strings
in your System before modifying the character tables.

Generating Tables from Unicode Data

To generate tables from the Unicode text files, you must load utility code that
GemStone provides as an optional extension. This code is used to generate
structured and primitive Character Data Tables based on the Unicode-standard
raw text files.

This technique is used both for creating customized versions of the Unicode tables, as well as to rebuild the tables when a new version of the Unicode standard is released.

1. Download the Unicode data files:

   ```
   http://www.unicode.org/Public/UNIDATA/UnicodeData.txt
   ```

   and save to a local file, such as `myUnicodeData.txt`.

   Download the Unicode collation file:

   ```
   http://www.unicode.org/Public/UCA/latest/allkeys.txt
   ```

   and again, save to a local file, such as `myUnicodeCollation.txt`.

2. Optionally, edit `myUnicodeData.txt`, or `myUnicodeCollation.txt`, to modify the collation, reduce the size, or make any other changes necessary for your application.

3. Start topaz, and login as SystemUser. Load the code to build Character Data Tables

   ```
   topaz 1> input $GEMSTONE/examples/UnicodeData.gs
   ```

   and commit

4. Determine how many Characters your application needs to support and should be loaded into the tables. In this example, we will use 65535, which includes all DoubleByteString Characters, but not QuadByteString Characters. If you Strings in your application require fewer Characters, you may be able to make this number much smaller.

5. Execute the following. This will read the data files, generate the tables, and install the tables into your system.

   ```
   | tables|
   UnicodeData
     loadFromFile: 'myUnicodeData.txt'
     max: 65535
     sort: 'myUnicodeCollation.txt'.
   tables := UnicodeData generateTables.
   Character installCharTables: tables.
   ```

6. Commit, and log out. The changes will take effect on the next login, for all users on this system.

The Unicode Database

The Unicode Consortium is an international standards organization that produces the Unicode Database, which provides unique codes for all Characters in all Character Sets. The database continues to develop; GemStone/S 64 Bit 2.4 uses Unicode version 5.1.

For more information on this database, refer to:

```
http://www.unicode.org/Public/UNIDATA/UCD.html
```

The Unicode Consortium provides code charts by script as well as a single master list of all characters, presented in an ASCII-only, comma-delimited version. Version 5.1 of this file has been used to create the ByteArray tables, and is provided in passivated object form.

This table can be found at

```
http://www.unicode.org/Public/UNIDATA/UnicodeData.txt
```

Character Categories

In addition to assigning unique codes for all Characters, and providing the upper and lowercase mappings, the Unicode Database also provides categories for all possible Characters. These categories allow letters to be distinguished from numeric characters and from punctuation.

Table F.2 lists all the Unicode categories. While some of these Character categories are commonly used, other categories are more rare and are not used in English or Latin-based languages.

Table F.2   Character Category Codes and Symbols

1	#Lu	Letter, Uppercase
2	#Ll	Letter, Lowercase
3	#Lt	Letter, Titlecase
4	#Lm	Letter, Modifier
5	#Lo	Letter, Other
6	#Mn	Mark, Nonspacing
7	#Mc	Mark, Spacing Combining
8	#Me	Mark, Enclosing
9	#Nd	Number, Decimal Digit
10	#Nl	Number, Letter

Table F.2   Character Category Codes and Symbols (Continued)

11	#No	Number, Other
12	#Pc	Punctuation, Connector
13	#Pd	Punctuation, Dash
14	#Ps	Punctuation, Open/Start
15	#Pe	Punctuation, Close/End
16	#Pi	Punctuation, Initial Quote
17	#Pf	Punctuation, Final Quote
18	#Po	Punctuation, Other
19	#Sm	Symbol, Math
20	#Sc	Symbol, Currency
21	#Sk	Symbol, Modifier
22	#So	Symbol, Other
23	#Zs	Separator, Space
24	#Zl	Separator, Line
25	#Zp	Separator, Paragraph
26	#Cc	Other, Control
27	#Cf	Other, Format
28	#Cs	Other, Surrogate
29	#Co	Other, Private Use
30	#Cn	Other, Not Assigned

Categories are used to answer these queries:

```
Character >> isDigit
Character >> isLetter
Character >> isLowercase
Character >> isUppercase
Character >> isSeparator
```

Titlecase category

In addition to uppercase and lowercase, the Unicode Standard provides the case-related category Titlecase (#Lt). This is a special case for composite characters that incorporate multiple individual characters—for example, the Unicode Character code 0x01C5 (decimal 453), DZ. (Such characters are rare; there are only 12 such

characters in the Unicode Standard.) Titlecase of these composite character forms consists of an Uppercase first character, followed by all remaining characters in lowercase. In this example, the uppercase would be DŽ, the lowercase would be dž, and the titlecase Dž.

For most letters, Titlecase is the same as Uppercase. Titlecase is an optional feature in GemStone's formatted tables.

GemStone Character Table Data Files

The $GEMSTONE/goodies directory contains two files in GemStone passivate format:

`CharTableDefault.tab`
> Character table data for the default table, in structured form, in legacy collate order.

`CharTableUnicode410.dat`
> Character table data for 16-bit Unicode, in low-level ByteArray form, in legacy collate order. You can use this file to install the extended Unicode tables. (See "Loading Extended Character Sets" on page 456.)

`CharTableUnicode510.dat`
> Character table data for 16-bit Unicode, in low-level ByteArray form, in DUCET collate order. (See "Loading Extended Character Sets" on page 456.)

`UnicodeData.gs`
> This includes the GemStone Smalltalk source code to generate Character Data Tables based on the raw Unicode text files.

Archiving and distributing Character Data Tables

Character Data Tables can be stored in operating system files in passive object format, and loaded from these passivated files. This allows you to archive and distribute the specific Character sets and collation your application is using.

To save the current contents of the Globals variable #CharacterDataTables to a passivated file, execute:

```
Character passivateCharTablesToFile: 'MyFileName'
```

To install a previously passivated from a file, log in as System user and execute:

```
Character activateCharTablesFromFile: 'MyFileName'
```

Commit and log out.

Troubleshooting

Restoring the default table

If you want to clear out the Character DataTables, and return to using the default built-in 256 Character tables, do the following:

1. Log in as SystemUser.

2. Execute:

   ```
   Globals removeKey: #CharacterDataTables.
   ```

Commit, and log out.

Disabling load of the Character Data Table

When Character Data Tables are loaded during login, GemStone can sometimes detect if an invalid Character Data Table is installed and will revert back to the default 256 character data table. But in other cases, invalid tables may cause problems interpreting Smalltalk source code or topaz commands. In these cases you may need to manually disable the loading of the character data table.

To recover from serious problems after installing an invalid character data table, do the following:

1. At the operating system level, set the host environment variable GS_DISABLE_CHARACTER_TABLE_LOAD to TRUE. The particular value of this environment variable does not matter; its existence is the critical factor.

2. Start a new Topaz session and log in as SystemUser.

3. Execute the following:

   ```
   Globals at: #CharacterDataTables put: nil.
   ```

4. Commit.

Use caution when using this environment variable. Like any use of a different collation sequence, data structures that depend on collation, such as indexes, will not work correctly and can become inconsistent if modified.

Writing Extended Characters to Files

Characters outside the base ASCII range of 0...255 require multiple bytes to represent. Strings containing Characters with values over 255 are transparently morphed into DoubleByteStrings or QuadByteStrings, depending on the number of bytes required to hold the largest Character in the String.

GsFile allows Strings to be written to external files. GsFile writes bytes, and does not automatically handle DoubleByteStrings or QuadByteStrings. To write data containing Characters outside the base ASCII range to external files, in such a way that the text can be read in again later, they must be explicitly encoded into UTF-8 before writing to the file.

To encode a String, DoubleByteString, or QuadByteString into UTF-8, use `encodeAsUTF8`. To decode a String that is in UTF-8 encoding, send `decodeFromUTF8`.

G *statmonitor and VSD Reference*

This appendix provides details about VSD and statmonitor:

- How to use the statmonitor and Visual Statistics Display (VSD) utilities to evaluate GemStone performance (page 467)

- Statmonitor command line options (page 479)

- VSD menu reference (page 481)

- Descriptions of VSD files, including the syntax for template filters (page 483)

G.1 Using statmonitor and VSD

Every commercial aircraft in service today contains a flight data recorder, commonly called a black box. Black boxes are used to help determine what went wrong if the aircraft ever crashes. Without it, crash investigators would have very little to go on and the cause of many crashes would never be known.

In a production GemStone application, the *statmonitor* program serves the role of the black box. It runs in the background, logging the values of all cache statistics to a text file. Should a problem with the repository occur, you can review these statistics to determine the cause, allowing you to identify problems and tune GemStone applications for better performance.

Many questions about repository performance are impossible to answer after the fact unless statmonitor log files are available. For example:

* Why did markForCollection take longer than normal?

* Why did the backup run slower than before?

* Why was there more repository growth than normal?

* Which Gem session was consuming the most CPU or I/O during a time of poor performance?

* Which Gem had the most number of commit failures?

If you're trying to answer questions such as these, statmonitor statistics files are your best source of information. statmonitor reads the statistics from the shared page cache that are recorded by GemStone processes, and writes those statistics to a file.

To help you interpret the statistical information that statmonitor gathers, GemStone provides a tool called *VSD* (Visual Statistical Display). VSD's graphical user interface gives you a meaningful way to see how your GemStone system changes over time, based on periodic samples of the system's state. VSD reads the statmonitor files and displays the values in a graph. VSD can also start statmonitor, if it is not already running, and read the values as soon as statmonitor collects them.

statmonitor and VSD are companion tools:

* *statmonitor* is a stand-alone executable with a command-line interface. It does not log into GemStone nor use a GemStone session. However, it is version-sensitive; you must use the version of statmonitor appropriate for your GemStone version.

* VSD provides a graphical user interface for viewing the text files that statmonitor produces. It is independent of the operating system platform, version and server product that created the statmonitor flat file. However, older versions of VSD cannot always read statmonitor files produced by more recent GemStone server versions.

    On UNIX platforms, VSD requires X-Windows.

statmonitor uses a discrete sampling algorithm. Events that occur between samples are not recorded.

Starting VSD and statmonitor

To start statmonitor, at the command line, enter:

`statmonitor` *stoneName* `-f` *outputFile* `-i` *sampleInterval*

For complete statmonitor command line syntax, see "Statmonitor command line syntax" on page 479.

To start VSD, simply execute the `vsd` command. (This assumes that `$GEMSTONE/bin` defined in your path.)

The initial startup screen will appear similar to that shown in Figure G.1.

Figure G.1   VSD Startup Screen
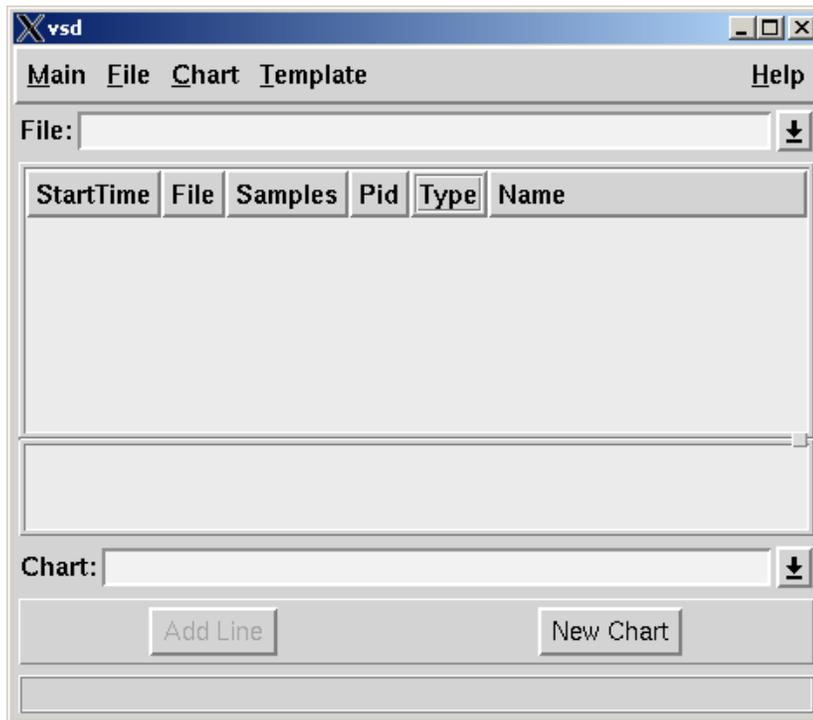
Loading an existing statmonitor output file

To load a statmonitor file into VSD, do one of the following:

*   To browse for an existing statmonitor output file, choose **Load Data File...** from the **Main** menu.

*   If you know the name of the load file, you can type the full path in the File entry box, then press Enter.

*   To switch to a statmonitor output file that you've already loaded, click the down-arrow next to the File entry box, then select a file from the list.

Maintaining a current view of the data file

If you select **File > Auto Update**, VSD automatically updates your display, and any associated charts, any time the data file changes. Otherwise, you can choose **File > Update** periodically to update the displays when you choose.

Starting statmonitor from VSD and viewing current data

You can also use VSD to start statmonitor and read directly from the data file statmon is currently creating. To do so:

Step 1. Choose **Monitor** from the **Main** menu.
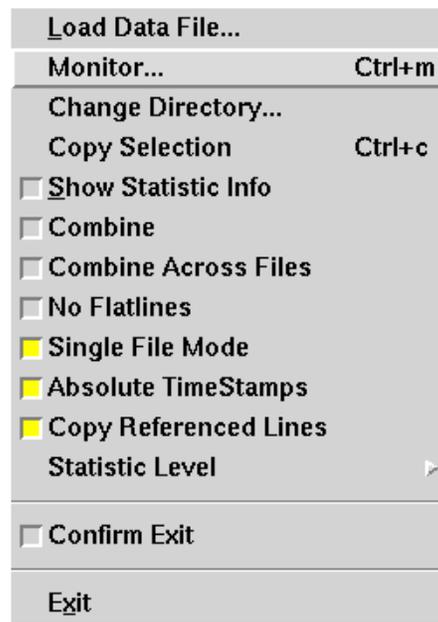
Step 2. When the Monitor window appears, click to select the cache on the local machine for which you want to obtain statistics.
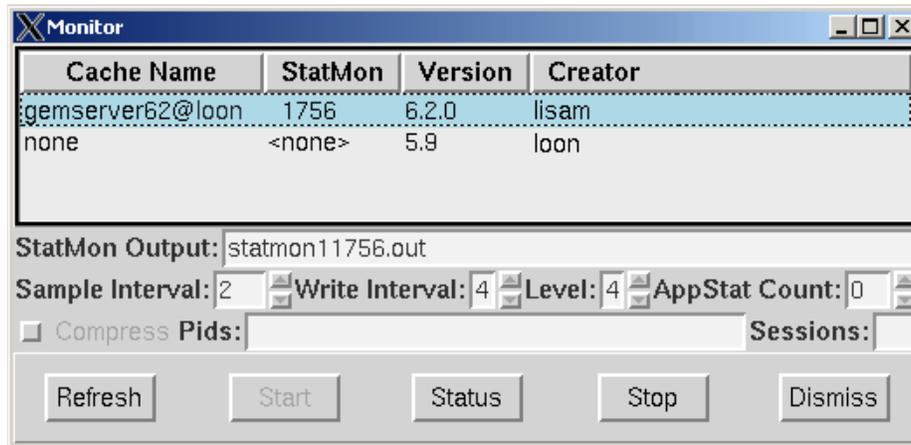
Step 3. If necessary, modify any statmonitor startup parameters:

- The name of the statmonitor output file.
- The sample interval (in seconds)—that is, how frequently to read the cache.
- The write interval—the maximum number of seconds to wait before flushing the cached information to the output file.
- The level of application statistics to gather.
- Whether to compress the output file.
- The GemStone sessionId of each session that you want to monitor. If you don't specify the sessionId explicitly, all sessions will be monitored.

Step 4. When you're done, click **Start**.

VSD loads the data file as soon as it has some samples in it (unless you have explicitly turned off Auto Update).

Step 5. When you're finished collecting statistics, click **Stop**.

Viewing Statistics

After you've loaded the data file or started monitoring, the VSD window looks something like this:
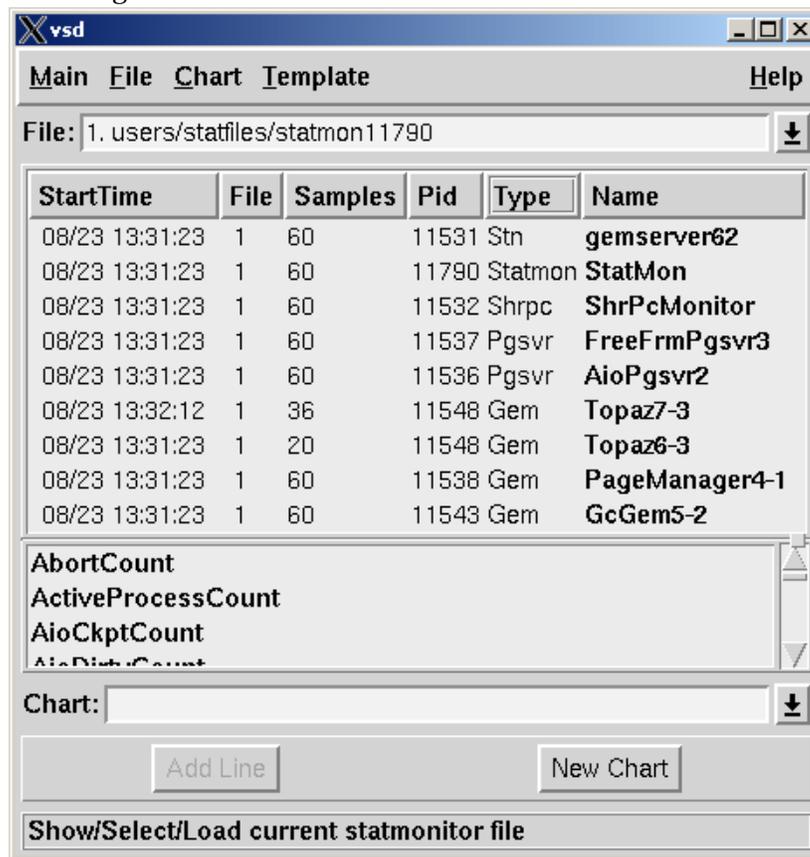
If you are monitoring, the green numbers in the Samples column indicate processes that are still running. The black numbers indicate processes that have stopped.

Your next step is to select the specific cache statistics to view. Statmonitor keeps statistics for various GemStone processes, corresponding to the cache slots described on page 225. They appear as follows under the heading **Type** in the process list:

Stn   Stone
Gem   Gem

Shrpc	shared page cache monitor
Pgsvr	AIO or free frame page server
Statmon	statmonitor
Appstat	application-defined statistics

NOTE

For detailed descriptions of each statistic, see the section "Cache Statistics" on page 229, and the explanations that follow.

Step 1. Each statistic, or *counter,* has a characteristic called a *level* reflecting the amount of background knowledge about GemStone processes needed to use it with understanding. You can set up VSD to list (in its main window and in associated charts) only those statistics that are at, or below, a certain level of complexity.

To establish the levels of statistics that you want to display in VSD, choose **Statistic Level** from the VSD window's **Main** menu:

Load Data File...	
Monitor...	Ctrl+m
Change Directory...	
Copy Selection	Ctrl+c
☐ Show Statistic Info	
☐ Combine	
☐ Combine Across Files	
▨ No Flatlines	
▨ Single File Mode	
▨ Absolute TimeStamps	
☐ Copy Referenced Lines	
Statistic Level	▸
☐ Confirm Exit	
Exit	

- ◇ Common Statistics Only
- ◇ Advanced & Common Statistics
- ◆ All Statistics
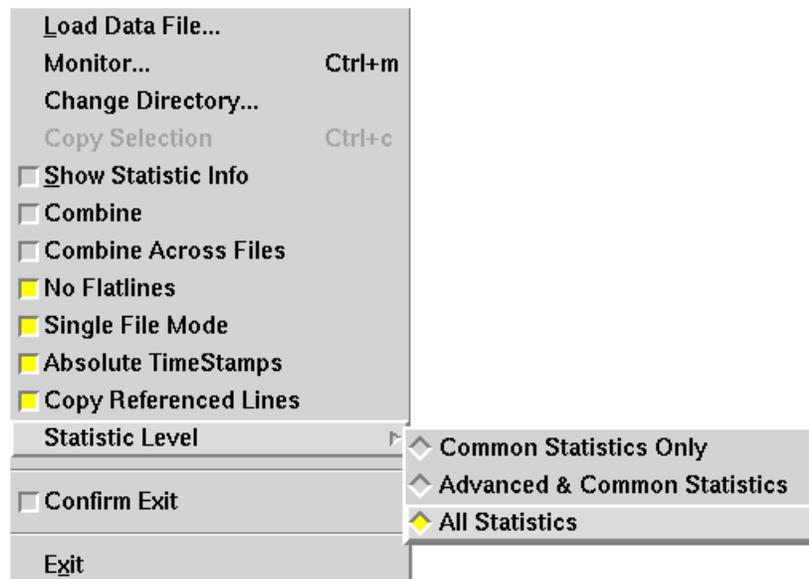
Step 2. Now, you're ready to select one or more processes. To do so, in the process list, click the left mouse button on the process(es) you wish to view.

You can also use the right mouse button popup menu in the VSD process list to perform these useful functions:

• Search for a specific session name or process ID.

To find a specific process, click the mouse in the process list, then press Ctrl-S. When the dialog box appears, enter the PID or name of the process you're looking for. VSD highlights the first process with that PID or name. To find the next match, enter Ctrl-S again.

To select the highlighted item, click on it. When you're done, press Return.

*   Select all processes, all Gem processes, or all page server processes.

*   Combine multiple processes into a single line.

    This can be quite helpful. For example, if you want to measure page reads per second for several hundred Gem processes, it's not possible to fit all the individual lines and legends onto one chart. If you select all Gem processes, then combine them into a single line in the chart, the data is easily readable.

*   Eliminate *flatlines*—processes whose values are always zero.

Figure G.2   Process List with Selected Gems

Step 3. Next, select one or more statistics in the scrolling list of available statistics for the selected processes. You can also type a letter to reach the first statistic that starts with that letter.

If you have selected processes of different types, only the statistics that are available for each of the processes will be displayed. Statistics that contain non-zero data points are shown in bold.

Step 4. After you've selected the statistic, do one of the following:

- To display the statistic in a new chart, click **New Chart** button. To explicitly name the chart, enter a name in the Chart entry field.

- To display the statistic in an existing chart, click the down-arrow and select the chart name in the **Chart** entry box. Then click on **Add Line**. If you do not select a chart, the statistics will be displayed in the most recently selected chart.

Figure G.3   Chart Displaying Statistics
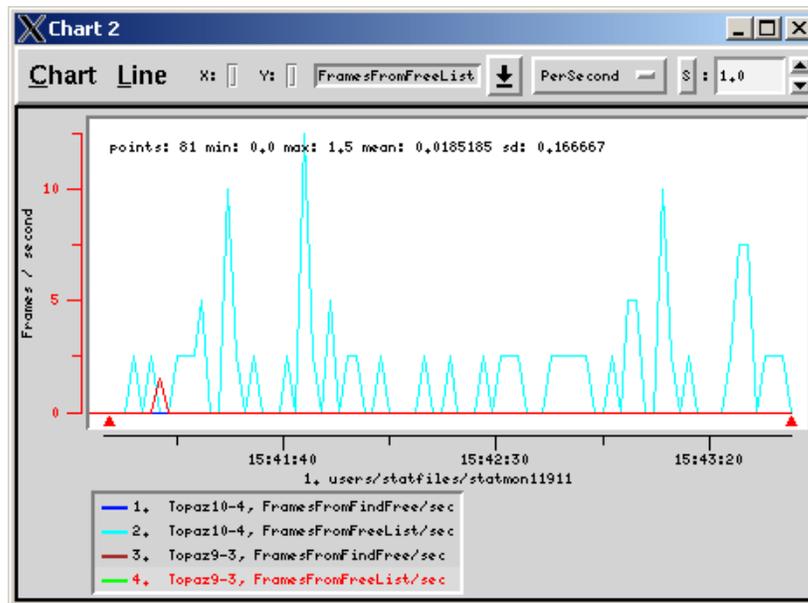
Step 5. To add another statistic to the chart, repeat steps 3 and 4

Customizing Your Chart

You can customize and manipulate a VSD chart in many ways:

- To select a line in the chart, click on it or on its entry in the chart legend. The line will be highlighted in red.

- To delete a line from the chart, click the middle mouse button (if available) on its entry in the chart legend. Or select the line and choose **Line > Delete**.

- To find out about a specific point in a chart, hold the mouse pointer over it.

- To view an explanation about the most recently selected statistic, go to the VSD main window and choose **Show Statistics Info** from the **Main** menu. You'll see a Statistic Information window that looks something like this:

In the Statistic Information window, you can redefine the level and default filter for any VSD statistic.

> *TIP*
> *If you leave this window up as you work, it changes to reflect the current statistic; in this way you can get a quick explanation of any statistic you're currently examining.*

- To aid in identifying processes, you can customize the name used for a specific Gem or Topaz session. To do so:

Step 1. Log into the Gem or Topaz session as soon after you've started it as possible.

Step 2. At the Topaz prompt or in a GemStone workspace, evaluate:

```
System _cacheName: 'myName'
```

Filter

Whenever you add a line to a chart, the filter determines how much information is displayed for the selected statistic:

- **None** — Displays the values for the statistic as they are expressed in the statmonitor text file.

- **PerSample** — Displays the difference between two consecutive samples of the statistic.

- **PerSecond** — Displays the difference between two consecutive samples of the statistic, divided by the number of elapsed seconds between the two samples.

- **Aggregate** — Displays a running total for the statistic. Each raw value from previous samples is added to the current one.

Once you've added the line to a chart, you can override its default filter by specifying a new filter from the drop-down menu at the top of the Chart window.

Using VSD Chart Templates

VSD templates let you quickly add a set of lines to a chart. Templates are helpful if you find yourself performing the same task frequently in VSD — for example, monitoring the same five or six statistics. By creating a template for the statistics that you want to monitor most frequently, you can automate the task of building charts.

In your template, you can assign a filter for each statistic, to determine how much information is displayed for that statistic. You can also restrict the template to look for extreme conditions (for example, Gem processes that are consuming 90% or more of the CPU).

VSD is shipped with a set of predefined templates, maintained in the .vsdtemplates file in your home directory.

NOTE
You can use a text editor to change or delete templates in the .vsdtemplates *file. For details about the format of the* .vsdtemplates *file, see "VSD Files" on page 483.*

To do this...	Do this...
Create a new chart from a template	In the VSD main window, choose **New from Template** from the **Chart** menu. This is a good way to display some of the more useful system statistics.
Apply a template to the chart that you're viewing	In the Chart window, choose **Add From Template** from the **Chart** menu. *NOTE* *If you have zoomed in on a chart, the template filter is applied only to values within the zoomed range.*
Reread the template file `.vsdtemplates` into VSD after you've edited it	In the VSD main window, choose **Reload Template File** from the **Chart** menu.
Save the current chart as a template	In the Chart window, configure the chart as you desire, then choose **Save Template** from the **Chart** menu. When you exit VSD, the template will be saved to the `.vsdtemplates` file. If you save the current chart as a template, you may still need to edit the `.vsdtemplates` file so that you can get the selected Gem or page server.

G.2 Statmonitor command line syntax

statmonitor *stonename* -**f** *fileName* [*options*]

-**A**	Collect all available system statistics.
-**C**	Collect system statistics for each individual CPU.
-**D**	Collect system statistics for all disks and partitions
-**f** *fileName*	The output file name. By default, the output filename is statmon*N*.out, where *N* is the process ID. To send output to stdout instead of a file, specify -**f stdout**.
-**i** *interval*	The interval in seconds; the default is 20. Select either -**i** or -**I**.
-**I** *intervalMs*	The interval in milliseconds; the default is 20000, the minumum is 100. Select either -**i** or -**I**.

-**h** *hours*	The number of hours (default is forever).
-**m** *stoneHostName*	The stone host name (default is localHost).
-**n** *numAppStats*	The number of application statistics (default is 0).
-**N**	Collect system statistics for all network interfaces.
-**p** *sessionId*	A GemStone sessionId to monitor. May be repeated. The default is to monitor all sessions.
-**P**	Sample the stone, shared cache monitor and all AIO page servers only.
-**q**	Quiet mode. Only print messages if an error occurs.
-**Q***pid1,pid2,...*	Record statistics for a list of process IDs.
-**r**	Restart a new output file when the current one completes. Each file will be given a unique name. The -**h** or -**t** switches control when a restart is done.
-**s0**	(deprecated) Same as -**Y**
-**s1**	(ignored)
-**s2**	(deprecated) Same as -**D**
-**s3**	(deprecated) same as -**D** -**N**
-**s4**	(deprecated) same as -**A**
-**S**	Sample only the stone and shared cache monitor.
-**t** *times*	The maximum number of samples to collect before starting a new output file (default is forever). Select either -**h** or -**t**.
-**u** *seconds*	The maximum number of seconds to wait before flushing the cached information to the output file (default is 60). If 0 then the flush will be done every interval.
-**W**	Collect system statistics for system memory pages.
-**U***uid1,uid2,...*	Record statistics for all processes owned 1 or more UNIX user IDs.

-**X**	Run in host-only mode. Sample host system statistics only and do not attach to a shared page cache. May be combined with other flags EXCEPT: -**m**, -**n**, -**p**, -**P**, -**S**, or -**Y**.
-**Y**	Disable collection of all system stats, including per-process data.
-**z**	Write the output in compressed gzip format.

G.3 VSD Menu Reference

Chart menu

To customize the way VSD displays statistics in your chart, choose items from the Chart window's **Chart** menu.

- **Zoom In** — You can zoom to improve your view of the chart. After you choose this menu item, click to select one corner of the area that you want to zoom. Move the mouse pointer to the opposite corner of the zoom area, then click again.

  To quickly zoom in on an area, move the mouse pointer over the area and click the middle mouse button (if available).

- **Zoom Out** — Select this menu item or click the right mouse button to reverse the effect of one zoom-in operation.

- **Compute Scale All, Unscale All** — To view multiple statistics on the same axis, it's sometimes helpful to adjust the scale of the chart.

- **Show Legend** — Select this item to display the legend for this chart.

- **Time Format** — Changes the format of the time displayed along the X axis.

- **Show Time Axis Title, Show Left Axis Title, Show Right Axis Title** — Select these items to display the title alongside the respective axes.

- **Show Current Values** — Select this item to display the current X and Y values for the selected line at the top of the chart.

- **Show Min and Max** — Select this item to display the minimum and maximum values for the selected line at the top of the chart.

- **Show Line Stats** — Select this item to display the following statistics for the selected line: the number of data samples, the minimum, the maximum, the mean, and the standard deviation. The statistics are calculated from all of the

data points on the selected line in the region defined by the graph's current X axis. (To change the region, use the **Zoom In** or **Zoom Out** menu item.)

*   **Show CrossHairs** — Select this item to display crosshairs centered at the current cursor position, useful to precisely locate a point of interest in time or on the vertical scaled.

*   **Show Gridlines** — Select this item to display gridlines in the chart background, also useful for precisely locating a point of interest.

For additional information about what you can do in the Chart window, choose **Help** from the **Chart** menu.

Line menu

Line menu commands operate on the currently selected line. To select a line, click on it or on its entry in the chart legend. VSD highlights the selected line.

*   **Log Info** — Displays a log file showing the line statistics for all data samples in the region defined by the graph's current X axis.

*   **Log Delta** — Use this menu item to measure the difference between two values on the selected line.

    Select the line, choose this menu item, then click on the two points whose difference you want to compute. VSD responds by displaying a log file showing the difference in time and value between the two points; the number of data samples in the selected line segment; and the minimum, maximum, mean, and standard deviation of those samples.

*   **Compute Scale** — Computes a scale value for the selected line o make it visible on the current chart. You can also use the Scale entry box to manually change the scale. The default scale value is 1.

*   **Unscale** — Reverses the effect of **Compute Scale**.

*   **Graph on Left Axis** — Select this item to display the Y axis for the selected line to the left of the chart. Otherwise, the Y axis is displayed to the right.

    To view multiple lines on the same chart, you can use this menu item to graph large values on one axis and small values on the opposite axis.

*   **Symbol** — Selects a new symbol.

*   **Update** — Updates the selected line, assuming that values are being monitored in real time and that **Auto Update** is turned off on the main window's File menu.

*   **Delete** — Removes the selected line from this chart.

G.4 VSD Files

VSD writes the following files to your home directory. This information is useful primarily to users who want to do more complex configuration or work directly with template files.

.vsdrc

This file is used by VSD to record its configuration. VSD reads the file when it starts and writes the file when it exits. You should not modify this file manually. If you want to specify configuration values that will be retained from one session to the next, do so in .vsdconfig instead.

.vsdconfig

You can configure VSD by setting default values in this file. Any value set in .vsdconfig will override the same definition in .vsdrc.

If you delete the .vsdconfig file, then the next time VSD is started, the file will be recreated with default values. If a value in this file contains whitespace, you must enclose it in braces. For example:

```
set vsd(exec:rm) {rm -f}
```

.vsdtemplates

This file contains VSD chart templates. A template is a list of line specs that define the content and appearance of a named VSD chart. For example, the following is a template for displaying a chart with information that you can use to determine if your Shared Page Cache is too small:

```
set vsdtemplates(CacheTooSmall) {
        {Shrpc ShrPcMonitor FreeFrameCount 1 none y2}
        {+ {*} FramesFromFreeList 1 persecond y}
        {+ {*} FramesFromFindFree 1 persecond y}
    }
```

Each line spec has the following format:

```
    {type name stat scale filter axis [statFilter]}
```

type — One of the following: Stn, Shrpc, Gem, or Pgsvr. If an optional '+' is appended to the type name, all processes that match this line spec will be combined into a single line.

name — Identifies the specific process. You can use a pattern identifier.

stat — A valid counter name.

scale — A number.

filter — One of the following: none, persecond, persample, or aggregate.

axis — Either y or y2.

statFilter (optional) — A list that lets you exclude lines from the chart, based on the values of their statistical counters. Its format is:

```
{count min max mean stddev}
```

For more information on VSD templates and the syntax and options available, see the VSD help under the topic "Template Syntax".

*Appendix*

H

Object State Change Tracking

H.1 Overview

GemStone transaction logs (tranlogs), which provide a way to recover all changes made to the repository in the case of repository crashes, or allow warm standbys to apply changes made to a primary repository, include detailed records of all changes in a encoded and compressed form. Converting the tranlog information to human-readable form, and analyzing this output, provides invaluable information for debugging and testing. It allows us to determine exactly what changes have been made to any of the objects in the repository over time. The tools used to perform this have been used internally to GemStone for many years, and have been provided to customers on occasion when needed to analyze specific application problems.

The ability to track changes to objects may be useful for customers who need to identify details on changes that have been made to application data objects. For this reason, we are making these scripts available as part of the GemStone/S product. Additional information has been added to the tranlogs to allow tracking of the specific user or machine that originated the object changes.

The scripts used to perform tranlog analysis are located in the `$GEMSTONE/bin/` directory and are named:

`printlogs.sh` — to output the complete contents (optionally filtered) of selected tranlogs in human-readable form.

`searchlogs.sh` — to search all tranlogs in a directory for selected OOPs (Object Oriented Pointers, or Object Ids), and output the matching entries (optionally filtered) in human readable form.

A GemStone repository performs many automatic operations, including things like garbage collection and checkpoints, that are transparent to end users. The tranlogs, of course, must contain records of any changes made by these operations. Complete details on everything that tranlogs may contain is beyond the scope of this documentation. The information provided here is intended to allow the use of the tranlog analysis scripts to locate and identify the details of changes to application objects.

Object oriented design's principle of encapsulation allows you to hide internal object complexity. However, to understand the data recorded in the tranlogs, you must have a detailed understanding of the actual structure of the objects. This includes both your own application classes, and the classes that are part of GemStone Smalltalk.

Also, note that since the tranlog analysis scripts are general purpose, used for a wide variety of purposes in which a detailed record of internal repository operation is required, the scripts may output much more information than is necessary for tracking object state changes. You may need to ignore this extraneous information as you perform your analysis.

H.2 Tranlog Analysis Scripts

Script Prerequisites

The environment variable `$GEMSTONE` must be set, and the `$GEMSTONE/bin/` directory must be in your executable path.

The scripts perform the analysis on tranlogs that are in the current working directory. If you are using raw partitions for your tranlogs, locate disks on the file system with adequate space for both the tranlogs themselves, and the script output files, which may be larger than the original tranlogs. Use `copydbf` to copy the tranlogs from the raw partition to the file system. For more information on the `copydbf` utility, see Appendix B, "GemStone Utility Commands.".

Output

Output from the scripts goes directly to `stdout`. To preserve the output and allow it to be used in later steps of analysis, redirect this; for example:

```
$> printlogs.sh tranlog1.dbf > tranlog1.out
```

Note that these scripts can produce very large amounts of output, so make sure that you have adequate disk space.

In some cases the resulting files may be too large for unix text editors such as `vi` or `emacs` to open. You may find it necessary to use the unix `split` utility to break up very large output files into more manageable chunks.

Tranlog Assumptions

By default, the tranlogs are assumed to be named using the GemStone convention `tranlog`*NNN*`.dbf`. If you are using a different naming convention, you can override this by setting the environment variable `$GS_TRANLOG_PREFIX` to the prefix you are using.

The scripts use the creation date of the tranlog file to determine the order in which the tranlogs are analyzed. If you copy or manipulate the tranlogs in a way that changes the creation date, this may cause the analysis to be done out of order. The output will warn of this with the message:

```
*** Warning:  scanning tranlogs out of order
```

Filter Criteria

The scripts both allow you to filter the results, to locate entries that are related to a particular UserId, GemHost, or ClientIP.

UserId – the userId (user name) of the UserProfile associated with this session: DataCurator, SystemUser, etc. The filter keyword is `user`.

GemHost – the name or IP address of the host machine running the gem process. For a linked session, which links the gem into the client, this is the same machine as the client.

If the gem is running on the same machine as the stone, use the name of the host machine. Otherwise, if the gem is on a different machine than the stone, use the IP address of the remote machine.

The filter keyword is `host`.

ClientIP – the IP address of the host machine running the client process.

For an RPC session, this is the machine running the client application. Clients may be topaz -r, GemBuilder for Smalltalk, or GemBuilder for C applications. For a linked session, this is the machine running the linked client/gem (the same machine as the GemHost). However, the ClientIP is always the IP address, even if it is on the same machine as the stone.

The filter keyword is `client`.

WARNING

*Information about UserId, GemHost, and ClientIP are derived from a **Login** tranlog entry created when a session first logs in. This entry associates the UserId/GemHost/ClientIP with a particular sessionID, which is then used as a key for subsequent tranlog entries. If you start analysis from a later tranlog which does not include this **Login** entry, these fields will be left blank for that session, and printouts/searches using filters based on these fields will not locate any results. Likewise, scanning through tranlogs out of order may result in the wrong **Login** entry being associated with a given sessionID. This would set UserId/GemHost/ ClientIP incorrectly for that particular session, and produce incorrect results when filtering.*

printlogs.sh

This script prints out the contents of one or more tranlogs in the current working directory in a human-readable form.

Warning
This script produce a very large amount of output, which (unfiltered) will exceed the size of original tranlog/s, and depending on the contents may be twice as large as the original tranlogs. Consider disk space, the use of filters, and restricting the set of tranlogs before running this script. Use caution in including the `full` keyword.

Usage:

```
printlogs.sh [<filters>] [full] [all] [<tlogA> ... <tlogZ>]
```

If <*filters*> are specified, only print out the tranlog entries that match the specified criteria. Filters may be combined. Possible filters are:

`user` *<userId>* - filter by the userId (the user name) of the GemStone
UserProfile
`host` *<hostnameOrIP>* - filter by gem/topaz process host or IP address
`client` *<N.N.N.N>* - filter by client IP Address

`full` - adding this keyword produces more detailed information. WARNING: this
produces much larger output results.

`all` - adding this keyword causes the script to print out the contents of all tranlogs
in the current working directory.

Examples

To print out the entire contents of all tranlogs in this working directory:

```
printlogs.sh all
```

To print out all entries in a selected number of tranlogs (note that tranlogs in the
sequence must be contiguous):

```
printlogs.sh tranlog5.dbf tranlog6.dbf tranlog7.dbf
```

To print out all tranlog entries for the user DataCurator in any tranlog:

```
printlogs.sh user DataCurator all
```

To print out detailed information for all entries in tranlog5.dbf for the user
DataCurator:

```
printlogs.sh full user DataCurator tranlog5.dbf
```

searchlogs.sh

This script prints out tranlog entries associated with particular OOP values,
according to the arguments in the command line. All tranlogs in the current
working directory are scanned.

Usage:

```
searchlogs.sh [<filters>] <oopA> ... <oopB>]
```

If *<filters>* are specified, only print out the tranlog entries that match the specified
criteria. Filters may be combined. Possible filters are:

`user` *<userId>* - filter by the userId (the user name) of the GemStone
UserProfile
`host` *<hostnameOrIP>* - filter by gem/topaz process host or IP address
`client` *<N.N.N.N>* - filter by client IP Address

Examples

To print out all entries involving OOP 1234 and OOP 5678:

```
searchlogs.sh 1234 5678
```

To print out all entries involving OOP 1234 performed by DataCurator:

```
searchlogs.sh user DataCurator 1234
```

To print out all entries involving OOP 1234 and OOP 5678 performed by
DataCurator while logged in from client machine 10.20.30.40:

```
searchlogs.sh user DataCurator client 10.20.30.40 1234
5678
```

H.3 Tranlog Structure

In order to make sense of the output from the scripts, you need a basic
understanding of how tranlogs are structured.

GemStone transaction logs consist of a sequence of **tranlog records**. Tranlog
records are are written on **physical pages** of 512 bytes (note that this is different
from the larger page size used for extents); a tranlog record may extend over more
than one page, but its size is always a multiple of 512 bytes.

Each tranlog record contains one or more **tranlog entries** (sometimes referred to
internally as logical records). The tranlog entries contain the information of
interest - the actual changes to objects in the repository (and any other repository
operations).

Output from the scripts will include header information for the tranlog record (see
Example H.1), followed by data from each of the tranlog entries held by that
tranlog record.

Example H.1   Tranlog Record Header Output

```
Dump of page 3, Kind=(16)Tran Log Record
  thisRecordId:(file:2 rec:3) previousRecordId:(file:2 rec:2)
  recordSize: 512 numLogicalRecs: 1 fileCreationTime: 1156195399
```

Tranlog records are identified by the pageId that they begin on. Since a tranlog
record may extend over multiple pages, there may be a gap in the sequence of

pageIds in the output. For example, if the tranlog record starting on page 6 has a recordSize of 1024 (two 512-byte physical pages), then the pageId of the next tranlog record will be 8.

Example H.2   Gap in Tranlog Record Sequence

```
Dump of page 6, Kind=(16)Tran Log Record
 thisRecordId:(file:3 rec:6) previousRecordId:(file:3 rec:5)
 recordSize: 1024 numLogicalRecs: 1 fileCreationTime: 1156738357


3.6.0  Login session: 5 user: DataCurator gemhost: myhost clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(26750 0)

----------------------------------------
Dump of page 8, Kind=(16)Tran Log Record
 thisRecordId:(file:3 rec:8) previousRecordId:(file:3 rec:6)
 recordSize: 512 numLogicalRecs: 1 fileCreationTime: 1156738357


3.8.0  Checkpoint session: 0 beginId:(26750 0)
  rootPageId: 3
  preChkLogRecordId: (file:3 rec:6) stoneStartup: 0
  logDebugLevel: 0  spare3..4: 0 0
```

Tranlog Entries

Each tranlog entry contains a unique identifying code, a descriptive entry type, and information on the session that originated the tranlog entry.

The identifying code consists of 3 numbers in the form:

> AAA.BBB.CCC

where:

> AAA – the fileId of the tranlog holding the entry
> BBB – the pageId for the tranlog record holding the entry
> CCC – the entryId: the number of the entry within the tranlog record

Each tranlog entry is of a particular type, according to the event that it represents and the information it contains. Types are indicated by short descriptive terms such as **Login**, **Abort**, **Commit**, and **Data**. There are a large number of entry types,

most of which are not important for tracking object state changes and can be ignored (for example, the **Checkpoint** entry in Example H.2). The ones that are important are documented below.

Each tranlog entry is associated with an Integer sessionID. SessionsIDs are unique to a specific session at any point in time. However, when a session logs out, the sessionID becomes available again for reuse by a new session logging in, so over a period of time, a sessionId may be used by a number of different sessions.

A sessionID of zero is used for tranlog entries generated by the stone - you may see this also in the **Checkpoint** entry in Example H.2.

If the entry was not originated from the stone (that is, the tranlog entries sessionID is not 0), the tranlog entry header includes more information about the session: the UserId, the GemHost, and the ClientIP address. These are described in more detail under "Filter Criteria" on page 487.

Example H.3   example tranlog entry

```
2.4.1  StartGcGem session: 1 user: GcUser gemhost: myhost clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(67 3)
```

This example shows that it is in the tranlog with fileId 2 (by the default naming convention, `tranlog2.dbf`), it is in the fourth physical page and in tranlog record 4, and it is the first tranlog entry in tranlog record 4.

This entry is of the tranlog entry type `StartGcGem`. The session is logged in as the user named `GcUser`; the gem session is executing on the same machine as the stone, a machine named `myhost`; and the client is executing on a machine with the IP address `10.20.30.40`. (beginId contains transaction tracking information that you can ignore).

Other information will follow this basic data, depending on the type of entry.

Tranlog Entry Types

There are a large number of tranlog entry types. Most of these are not relevant to tracking object state history - they record internal operations of the system, such as garbage collection or checkpoints. These tranlog entry types are not documented, although their functions can often be deduced by their names.

Below are the entries important for tracking object state history:

Login

A new session is logging into GemStone. As mentioned earlier, this entry sets the UserId, GemHost, and ClientIP data for this particular sessionID. If you start analysis on a tranlog that follows this event, these fields will be left blank for that session.

For example, if session 7 logs in while tranlog4 is in effect, and logs out when tranlog5 is in effect, and you begin analysis on tranlog5, entries for this session will not contain any UserId/GemHost/ClientIP information. If sessionID 7 is reused by a new session logging in later during tranlog5, that login will be recorded in tranlog5, and subsequent entries for this new session *will* be displayed properly.

AbortLogout

This entry is written when a session logs out or the Stone detects that the session has been killed. This entry is not flushed to the transaction log until a commit occurs.

BeginData
Data
BeginStoreData
StoreData

GemStone uses the above four entry types for recording new or changed object data. The basic entry information is followed by additional information about the changes, including the OOP values of the changed objects. Using the optional "full" flag in the `printlogs.sh` script will cause the output to include additional information on the exact changes made.

Commit

All the changes recorded in earlier **BeginData**, **Data**, **BeginStoreData**, or **StoreData** entries are now officially committed to the repository.

Abort

Any changes recorded earlier in this transaction are discarded.

BreakSerialization

This entry indicates that a transaction conflict occurred during an attempt to commit. Any changes recorded earlier in this transaction are not yet permanent. This event is usually followed by an **Abort** entry, although it's possible that the

next event seen for this sessionID is a **Login**, if the original session logged out and a new session reuses the sessionID.

Very Large Objects

GemStone is designed so that all objects will fit on a single page of 16384 bytes. This means that a byte object can be no larger than about 16000 bytes (since page header information uses some space), and pointer objects can only have about 4000 elements. GemStone internally represents objects larger than this as a tree structure, where the root node object references 2 or more leaf node objects, which then reference the actual elements of the collection object. Extremely large objects, such as large collections, may have internal branch nodes, if the number of leaf objects needed exceeds 4000.

This internal structure is usually transparent to the user. So, for example, you may create and manipulate an Array containing 20,000 elements as if it was a single large object, while the actual representation is a root object that references five leaf objects, each containing a 4000-element chunk of the array. While this makes application development with GemStone much simpler, the entries in the tranlogs reflect the actual implementation; you will need to be aware of this to understand tranlog output relating to collections larger than ~4000 object references or ~16000 bytes. Adding an element to the large Array, for example, may mean the tranlog entry includes a change to an instance of LargeObjectNode (the leaf node object), rather than a change to the Array itself.

Full vs. Normal Mode

When using the printlogs.sh script, you can optionally specify "full" mode to get more details on the changes made to objects in the repository. But this will greatly increase the size of the resulting log files. For example, using normal mode on our test tranlogs generated a log file that contained an entry that looked like this:

Example H.4   Tranlog entry, normal mode

```
5.7.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(151 2)

        clusterId: 1,  extentId: 0  numObjs:5
    154297  155069  155125  155185  155245
```

which tells you that 5 objects were created or modified during this event, with oops 154297, 155069, 155125, 155185, and 155245.

Using "full" mode will produce a much more detailed listing for this event:

Example H.5 Tranlog entry, full mode

```
5.7.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(151 2)
         clusterId: 1,  extentId: 0  numObjs:5

objId: 154297 class: 1741 seg: 3253 sz: 14 bits: 0x27 psize: 76
Oop values:  19   7   11   23   10   154177   7845   155245
8: 10   10   10   10 78277   154233

objId: 155069 class: 182393 seg: 3253 sz: 5 bits: 0x67 psize: 40
Oop values:  155185   10   155125   156661   389295

objId: 155125 class: 1169 seg: 3253 sz: 8 bits: 0x3007 psize: 28
Bytes:  Oakville

objId: 155185 class: 1169 seg: 3253 sz: 16 bits: 0x3007 psize: 36
Bytes:  5234 Main Street

objId: 155245 class: 1745 seg: 3253 sz: 2 bits: 0x7 psize: 28
Oop values:  7845   155053
```

Note that there is now a description of each individual created or modified object, containing these fields:

`objId:` the OOP of this object

`class:` the OOP of the class of this object

`seg:`   the OOP of the segment associated with this object

`sz:`   the logical size of this object (in bytes for a byte object, OOPs for an OOP object)

`bits:` the format bits for this object (internal GS use)

`psize:` the physical size of this object on disk in bytes (including 20 bytes of object header information)

> Bytes: the actual bytes that make up this object (if a byte object)
>   [or]
> Oop values: the actual OOPs that make up this object (if an OOP object)

If the Oop values contain more than eight elements, they are broken into lines of eight items, each of which is prefixed by a counter. For example, an Array of 30 items might look like this:

```
objId: 210841 class: 1045 seg: 3261 sz: 50 bits: 0x47 psize:
220
Oop values:  10 10 210829  210825  210821  210817  210813
210809
8:  210805  210801  210797  210793  210789  210785  210781
210777
16:  210773  210769  210765  210761  210757  210753  210749
210745
24:  210741  210737  210733  210729  210725  210721
```

Bytes are broken up similarly, but the sections are 60 bytes rather than 8. for example, the source code string for the `name:` method may look like this:

```
objId: 141141 class: 1169 seg: 3261 sz: 91 bits: 0x3007
psize: 112
Bytes:  name: newValue

  "Modify the value of the instance variabl
61: e 'name'."
name := newValue
^@
```

H.4 Example of Tranlog Analysis

For this example, we created a simple database containing some Employee information and performed some simple operations creating and modifying these Employee objects.

The structure of classes associated with the Employee data is as follows:

Employee:

    name   - a Name object
    age   - a SmallInteger
    address - an Address object

Name:

    last   - a String object
    first   - a String object
    middle - a String object

Address:

    addr1   - a String object
    addr2   - a String object
    city   - a String object
    state   - a String object
    zip   - a SmallInteger

After having User1 create 5 Employee objects (with associated Name and Address objects), we then had User1 and User2 make some minor changes to one of the Employees:

1. User2 incremented the age after a birthday

2. User1 changed the address after a move

When completed, we had four tranlogs, tranlog2.dbf to tranlog5.dbf. The following examples are drawn from these tranlogs.

Included in the `$GEMSTONE/examples/tranlogs` directory are two files containing the results from `printlogs.sh` on the example tranlogs. They can be found at:

    `demolog.txt` – the results of: `printlogs.sh all`

    `demologfull.txt` – the results of: `printlogs.sh full all`

Tracking Changes to an Employee

Let's say we want to examine the change history of a particular Employee. Using the method #asOop, we find the OOP of the Employee object of interest is 155053.

```
topaz 1> printit
| myEmployee |
myEmployee := <code to locate employee object>.
myEmployee asOop.
%
155053
```

The data composing an Employee is contained in subobjects (such as address), as well as directly (such as age). So, we will also need to track changes to these subobjects. Again using #asOop, we find that the OOP of the Name object

associated with this Employee is 155073, and that the OOP for the Address object is 155069.

```
myEmployee name asOop
155073
myEmployee address asOop
155069
```

You can use #asOop on any persistent object in the repository. For example,

```
73 asOop
295
nil asOop
10
```

We can now search our tranlogs for any events involving these objects. Using the command:

```
$> searchlogs.sh 155053 155073 155069
```

results in the following output:

Example H.6   seachlogs.sh output for Employee

```
Searching for oops:  155053 155073 155069
Searching tranlogs:
  tranlog2.dbf
  tranlog3.dbf
  tranlog4.dbf
  tranlog5.dbf

3.61.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(134 0)
  object 155053 cls 180689

3.61.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(134 0)
  object 155069 cls 182393

3.61.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(134 0)
  object 155073 cls 180101

3.61.1  Commit session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(134 0)
```

```
 crBacklog: 1  crPageId: 944
  beginLogRecord:(file:3 rec:61)  reclaimedOopsDebugInfo: 0
  timeWritten: [1156955988] Wed 30 Aug 2006 09:39:48 PDT

4.7.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User2 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(142 2)
  object 155053 cls 180689

4.7.1  Commit session: 2 user: User2 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(142 2)
 crBacklog: 1  crPageId: 872
  beginLogRecord:(file:4 rec:7)  reclaimedOopsDebugInfo: 0
  timeWritten: [1156956023] Wed 30 Aug 2006 09:40:23 PDT

5.7.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(151 2)
  object 155069 cls 182393

5.7.1  Commit session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(151 2)
 crBacklog: 1  crPageId: 875
  beginLogRecord:(file:5 rec:7)  reclaimedOopsDebugInfo: 0
  timeWritten: [1156956060] Wed 30 Aug 2006 09:41:00 PDT
```

From this output, we can see that in tranlog entry 3.61.0, User1 made changes to all three objects (in this case, when the Employee and associated subobjects were first created). In entry 4.7.0, User2 made a change to the Employee, and then later in entry 5.7.0, User1 made a change to 155069, the Address object.

Note that the **BeginData** entries are each followed by a **Commit**. You should always confirm that a **BeginData⁄Data⁄BeginStoreData⁄StoreData** of interest is followed by a **Commit**. If it doesn't then the reported event was not made persistent in the repository.

Changed vs. new objects

In the above example, while the field of an Address object changed, the Address object itself was the same (had the same OOP). Depending on how the Smalltalk application is written, this may not always be the case. If application that was initiating these changes created a new Address object, and assigned the Employee's address instance variable to this new object, then the Employee object

would reference a new OOP, rather than OOP 155069. This would make the analysis somewhat different. For example, in the initial stage of the analysis when you look up the OOP of the Address object in your application, you would find the new OOP rather than the original OOP. Looking back in time, you would see when this Address object was created and assigned to the Employee instance.

Details of Changes to an Employee

Having used the `searchlogs.sh` script to get a general idea of which tranlogs are of interest, you can now use the `printlogs.sh` script to get more details.

Say you want more details on the creation of Employee object 155069 and its associated subobjects 155073 and 155069 in entry 3.61.0. The "3" in "3.61.0" indicates that `tranlog3.dbf` is the tranlog of interest. The command:

```
$> printlogs.sh tranlog3.dbf
```

will generate a condensed listing of all events in `tranlog3.dbf`. By searching the resulting file for the entry number 3.61.0 you can find the relevant entry:

Example H.7   Employee modification

```
3.61.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(134 0)
  clusterId: 1,  extentId: 0  numObjs:35


145021  155041  155045  155049  155053  155069  155073  155077
155089
155093  155097  155101  155121  155273  155285  155317  156589
156597  156609  156613  156661  156689  156729  156733  156749
156825  156829  156833  156837  156857  156861  156885  179629
180045  180653
```

This shows the oops of *all* objects created during this event. If you want to see more details on the actual changes made, use the "full" argument in the `printlogs.sh` command:

```
$> printlogs.sh full tranlog3.dbf
```

This will produce a more detailed listing of all events. For tranlog entry 3.61.0, you'll find:

Example H.8   Example Employee modifications, output in full mode

```
3.61.0  BeginData session: 2 user: User1 gemhost: merlin clientIP:
10.20.30.40 beginId:(134 0)
      clusterId: 1,  extentId: 0  numObjs:35
```

       [details for other objects omitted]

```
objId: 155053 class: 180689 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47 psize: 32
Oop values:  155073  295  155069

objId: 155069 class: 182393 seg: 3253 sz: 5 bits: 0x47 psize: 40
Oop values:  156833  10  156837  156661  391335

objId: 155073 class: 180101 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47 psize: 32
Oop values:  156829  156825  10
```

       [details for other objects omitted]


```
objId: 156661 class: 1169 seg: 3253 sz: 2 bits: 0x3007 psize: 24
Bytes:  OR^@^@
```

       [details for other objects omitted]

```
objId: 156825 class: 1169 seg: 3253 sz: 7 bits: 0x3007 psize: 28
Bytes:  Patrick^@

objId: 156829 class: 1169 seg: 3253 sz: 5 bits: 0x3007 psize: 28
Bytes:  Ohara^@^@^@

objId: 156833 class: 1169 seg: 3253 sz: 13 bits: 0x3007 psize: 36
Bytes:  2556 Fir Blvd^@^@^@

objId: 156837 class: 1169 seg: 3253 sz: 7 bits: 0x3007 psize: 28
Bytes:  Ashford^@
```

       [details for other objects omitted]

So, for the Employee object 155053, we find:

```
objId: 155053 class: 180689 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47
psize: 32
Oop values:  155073  295  155069
```

Indicating that this is an instance of class 180689, the Employee class, which has three instance variables: name, age, and address. By position, we can identify the data in the instance variables:

name: 155073 - the OOP of an instance of Name, found later in the entry
age: 295 - the OOP of the SmallInteger 73
address: 155069 - the OOP of a instance of Address, found later in the entry

Looking at the Name object 155073 we find:

```
objId: 155073 class: 180101 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47
psize: 32
Oop values:  156829  156825  10
```

Indicating that this is an instance of the class with OOP 180101 (Name). Name contains three instance variables, last, first, and middle. By position, we see the data is:

last: 156829 - the OOP of a String, described below
first: 156825 - the OOP of a String, described below
middle: 10 (the OOP of nil) - in this example, no middle name was set

For the last name object 156829 we find:

```
objId: 156829 class: 1169 seg: 3253 sz: 5 bits: 0x3007
psize: 28
Bytes:  Ohara^@^@^@
```

Indicating the last name is the string "Ohara". The ^@ indicate nulls in the String after its official end. There may be up to 3 of these nulls; Strings are adjusted to a size that is a multiple of four bytes.

By a similar process you can follow the trail of objects to examine the structure of other subobjects in the Name and Address objects.

H.5 Further Analysis

Class Operations

To find all objects created or modified that belong to a particular class, first generate `printlogs.sh` output in full mode of the tranlogs of interest. Each time an object of that class is created or modified, the full tranlog entry includes the line

    class: <*OOP*>

Use the unix `grep` command to find all references to the OOP of the class.

For example, to find all creation or modification of any instance of our example class Employee:

First, generate `printlogs.sh` full mode output; in our case, `demologfull.txt`.

Since the Employee class is OOP **180689**, execute the `grep` command:

    $> grep "class: 180689" demologfull.txt

this will produce output of the form:

```
objId: 155041 class: 180689 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47
psize: 32
objId: 155053 class: 180689 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47
psize: 32
objId: 155077 class: 180689 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47
psize: 32
objId: 155097 class: 180689 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47
psize: 32
objId: 155053 class: 180689 seg: 3253 sz: 3 bits: 0x47
psize: 32
```

This gives the first line from the entry creating/modifying the object belonging to that class. From this, you can use other commands to search for and/or track the history of these objects.

Deleted Objects

An object-oriented system doesn't actually delete objects; objects cease to be referenced and are eventually garbage collected. Noting the removal of an object requires examining the references to that object (such as from a collection) and identifying when the referencing object was modified in such a way that the object

of interest is no longer referenced. Meanwhile, as you examine the `printlogs.sh` output, you may find references to the OOP of a dereferenced object in garbage collection tranlog entries.

Managing Volume

As noted above, the `printlogs.sh` produce a very large amount of output. GemStone tranlogs may be very large; while 2GB is historically recommended, up to 16 GB are supported. The output of `printlogs.sh` in normal mode will be somewhat larger than the original tranlog (the `printlogs.sh` output, being human readable, is less dense). The output from this script in full mode is much larger.

To manage the volume:

- avoid configuring your system with very large tranlogs.

- Ensure you have plenty of disk space available before beginning analysis.

- print only the tranlogs containing data you need. Use the `searchlogs.sh` script to identify exactly where the required information is located.

- Make sure only the relevant tranlogs are in the current directory; move the unneeded ones elsewhere. However, you must retain a continuous set of tranlogs without gaps in sequence, and you must include the tranlog with the original log entry, in order to have the UserId and other information provided.

- Once you have printed the output, use the unix utility `grep -n` to locate the lines of interest, and the unix utility `split -l` to break the resulting file up into more manageable size chunks.

Index

A

AbortCount (cache statistics) 229
`abortErrLostOtRoot` **395**
`abortFullBackup` (Repository) 288
accounts
    administering user 140
ad hoc processes 78, 421
`addGroup:`
    (UserProfile) 160
adding
    a new user 141, 154
    a user to a group 147, 160
    user privileges 144, 147, 157
`addNewUserWithId:password:`
    (UserProfileSet) 154
`addNewUserWithId:password:...inGr`
        `oups:`
    (UserProfileSet) 154
`addPrivilege:`
    (UserProfile) 157
`addTransactionLog:size:` (Repository)
        202

Admin GcGem
    and GemStone privilege 131
    and Reclaim GcGems 326
    configuring 373
    defined 3
    log files 117, 209, 210
    running 348
`adminGcGemSessionId` (System) 349
administrative accounts 126
administrative tools 125
    GemBuilder for Smalltalk 135
    Topaz 151
AIO page server
    defined 3
    log files 117, 209, 211
AioCkptCount (cache statistic) 230
AioDirtyCount (cache statistic) 230
AioNumBuffers (cache statistic) 230
AioNumEmptyBuffers (cache statistic) 230
AioRateLimit (cache statistics) 230
AioRateMax (cache statistics) 230
AioWriteFailures (cache statistics) 230

N

write set union sweep
	defined 325
`writeFdcArrayToFile:` (Repository) 352

Z

`zdump` (TimeZone utility) 446
`zic` (TimeZone utility) 446
zoneinfo (TimeZone database) 444